CASE COMPETITION IN HEADLESS RELATIVES

Inauguraldissertation

zur Erlangung des Grades eines Doktors der Philosophie

im Fachbereich Neuere Philologien

der Johann Wolfgang Goethe-Universität

zu Frankfurt am Main

vorgelegt von

Fenna Bergsma

aus

Boarnsterhim, Niederlande

2021

Acknowledgements

thanks

Contents

List of tables

List of figures

List of abbreviations

1	first person
2	second person
3	third person
ABS	absolutive
ACC	accusative
AN	animate
AOR	aorist
AUX	auxiliary
CL	clitic
CMPR	comparative
COMP	complementizer
DAT	dative
DEF	definite
DEM	demonstrative
DET	determiner
ELH	extra light head
ERG	ergative
EXT	external case
F	feminine
GEN	genitive
INAN	inanimate
INF	infinitive
INT	internal case
MOD	modal marker
M	masculine

NMLZ	nominalization
NOM	nominative
N	neuter
OBJ	object
OPT	optative
PASS	passive
PL	plural
POSS	possessive
PRES	present tense
PRET	preterite
PROG	progressive
PST	past tense
PTCP	participle
REL	relative marker
RP	relative pronoun
SBJV	subjunctive mood
SG	singular
SUBJ	subject

Part I

Case competition

Chapter 1

A recurring pattern

This chapter introduces the pattern that forms the focus of the first part of the dissertation. In Section 1.1 I show that case competition in headless relatives adheres to the case scale in (1).

(1)   NOM < ACC < DAT

Then I show that this pattern is not unique to headless relatives. It appears in more syntactic and morphological phenomena. Section 1.2 discusses two implicational hierarchies that show the same case ordering. The hierarchies concern agreement and relativization in different languages. Section 1.3 shows that the case scale also appears in morphology. It can be observed in patterns of syncretism and in morphological containment.

1.1   In headless relatives

As the name suggests, headless relatives are relative clauses that lack an (overt) head. The internal case, the case from the relative clause, and the external case, the case from the main clause, compete to surface on the relative pronoun. In this section I first discuss examples in which the internal case and the external case match, and then examples in which they differ.

If the internal case and the external case are one and the same case, the relative pronoun simply surfaces in that case. I illustrate this with examples from headless relatives in Gothic. The cases I discuss are nominative, accusative and dative.

The description of Gothic is mostly based on (Harbert, 1978). The spelling of the examples follows the Wulfila Project website.[1] The glossing comes from the detailed tagging on that same website. The translations are my own.

---

[1] <http://www.wulfila.be>

Consider the example in (2), in which the internal nominative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *matjan* 'to eat' takes nominative subjects. The external case is nominative as well, as the predicate *ga-dauþnan* 'to die' also takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *sa* 'RP.SG.M.NOM' appears in the internal and external case: the nominative.

(2) ei **sa** **-ei** þis **matjai**, ni gadauþnai
    COMP RP.SG.M.NOM -COMP DEM.SG.M.GEN eat.OPT.3SG$_{[NOM]}$ not die.OPT.3SG$_{[NOM]}$
    'that the one, who eats of this may not die'
    <div align="right">(Gothic, John 6:50, after Harbert 1978: 337)</div>

Consider the example in (3), repeated from the introduction. In this example, the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case.

The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *arman* 'to pity' takes accusative objects. The external case is accusative as well, as the predicate *ga-arman* 'to pity' also takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *þan(a)* 'RP.SG.M.ACC' appears in the internal and external case: the accusative.

(3) gaarma **þan** **-ei** **arma**
    pity.1SG$_{[ACC]}$ RP.SG.M.ACC -COMP pity.1SG$_{[ACC]}$
    'I pity him, whom I pity'   (Gothic, Rom. 9:15, after Harbert 1978: 339)

Consider the example in (4), in which the internal dative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is dative, as the predicate *manwjan* 'to prepare' takes dative indirect objects. The external case is dative as well, as the predicate *giban* 'to give' also takes dative indirect objects. The relative pronoun *þaim)* 'RP.SG.M.DAT' appears in the internal and external case: the dative.

(4) nist mein du giban, alja **þaim** **-ei**
    is not 1SG.POSS.NOM to give.INF$_{[DAT]}$ except for RP.SG.M.DAT -COMP

    manwiþ **was**
    prepare.PTCP be.PRET.3SG$_{[DAT]}$
    'it is not mine to give except for to the one, for whom it was prepared'
    <div align="right">(Gothic, Mark 10:49, after Harbert 1978: 339)</div>

These findings can be summarized as in Table 1.1. The left column shows the internal case (INT) between square brackets. The upper row shows the external case (EXT) between square brackets. The other cells indicate the case of the relative pronoun. The top-left to bottom-right diagonal corresponds to the examples I have given so far in which the internal and external case match. The nominative marked in light gray corresponds to (2), in which the internal nominative case competes ains] the exter-

nal nominative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the nominative case. The accusative marked in dark gray corresponds to (3), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the accusative case. The unmarked dative corresponds to (4), in which the internal dative case competes against the external dative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case.

Table 1.1: Gothic headless relatives (matching)

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM		
[ACC]		ACC	
[DAT]			DAT

In Table 1.1, six cells remain empty. These are the cases in which the internal and the external case differ. It has been argued in the literature that the two competing cases always adhere a to particular case scale (cf. Harbert, 1978; Pittner, 1995; Vogel, 2001; Grosu, 2003a; Bergsma, 2019; Caha, 2019). This is the scale I gave in the introduction of this chapter, repeated here in (5). Elements more to the right on this scale win over elements more to the left on this scale.[2]

(5)   NOM < ACC < DAT

This can be reformulated as follows. In a competition, accusative wins over nominative, dative wins over nominative, and dative wins over accusative. In this section I illustrate this scale with examples. When two differing cases compete, the relative pronoun always appears in the case more to the right on the case scale. It does not matter whether it is the internal or the external case.

I start with the competition between the accusative and the nominative. Following the case scale in (5), the relative pronoun appears in the accusative case and never in the nominative.

Consider the example in (6), repeated from the introduction. In this example, the internal accusative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *frijon* 'to love' takes accusative objects. The external case is nominative, as the predicate *wisan* 'to be' takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *þan(a)* 'RP.SG.M.ACC' appears in the internal case: the accusative.

---

[2]In the literature about headless relatives, the genitive is often discussed together with the nominative, accusative and dative (cf. Harbert, 1978; Pittner, 1995). In this dissertation I do not discuss the genitive. The reason is that I restrict myself to cases that appear in all possible case competition combinations. As the genitive does not fulfill that requirement, it is therefore excluded.

The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just like as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause. Examples in which the internal case is accusative, the external case is nominative and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case are unattested.

(6) **þan   -ei   frijos**   siuks ist
     RP.SG.M.ACC -COMP love.PRES.2SG.[ACC] sick   be.PRES.3SG[NOM]
     'the one whom you love is sick'
                                              (Gothic, John 11:3, adapted from Harbert 1978: 342)

Consider the example in (7), repeated from the introduction. In this example, the the internal nominative case competes against the external accusative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *wisan* 'to be' takes nominative subjects. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *ussiggwan* 'to read' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *þo* 'RP.SG.N.ACC' appears in the external case: the accusative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, just like as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause. Examples in which the internal case is nominative, the external case is accusative and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case are unattested.

(7) jah þo   **-ei   ist**   **us Laudeikaion** jus
     and RP.SG.N.ACC -COMP be.PRES.3SG[NOM] from Laodicea   2.PL.NOM
     ussiggwaid
     read.[ACC]
     'and you read the one which is from Laodicea'
                                              (Gothic, Col. 4:16, adapted from Harbert 1978: 357)

The two examples in which the nominative and the accusative compete are showed in Table 1.2. Within the newly filled out cells, two cases are given. The case in the bottom-left corner stands for the relative pronoun in the internal case. The case in the top-right corner stands for the relative pronoun in the external case. The grammatical examples are marked in light and dark gray. The unattested examples are preceded by an asterix and are unmarked.[3]

The light gray marking corresponds to (6), in which the internal accusative wins the case competition over the external nominative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the accusative case. The dark gray marking corresponds to (7), in which the external accusative wins the case competition over the internal nominative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the accusative case. The instances of *NOM that appear

---

[3]Throughout this dissertation * stands for 'not found in natural language'. For extinct languages this means that there are no attested examples. For non-extinct languages it means that the examples are ungrammatical.

in the same cells indicate that there are no examples, in which the nominative and the accusative compete and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case.

Table 1.2: Gothic headless relatives (NOM — ACC)

EXT INT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC *NOM	
[ACC]	*NOM ACC	ACC	
[DAT]			DAT

I continue with the competition between the dative and the nominative. Following the case scale in (5), the relative pronoun appears in the dative case and never in the nominative.

Consider the example in (8), in which the internal dative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is dative, as the predicate *fraletan* 'to forgive' takes dative objects. The external case is nominative, as the predicate *frijon* 'to love' takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *þamm(a)* 'RP.SG.M.DAT' appears in the internal case: the dative. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause. Examples in which the internal case is dative, the external case is nominative and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case are unattested.

(8) iþ **þamm** **-ei** **leitil fraletada** leitil frijod
 but RP.SG.M.DAT -COMP little forgive.PASS.PRES.3SG[DAT] little love[NOM]
 'but the one whom little is forgiven loves little'
<div align="right">(Gothic, Luke 7:47, adapted from Harbert 1978: 342)</div>

Consider the example in (9), in which the internal nominative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *wisan* 'to be' takes nominative subjects. The external case is dative, as the predicate *fraþjan* 'to think about' takes dative indirect objects. The relative pronoun *þaim* 'RP.PL.N.DAT' appears in the external case: the dative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, just like as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause. Examples in which the internal case is nominative, the external case is dative and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case are unattested.

(9) þaim   **-ei iupa sind**   fraþjaiþ
     RP.PL.N.DAT -COMP above be.PRES.3PL$_{[NOM]}$ think about.OPT.PRES.2PL$_{[DAT]}$
     'think about those which are above'

                              (Gothic, Col. 3:2, adapted from Harbert 1978: 339)

The two examples in which the nominative and the dative compete are showed in
Table 1.3. The light gray marking corresponds to (8), in which the internal dative
wins the case competition over the external nominative, and the relative pronoun
surfaces in the dative case. The dark gray marking corresponds to (9), in which
the external dative wins the case competition over the internal nominative, and the
relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case. The instances of *NOM that appear in
the same cells indicate that there are no examples, in which the nominative and the
dative compete and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case.

Table 1.3: Gothic headless relatives (NOM — DAT)

EXT / INT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC *NOM	DAT *NOM
[ACC]	*NOM ACC	ACC	
[DAT]	*NOM DAT		DAT

I end with the competition between the dative and the accusative. Following the
case scale in (5), the relative pronoun appears in the dative case and never in the
accusative.

Consider the example in (10), in which the internal dative case competes against
the external accusative case. The internal case is dative, as the preposition *ana* 'on'

takes dative complements.[4,5] The external case is accusative, as the predicate *ushaf-jan* 'to pick up' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *þamm(a)* 'RP.SG.N.DAT' appears in the internal case: the dative. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just like as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause. Examples in which the internal case is dative, the external case is accusative and the relative pronoun appears in the accusative case are unattested.

(10) ushafjands **ana þamm -ei** lag
      pick up.PRES.PTCP[ACC] on[DAT] RP.SG.N.DAT -COMP lie.PRET.3SG
      'picking up that what he lay on'

                                    (Gothic, Luke 5:25, adapted from Harbert 1978: 343)

Consider the example in (11), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *insandjan* 'to send' takes accusative objects. The external case is dative, as the predicate *galaubjan* 'to believe' takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *þamm(a)* 'RP.SG.M.DAT' appears in the external case: the dative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, just like as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause. Examples in which the internal case is accusative, the external case is dative and the relative pronoun appears in the accusative case are unattested.

(11) ei galaubjaiþ   þamm **-ei insandida**
      that believe.OPT.PRES.2PL[DAT] RP.SG.M.DAT -COMP send.PRET.3SG[ACC]

---

[4]The example in (10) differs from the other examples of headless relatives. In this example, it is a preposition that assigns a particular case to the relative pronoun. So far, I have only given examples in which it is a verbal predicate that assigns a case to the relative pronoun (or the absent head). The reason for that is to keep the data set as homogenous as possible. Harbert (1978) reports there is no such example with the dative as internal case and the accusative as external case. My own research reaches the same conclusion. The absence of a headless relative with an internal dative case and an external accusative case (both assigned by verbal predicates) is not surprising, mainly for two reasons. First, the headless relative construction is infrequent to begin with. Harbert reports of some case competition combinations only a single or a few occurrences. Second, Gothic only has a few verbs that take dative complements.

There is reason to believe that this missing occurrence is due to the above mentioned reasons rather than a meaningful gap in the paradigm. Datives often appear after prepositions. There are instances in which the internal dative case is assigned by a preposition and the external accusative case is assigned by a verbal predicate. In each of these instances, the relative pronoun surfaces in the internal dative case and not in the external accusative case (as in (10)). For the other way around holds the same: with an accusative internal case assigned by a verbal predicate and a dative external predicate assigned by a preposition, the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative and not in the accusative. Therefore, the system that I set up later in this dissertation is able to generate the dative as internal case and accusative as external case which are both assigned by verbal predicates.

[5]*Ana* 'on' takes dative complements when the PP is interpreted as locational. *Ana* 'on' takes accusative complements when the PP is interpreted as directional. *Ana þammei* 'on that' in (10) refers to a location.

jains
DEM.SG.M.NOM

'that you believe in him whom he sent'   (Gothic, John 6:29)

The two examples in which the accusative and the dative compete are showed in Table 1.4. The light gray marking corresponds to (10), in which the internal dative wins the case competition over the external accusative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case. The dark gray marking corresponds to (11), in which the external dative wins the case competition over the internal accusative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case. The instances of *ACC that appear in the same cells indicate that there are no examples, in which the accusative and the dative compete and the relative pronoun appears in the accusative case.

Table 1.4: Gothic headless relatives (ACC — DAT)

EXT / INT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC / *NOM	DAT / *NOM
[ACC]	*NOM / ACC	ACC	DAT / *ACC
[DAT]	*NOM / DAT	*ACC / (DAT)	DAT

Table 1.5 is a simplified version of Table 1.4. The data in the table can be divided into three sets: (1) a set of three unmarked cells in the top-left to bottom-right diagonal, (2) a set of three light gray marked cells in the bottom-left corner and (3) a set of three dark gray marked cells in the top-right corner. The unmarked three cells in the diagonal are situations in which the internal and the external case match. The three cells in the bottom-left corner, marked in light gray, are the situations in which the internal case surfaces when it wins the competition. In these situations, the relative pronoun appears in the internal case. They correspond to the examples (6), (8) and (10). The three cells in the top-right corner, marked in dark gray, are the situations in which the external case surfaces when it wins the competition. In these situations, the relative pronoun appears in the external case. They correspond to the examples in (7), (9) and (11).

To sum up, case competition in headless relative is subject to the case scale, repeated from the introduction of this chapter in (12).

Table 1.5: Summary of Gothic headless relatives

INT ^EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	(DAT)	DAT

(12) NOM < ACC < DAT

If two cases compete, the dative wins over the accusative and the nominative, and the accusative wins over the nominative. In this section I gave examples from Gothic that illustrate this. As I mentioned in the introduction of this section, this case scale is not specific for Gothic, but it holds across languages (cf. see Pittner 1995 for Modern and Old High German and Grosu 2003a; Kakarikos 2014 for Ancient Greek).[6]

In the remainder of this chapter I show that headless relatives are not the only place where the case scale appears. Instead, it appears with more syntactic phenomena. Moreover, exactly this scale is also reflected in morphology.

1.2 In syntax

In this section I discuss two additional syntactic phenomena that reflect the NOM < ACC < DAT scale. The first one is an implicational hierarchy that concerns agreement. The second one is an implicational hierarchy about relativization.

1.2.1 Agreement

Agreement can be seen as "a systematic covariance between a semantic or formal property of one element and a formal property of another" (Steel, 1978). Put differently, the shape of one element changes according to some properties of an element it relates to. In this section I discuss the agreement between a predicate and its arguments.

It differs per language with how many of its arguments a predicate agrees. However, it is not random with which agreement takes place. Instead, there is an implicational hierarchy that is identical to the one observed for headless relatives: NOM < ACC < DAT. First I formulate the implicational hierarchy in terms of grammatical

---

[6]Modern German differs from Gothic and the other languages in that it is subject to an additional constraint. That is, it does not allow the internal and the external case to win case competitions. Modern German only allows the internal case to do so. If the external case is more to the right on the case scale, the headless relative is ungrammatical. This topic is the main focus of Part II of this dissertation.

function (following Moravcsik 1978). Later I show that a reformulation in terms of case is actually more accurate (following Bobaljik 2006).

Moravcsik (1978) formulated the implicational hierarchy in terms of grammatical functions subject, direct object and indirect object.[7] The hierarchy is schematically represented in Figure 1.1. It should be read as follows: if a language allows the predicate to agree with the argument in a particular circle, it also allows the predicate to agree with the argument in the circle around it.
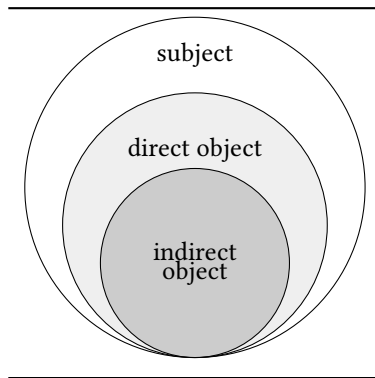
Figure 1.1: Agreement hierarchy

Then, there are four types of languages possible: first, a language that does not show any agreement; second, a language that shows agreement only with the subject and not with the direct and indirect object; third, a language that shows agreement with the subject and direct object but not with the indirect object; and fourth, a language that shows agreement with the subject, the direct object and the indirect object.

The implicational hierarchy holds for languages, not for sentences. That is, it is not the case that in a language of a particular type all instances of the grammatical function show agreement. To be more precise, in a language of the second type that only shows agreement with the subject, not all subjects have to show agreement. Particular types of subject, such as experiencer subjects often do not show any agreement.

Japanese is an example of a language that does not show any agreement on the predicate. An example is given in (13). The predicate *okutta* 'sent' does not agree with the subject *Tarooga* 'Taro', with the direct object *nimotuo* 'package' or with the indirect object *Hanakoni* 'Hanako'.

---

[7]Moravcsik (1978) also included adverbs on the lowest end of the hierarchy. I leave them out here, because they are not relevant for the discussion.

(13) Taroo-ga Hanako-ni nimotu-o okutta.
Taro-NOM Hanako-DAT package-ACC sent
'Taro sent Hanako a package.'   (Japanese, Miyagawa and Tsujioka 2004: 5)

German is an example of a language that shows agreement with the subject of the clause. An example is given in (14). The predicate *gibst* 'give' contains the morpheme *-st*, marked in bold. This morpheme is the agreement morpheme for second person singular subjects (in the present tense). The predicate *gibst* 'give' agrees in person and number with the subject *du* 'you'. There is no agreement with the direct object *das Buch* 'the book' or the indirect object *mir* 'me'.

(14) Du gib **-st** mir das Buch.
you.NOM give -PRES.2SG I.DAT the book.ACC
'You give me the book.'   (German)

Hungarian is an example of a language that shows agreement with the subject and the direct object of a clause. An example is given in (15). The predicate *adom* 'give' contains the morpheme *-om*, marked in bold. This is a portmonteau morpheme for a first person singular subject and a third person object agreement. The predicate *adom* 'give' agrees with the subject *én* 'I' and the direct object *a könyvet* 'the book'. There is no agreement with the indirect object *neked* 'you'. Agreement with the the first person singular subject *én* 'I' and second person singular indirect object *neked* 'you.DAT.SG' is ungrammatical, as indicated by the ungrammaticality of *-lak*.

(15) (Én) neked ad **-om**/ *-lak a könyv-et
I you.DAT give -1SG.SUBJ>3.OBJ -1SG.SUBJ>2.OBJ the book-ACC
'I give you the book.'   (Hungarian, András Bárány p.c.)

Basque is an example of a language that shows agreement with the subject, the direct object and the indirect object. Basque is an ergative-absolutive language, so in transitive clauses subjects are marked as ergative and objects are marked as absolutive. An example from the Bizkaian dialect is given in (16). The stem of the auxiliary *aus* combines with the morphemes *d-*, *-ta* and *-zu*, marked in bold. The morpheme *d-* is the agreement morpheme for third person singular as direct objects, which is here *liburua* 'the book'. The morpheme *-ta* is the agreement morpheme for first person singular indirect objects, which is here *niri* 'me'. The morpheme *-zu* is the agreement morpheme for second person singular ergative subjects, which is here *zuk* 'you'.

(16) Zu-k ni-ri liburu-a emon **d** -aus **-ta** **-zu**.
you-ERG I-DAT book-DEF.ABS given ABS.3SG -AUX -DAT.1SG -ERG.2SG
'You gave me the book.'
        (Bizkaian Basque, adapted from Arregi and Molina-Azaola 2004: 45)

Putting the languages in Moravcsik's (1978) schema gives the result as shown in Figure 1.2.
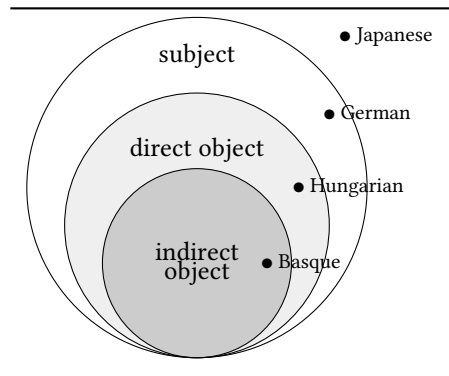
Figure 1.2: Agreement hierarchy with languages

Gilligan (1987) performed a typological study among 100 genetically and areally diverse languages, which confirms the picture. The results are shown in Table 1.6. There are 23 languages that do not show any agreement, like Japanese. There are 31 languages that show agreement only with the subject and not with the direct and indirect object, like German. There are 25 languages that show agreement with the subject and direct object but not with the indirect object, like Hungarian. There are 23 languages that show agreement with the subject, the direct object and the indirect object, like Basque.

Table 1.6: Typology for agreement hierarchy

	agreement with			
subject	direct object	indirect object	number of languages	example
*	*	*	23	Japanese
✓	*	*	31	German
✓	✓	*	25	Hungarian
✓	✓	✓	23	Basque
✓	*	✓	(1)	-
*	✓	✓	0	-
*	x	*	0	-
*	*	✓	0	-

So far I have discussed the implicational hierarchy in terms of grammatical func-

tion. In what follows, I discuss how it actually should be formalized in terms of the case scale that has also been observed for case competition in headless relatives.

Bobaljik (2006) argues that the implicational hierarchy is more accurate if it is stated in terms of case rather than grammatical function. In these situations, case seem to capture the facts for the implicational hierarchy, and grammatical function does not. It is often the case that subjects appear in the nominative case, and that direct objects appear in accusative. However, this is not always the case. Subjects can be non-nominative and direct objects can be non-accusative. Bobaljik gives examples of two types of situations in which this is the case: non-nominative subjects in Icelandic and ergative-absolutive languages. In these situations, case seem to capture the facts for the implicational hierarchy, and grammatical function does not. I go through both situations Bobaljik describes.

Icelandic is a language that has dative subjects. It is like German in that it only shows agreement with a single argument. If agreement takes place with the grammatical subject, it is expected that the dative subject agrees with the predicate. This is not what happens, as illustrated in (17). The dative subject *morgum studentum* 'many students' is plural. The sentence is ungrammatical with the predicate *líka* 'like' inflecting for plural as well. So, the dative subject does not agree in number with the predicate. In other words, it is not the grammatical subject that shows agreement.

(17) *Morgum studentum   líka   verkið.
       many   students.DAT like.PL job.NOM
       'Many students like the job.'   (Harley 1995: 208)

Instead, it is the nominative object that agrees with the verb. This is illustrated in (18). The dative subject *konunginum* 'the king' is singular. The nominative object *ambáttir* 'slaves' is plural. The predicate *voru* 'were' is inflected for plural, agreeing with the nominative object. This is expected if morphological case determines agreement: it is the nominative that shows agreement. The grammatical role, the fact that this nominative is an object, does not influence agreement.

(18) Um veturinn   voru   konunginum   gefnar ambáttir
       In   the winter were.PL the king.SG.DAT given   slave.PL.NOM
       'In the winter, the king was given (female) slaves.'
                                    (Zaenen, Maling, and Thráinsson 1985: 112)

The second type of evidence that Bobaljik gives comes from ergative-absolutive languages. Ergative-absolutive languages differ in their alignment from nominative-accusative languages. In nominative-accusative languages, the subject of an intransitive verb (S) has the same marking as the subject of a transitive verb (A), namely nominative. The object of a transitive verb (O) has its own marking, namely ac-

cusative. This is schematically shown in 1.3.
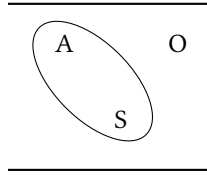
Figure 1.3: Nominative-accusative alignment

In ergative-absolutive languages, the alignment is different. The subject of an intransitive verb (S) has the same marking as the object of the transitive verb (O), namely absolutive. The subject of the transitive verb (A) has its own marking, namely ergative. This is schematically shown in 1.4.
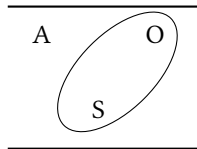
Figure 1.4: Ergative-absolutive alignment

Note here that nominative-accusative languages use the same case marking for the same grammatical function (nominative for subjects, accusative for objects), but ergative-absolutive languages do not (absolutive for objects in transitive clauses or subjects in intransitive clauses, ergative for subjects in transitive clauses).

Bobaljik (2006) describes how absolutives and ergatives behave with respect to whether they show agreement. There are languages that show agreement with both absolutives and ergatives. There are also languages that show only agreement with absolutives. Crucially, there is no language that shows only agreement with ergatives. Absolutives are a heterogenous set with respect to grammatical function, i.e. They are subjects of intransitive verbs and objects of transitive verbs. However, with respect to showing agreement absolutives behave the same, and this behavior is different from ergatives. This indicates that it is morphological case and not grammatical function that is the decisive factor.

Bobaljik (following Marantz 2000) combines nominative-accusative and ergative-absolutive languages in the following way: accusative and ergative are dependent cases, and nominative or absolutive are unmarked case. Reformulating Figure 1.2 in terms of case instead of grammatical function gives the schema in Figure 1.5.

This formulation in terms of case rather than grammatical function works as follows for the examples I gave earlier. First, Japanese is a language that does not show any agreement, as shown in (13). There is no agreement with the unmarked case (here the nominative), not with the dependent case (here the accusative) and not
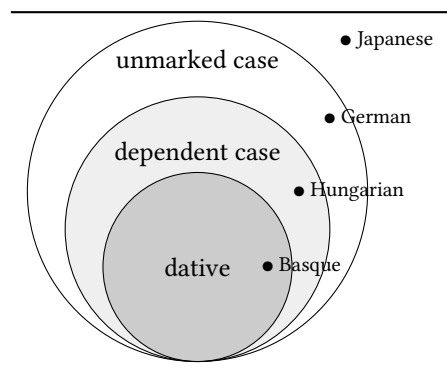
Figure 1.5: Agreement hierarchy (case)

with the dative case. Second, German is a language that shows agreement only with the unmarked case, as shown in (14). The morpheme *-st* on the predicate agrees with the element in unmarked nominative case *du* 'you'. There is no agreement with the dependent accusative case or with the dative case. Third, Hungarian is a language that shows agreement with the unmarked and the dependent case, as shown in (15). The portmanteau morpheme *-om* on the predicates agrees with the element in unmarked nominative case *én* 'I' and the element in dependent accusative case *a könyvet* 'the book'. Last, Basque is a language that shows agreement with the unmarked, the dependent and the dative case, as shown in (16). The morpheme *-zu* on the auxiliary agrees with the element in dependent ergative case *zuk* 'you'. The morpheme *d-* on the auxiliary agrees with the element in unmarked absolutive case *liburua* 'the book'. The morpheme *-ta* on the auxiliary agrees with the element in the dative case *niri* 'me'.

In the languages I discuss in this dissertation, I focus on languages that have nominative as unmarked case and accusative as dependent case, so Figure 1.6 suffices.
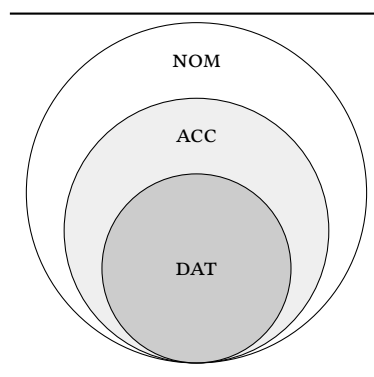
Figure 1.6: Agreement hierarchy (NOM/ACC/DAT)

In sum, this section has shown that agreement follows the same implicational

hierarchy as the case scale in headless relatives: NOM < ACC < DAT.

1.2.2 Relativization

Relativization refers to the process in which a relative clause is derived from a non-relative clause. An example of the non-relative clause is given in (19a). The relative clause derived from that is shown in (19b). The head of the relative clause is *woman* and precedes the clause. The relative pronoun follows the head. The head of the head does not appear in the relative clause anymore.

(19)   a.   You like the woman.
         b.   **the woman**, who you like

In (19b), it is the object of the clause that is relativized. It differs per language which elements can be relativized with a particular strategy. Just like the distribution was not random for agreement, it is not random which elements can be relativized. Instead, there is an implicational hierarchy that is identical to the one observed for the case scale: NOM < ACC < DAT.

Keenan and Comrie (1977) formulated the implicational hierarchy in terms of the grammatical functions subject, direct object and indirect object.[8] The implicational hierarchy is schematically represented in Figure 1.7. It should be read as follows: if a language allows a particular relativization strategy of the grammatical function in a particular circle, it also allows this relativization strategy of the grammatical function of the circle around it. The languages in the figure give examples of the circles they are in.
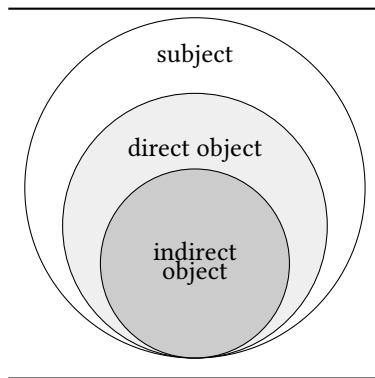
Figure 1.7: Relativization hierarchy

There are four types of languages possible: first, a language that allows only the subject to be relativized with a particular strategy and not the direct and indirect

---

[8]Keenan and Comrie (1977) also included obliques, possessives and objects of comparison on the lowest end of the hierarchy. I leave them out here, because they are not relevant for the discussion.

object; second, a language that allows the subject and direct object to be relativized with a particular strategy but not the indirect object; and third, a language that allows the subject, the direct object and the indirect object to be relativized with a particular strategy.

Malagasy is an example of a language that allows subjects to be relativized using a particular strategy, but not direct and indirect objects. (20) is an example of a declarative sentence in Malagasy. It is a transitive sentence that contains the subject *ny mpianatra* 'the student' and the direct object *ny vehivavy* 'the woman'.

(20)   Nahita ny vehivavy ny mpianatra.
         saw   the woman   the student
         'The student saw the woman.'   (Malagasy, Keenan and Comrie 1977: 70)

In (21), the subject from the declarative sentence, marked in bold, is relativized. The subject *ny mpianatra* 'the student' appears in the first position of the clause. It is followed by the invariable relativizer *izay* 'that'. After that, the rest of the relative clause follows, in this case *nahita ny vehivavy* 'saw the woman'.

(21)   **ny mpianatra** izay nahita ny vehivavy
         the student   that saw   the woman
         'the student that saw the woman'
                               (Malagasy, Keenan and Comrie 1977: 70, my boldfacing)

The object of (20) cannot be relativized in the same way, as shown in (22). Here the object *ny vehivavy* 'the woman', marked in bold, appears in the first position of the clause. It is again followed by the relativizer *izay* 'that' and the rest of the relative clause, which is here *nahita ny mpianatra* 'saw the student'. This example is ungrammatical.

(22)   *****ny vehivavy** izay nahita ny mpianatra
         the woman   that saw   the student
         'the woman that the student saw'
                               (Malagasy, Keenan and Comrie 1977: 70, my boldfacing)

Later in this section I draw the parallel between subject and nominative, direct object and accusative and indirect object and dative (after Caha, 2009). As Malagasy does not have any overt morphological system, it does not hold that the subject corresponds to the nominative in this case. German is another example of a language that allows subjects to be relativized using a particular strategy, but not direct and indirect object. This strategy is the participle construction (Keenan and Comrie, 1977). This strategy is a secondary strategy that exist besides the main strategy that can be used to relativize direct and indirect objects. (23) is an example of a declarative

sentence in German. It is a transitive sentence that contains the subject *die Frau* 'the woman' and the object *der Mann* 'the man'.

(23)   Die Frau   küsst den Mann.
        the woman kisses the man
        'The woman is kissing the man.'   (German)

The subject from the declarative in (23), sentence *die Frau* 'the woman', is relativized in (24). The predicate from the declarative clause *küsst* 'kisses' is turned in into the participle *küssende* 'kissing'. The participle appears at the end of the reduced relative clause *den Mann küssende* 'the man kissing'. The reduced relative clause directly precedes the noun of the subject, creating distance between the determiner *die* 'the' and *Frau* 'woman', which are both marked in bold.

(24)   **die** den Mann küssende **Frau**
        the the man   kissing   woman
        'the woman who is kissing the man'   (German)

The object from the declarative sentence in (23), *den Mann* 'the man', cannot be relativized like the subject, as shown in (25). Again, the predicate from the declarative clause *küsst* 'kisses' is turned in into the participle *küssende* 'kissing'. The participle appears at the end of the relative clause *die Frau küssende* 'the woman kissing'. The reduced relative clause directly precedes the noun of the object, creating distance between the determiner *der* 'the' and *Mann* 'man', which are both marked in bold. This example is ungrammatical.

(25)   ****den** die Frau   küssende **Mann**
        the the woman kissing   man
        intended: 'the man that the woman is kissing'   (German)

Malay is an example of a language that has a relativization strategy for subjects and direct objects, but not for indirect objects. (26) shows an example in which the object is relativized. The object here is *ayam* 'chicken', marked in bold. It is followed by the relativizer *yang* 'that'. After that, the rest of the relative clause *Aminah sedang memakan* 'Aminah is eating' follows. The same strategy works to relativize subjects, which is not illustrated with an example.

(26)   Ali bunoh **ayam**   yang Aminah sedang memakan.
        Ali kill   chicken that Aminah PROG   eat
        'Ali killed the chicken that Aminah is eating.'
                               (Malay, Keenan and Comrie 1977: 71, my boldfacing)

Indirect objects cannot be relativized using the same strategy. (27) is an example of a ditransitive sentence in Malay. The indirect object *kapada perempuan itu* 'to the woman' cannot be relativized using *yang*.

(27)   Ali beri ubi kentang itu kapada perempuan itu.
         Ali give potato   the to   woman   the
         'Ali gave the potato to the woman.'   (Malay, Keenan and Comrie 1977: 71)

This is illustrated by the examples in (28). In (28a), the direct object *perempuan kapada* 'to the woman', marked in bold, appears in the first position of the clause. It is followed by the relativizer *yang* 'that' and the rest of the relative clause *Ali beri ubi kentang itu kapada* 'Ali gave the potato to'. This example in ungrammatical. The example in (28b) differs from (28a) in that the preposition *kapada* 'to' has been moved such that it precedes the relativizer *yang* 'that'. This example is ungrammatical as well, indicating this was not the reason for the ungrammaticality.

(28)   a.   *__perempuan__ yang Ali beri ubi kentang itu kapada
                 woman   that Ali give potato   the to

         b.   *__perempuan kapada__ yang Ali beri ubi kentang itu
                 woman   to   who Ali give potato   that
                              (Malay, Keenan and Comrie 1977: 71, my boldfacing)

Later in this section I draw the parallel between subject and nominative, direct object and accusative and indirect object and dative (after Caha, 2009). As Malay does not have any overt morphological system, it does not hold that the subject corresponds to the nominative and the object to the accusative.

Finnish is another example of a language that allows subjects and direct objects to be relativized using a particular strategy, but not indirect objects. This strategy places the relative clause prenominally, does not use a relativization marker, and puts the predicate in the relative clause in the non-finite form (Keenan and Comrie, 1977).

(29) shows how examples of relativized subjects and direct objects. (29a) is an example of a subject relative: *poika* 'boy' has been relativized from the clause in which it was the subject of *tanssinut* 'danced'. The head of the relative clause is *poika* 'boy', marked in bold, is preceded by the relative clause *pöydällä tanssinut* 'who had danced on the table'. The predicate of the relative clause appears in the non-finite form: *tanssinut* 'having danced'. (29b) is an example of a subject relative: *poika* 'boy' has been relativized from the clause in which it was the subject of *näkemäni* 'saw'. The head of the relative clause is *poika* 'boy', marked in bold, is preceded by the relative clause *näkemäni* 'that I saw'. The predicate of the relative clause appears in the non-finite form: *näkemäni* 'having seen'.

(29)   a.   Pöydällä tanssinut   **poika** oli sairas.
              on-table having-danced boy   was sick
              'The boy who had danced on the table was sick.'

        b.   Näkemäni   **poika** tanssi pöydällä.
              I-having-seen boy   danced on-table
              'The boy that I saw danced on the table.'

                                                    (Finnish, Keenan and Comrie 1977: 71)

Basque is an example of a language that has a particular relativization strategy for
subjects, direct objects and indirect objects. (30) is an example of a declarative di-
transitive sentence in Basque. The sentence contains the subject *gizonak* 'the man',
the direct object *liburua* 'the book' and the indirect object *emakumeari* 'the woman'.

(30)   Gizon-a-k   emakume-a-ri liburu-a   eman dio.
        man-DEF-ERG woman-DEF-DAT book-DEF.ABS give   has
        'The man has given the book to the woman.'

                                                    (Basque, Keenan and Comrie 1977: 72)

A relative clause in Basque appears in the prenominal position and it is marked by
the invariable marker -*n*.[9] (31a) shows the three relativizations that are derived from
(30). In (31a), the ergative subject *gizonak* 'the man' from (30) is relativized. The
head *gizona* 'the man', marked in bold, has lost its ergative marker -*k*, and follows the
relative clause *makumeari liburua eman dio* 'who has given the book to the woman'.
The suffix -*n* is attached to the relative clause. In (31b), the absolutive direct object
liburua 'the book' from (30) is relativized. The head *liburua* 'the book', marked in
bold, follows the relative clause *gizonak emakumeari eman dion* 'that the man has
given to the woman'.[10] The suffix -*n* is attached to the relative clause. In (31c), the
dative indirect object *emakumeari* 'the woman' from (30) is relativized. The head
emakumea 'the man', marked in bold, has lost its dative marker -*ri*, and follows the
relative clause *gizonak liburua eman dion* 'that the man has given the book to'. The
suffix -*n* is attached to the relative clause.

(31)   a.   emakume-a-ri liburu-a   eman dio-n   **gizon-a**
              woman-DEF-DAT book-DEF.ABS give   has-REL man-DEF
              'the man who has given the book to the woman'

---

[9]Additionally, the relativized positions do not appear in verbal agreement anymore, but this not vis-
ible in the example, because they are all phonologically zero.

[10]The absolutive direct object *liburua* 'the book' does not have an additional overt absolutive marker,
so this difference cannot be observed when it is relativized.

b. gizon-a-k   emakume-a-ri   eman dio-n   **liburu-a**
man-DEF-ERG woman-DEF-DAT give has-REL book-DEF
'the book that the man has given to the woman'

c. gizon-a-k   liburu-a   eman dio-n   **emakume-a**
man-DEF-ERG book-DEF.ABS give has-REL woman-DEF
'the woman that the man has given the book to'

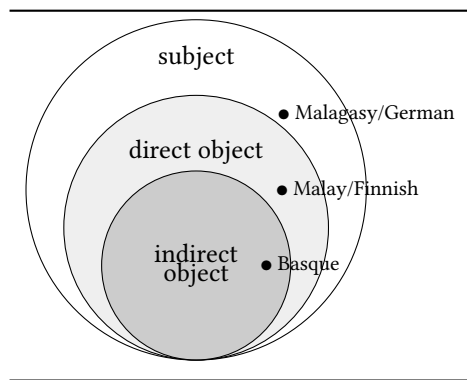(Basque, Keenan and Comrie 1977: 72, my boldfacing)

Figure 1.8: Relativization hierarchy with languages

Caha (2009) argues that the implicational hierarchy is more accurate if it is stated in terms of case rather than grammatical function. The main argument comes from ergative-absolutive languages, which was also one of Bobaljik's (2006) argument with the implicational hierarchy for agreement.

According to Keenan and Comrie (1977), ergative-absolutive languages form a counterexample to their hierarchy. It turns out that in some languages ergative subjects cannot be relativized, while absolutive subjects and absolutive objects can. This indicates that absolutive subjects and objects form a natural class to the exclusion of ergative subjects. In other words, it is not the grammatical function that is decisive, but morphological case. Dyirbal is an example of a language in which absolutive subjects and objects can be relativized, but ergative subjects cannot (Dixon 1972: 100).

(32) shows an intransitive and transitive sentence in Dyirbal. In the intransitive sentence in (32a), the subject *balan ḍugumbil* 'the woman' is marked absolutive. In the transtive sentence in (32b), the subject *ŋaḍa* 'I' is marked ergative, and the object *balan ḍugumbil* 'the woman' is marked absolutive.

(32) a. balan   ḍugumbil   ɲina-ɲu
DET.ABS woman.ABS sit-PASS
'The woman is sitting down.'

      b.   ŋaḍa balan   ḍugumbil   buṛa-n
           I.ERG DET.ABS woman.ABS see-PRES/PST
           'I am watching the woman.' (Dyirbal, Dixon 1972: 100, my boldfacing)

A relative clause in Dyirbal follows its head, and marks the predicate of the relative clause with the relative suffix *-ŋu.*. In (33a), the absolutive subject *ḍugumbil* 'woman' from (32a) is relativized. The head *ḍugumbil* 'woman', marked in bold, precedes the relative clause *ɲina-ŋu* 'who is sitting down'. The predicate in the relative clause *ɲina* 'sit' is followed by the relative suffix *-ŋu*. In (33b), the absolutive object *ḍugumbil* 'woman' from (32b) is relativized. The head *ḍugumbil* 'woman', marked in bold, precedes the relative clause *ŋaḍa buṛa-ŋu* 'whom I am watching'. The predicate in the relative clause *buṛa* 'see' is followed by the relative suffix *-ŋu.*

(33)   a.   ŋaḍa balan   **ḍugumbil** ɲina-ŋu buṛa-n
           I.ERG DET.ABS woman.ABS sit-REL   see-PRESPST
           'I am watching the woman who is sitting down.'

                               (Dyirbal, Dixon 1972: 100, my boldfacing)

      b.   balan   **ḍugumbil** ŋaḍa buṛa-ŋu ɲina-ŋu
           DET.ABS woman.ABS I   see-REL sit-PASS
           'The woman whom I am watching is sitting down.'

                                 (Dyirbal, Dixon 1972: 100, my boldfacing)

Ergatives (for instance the ergative subject *ŋaḍa* 'I' in (32b)) cannot be directly relativized. They have to be promoted to absolutives first, creating a passive-like structure. In other words, only relativization of absolutives is possible, ergatives cannot be relativized.

    In conclusion, just like the agreement hierarchy, the relativization hierarchy is formalized best in terms of morphological case (cf. Caha, 2009). Reformulating Figure 1.2 in terms of case instead of grammatical function gives the schema in Figure 1.6.
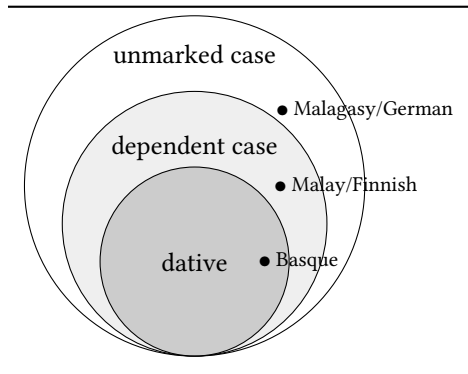

Figure 1.9: Relativization hierarchy (case)

This formulation in terms of case rather than grammatical function works as follows for the examples I gave earlier.

First, German is a language that has a particular relativization strategy for the unmarked case, as shown in (24). The unmarked nominative case can be relativized with a reduced relative clause, but the dependent accusative case and the dative case cannot. Second, Finnish is a language that has a particular relativization strategy for unmarked and dependent case, as shown in (29). The unmarked nominative case and the dependent accusative case can be relativized with a reduced relative clause, but the dative case cannot. Last, Basque is a language that has a particular relativization strategy for unmarked, dependent and dative case, as shown in (31). The unmarked ergative, dependent absolutive and dative case can be relativized by extraposing the head, and marking it with the invariable marker *-n*.

In the languages I discuss in this dissertation, I focus on languages that have nominative as unmarked case and accusative as dependent case, so Figure 1.10 suffices.
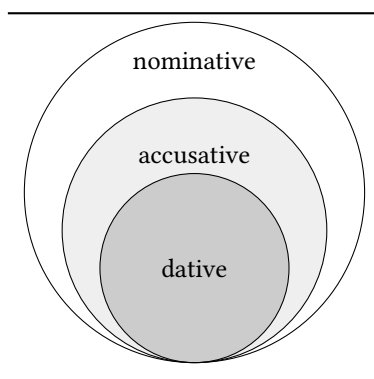

Figure 1.10: Relativization hierarchy (NOM/ACC/DAT)

In sum, this section has shown that relativization follows the same implicational hierarchy as agreement and as the case scale in headless relatives: NOM < ACC < DAT.

1.3   In morphology

In the two previous sections I showed that the case scale NOM < ACC < DAT can be observed in three syntactic phenomena. First, it appears in case competition in headless relatives. Second, the case scale forms the basis for the implicational hierarchy observed in agreement across languages. Third, the same implicational holds for relativization strategies cross-linguistically.

In this section, I show that this same case scale can be observed in morphology. First, syncretism only targets continuous regions on the case scale. Second, several languages show morphological containment that mirrors the case scale.

1.3.1 Syncretism

Syncretism refers to the phenomenon whereby two or more different functions are fulfilled by a single form (cf. Baerman, Brown, and Corbett, 2002). In this section I discuss literature that shows that syncretism patterns among nominative, accusative and dative are not random. Instead, they pattern along the case scale NOM < ACC < DAT.

It has widely been observed that syncretism is restricted by the linear sequence NOM — ACC — DAT (Baerman, Brown, and Corbett, 2005; Caha, 2009; Zompì, 2017) (and see McFadden 2018; Smith et al. 2019 for similar claims concerning root suppletion). That is, if one orders cases in this linear sequence, only contiguous regions in the sequence turn out to be syncretic. Following that, four possible patterns are attested crosslinguistically. First, all three cases are syncretic. Second, nominative and accusative are syncretic and the dative is not. Third, the accusative and the dative are syncretic and the nominative is not. Fourth, all cases are non-syncretic.

There is one pattern that is not attested crosslinguistically. This pattern does not target continuous regions, but non-contiguous ones: nominative and dative are syncretic and accusative is not. In other words, what does not exist is an ABA pattern, in which a form B intervenes between the two identically formed As (Bobaljik, 2012).

Table 1.7 shows examples for each of these possible patterns. I give an example of three distinct forms from Faroese. The second person singular is *tú* 'you' for nominative, *teg* 'you' for accusative and *tær* 'you' for dative (Lockwood 1977: 70). I give an example of a complete syncretism for nominative, accusative and dative from Dutch. The second person plural pronoun is *jullie* 'you.PL' is syncretic between all three cases. I give an example of a syncretism between accusative and dative but not nominative from Icelandic. The first person singular plural is *okkur* 'us' is syncretic between accusative and dative. The nominative has a separate form: *við* 'we' (Einarsson 1949: 68). I give an example of a syncretism between nominative and accusative but not dative from German. The third person singular feminine *sie* 'she/her' is syncretic between nominative and accusative. The dative has a separate form: *ihr* 'her'. Crucially, to the best of my knowledge, there is no language in which the nominative and the dative are syncretic but the accusative is not.

In sum, case syncretism follows the ordering of the case scale in headless relatives: NOM < ACC < DAT.

1.3.2 Morphological case containment

This section shows a second way in which NOM < ACC < DAT is reflected in morphology: morphological case containment (cf. Caha, 2010; Zompì, 2017; Smith et al., 2019). In some languages, the form that is used for the accusative literally contains

Table 1.7: Syncretism patterns

pattern			NOM	ACC	DAT	translation	language
A	B	C	tú	teg	tær	2SG	Faroese
A	A	A	jullie	jullie	jullie	2PL	Dutch
A	B	B	við	okkur	okkur	1PL	Icelandic
A	A	B	sie	sie	ihr	3SG.F	German
A	B	A					not attested

the form that is used for the nominative. In turn, the forms for the dative contains the form for the accusative. I illustrate this phenomenon with examples from Khanty.

Khanty (or Ostyak) shows morphological case containment in some of its pronouns (Nikolaeva 1999: 16 after Smith et al. 2019). Three examples are given in Table 1.8.

The nominative form for the first person singular is *ma* 'I'. The form for the accusative is *ma:ne:m* 'me'. This is the form for the nominative *ma* plus the accusative marker *-ne:m*. The form for the dative is *ma:ne:mna* 'me'. This is the form for the accusative *ma:ne:m* plus the dative marker *-na*. So, dative formally contains the accusative, and the accusative formally contains the nominative.

The third person singular and first person plural show the same pattern. The accusative forms *luwe:l* 'him/her' and *muŋe:w* 'us' contain the nominative forms *luw* and the *muŋ* plus the accusative marker *-e:l* or *-e:w*. The dative forms *luwe:lna* 'him/her' and *muŋe:wna* 'us' contain the accusative forms *luwe:l* and *muŋe:w* plus the dative marker *-na*. Again, the dative formally contains the accusative, which in turn contains the nominative.

Table 1.8: Morphological case containment in Khanty

	1SG	3SG	1PL
NOM	ma	luw	muŋ
ACC	ma:-**ne:m**	luw-**e:l**	muŋ-**e:w**
DAT	ma:-**ne:m-na**	luw-**e:l-na**	muŋ-**e:w-na**

Other languages that show this phenomenon are West Tocharian (Gippert, 1987) and Vlakh and Kalderaš Romani (respectively Friedman 1991 and Boretzky 1994).

In sum, some languages morphologically look like NOM-ACC-DAT. This exactly reflects the case scale NOM < ACC < DAT.

1.4   Summary

Case competition in headless relatives adheres to the case scale in (34). If the internal and external case differ, cases more on the right of the scale win over cases more to the left on the case.

(34)   NOM < ACC < DAT

This case scale is not only found in case competition in headless relatives. Implicational hierarchies regarding two syntactic phenomena appear across languages. The first one concerns agreement. If a language shows agreement with datives, it also shows agreement with accusatives and nominatives. If a language shows agreement with accusatives, it also shows agreement with nominatives. The second implicational hierarchy concerns relativization. If a dative in a language can be relativized with a particular strategy, an accusative and a nominative can be too using the same strategy. If an accusative can be relativized with a particular strategy, so can a nominative with this strategy.

The case scale can also be observed in morphological patterns. First, if the cases are ordered according to the case scale, syncretism only target continuous forms, no ABA pattern appears. Second, some languages show that the dative formally contains accusative, and that the accusative formally contains the nominative.

These phenomena show that the pattern observed in headless relatives is not something that stands on itself. The scale is a pattern that recurs across languages and across phenomena. Therefore, it should not be treated as an special process with its own stipulated rule. Instead, it is something general that should also follow from general processes in languages.

The next chapter shows how features of the nominative, accusative and dative are organized. The syntax fact presented in this chapter can be derived from the organization of these features.

Chapter 2

Case decomposition

At the beginning of the previous chapter I showed that the case scale NOM < ACC < DAT appears in headless relatives. In most accounts for headless relatives (cf. Harbert 1978; Pittner 1995; Vogel 2001; Grosu 2003a, an exception to this is Himmelreich 2017) the case scale is stipulated. Headless relatives simply obey to that hierarchy. Pittner (1995: 201:fn.4) makes this explicit: "One of the reviewers notes that an explanation in terms of a Case hierarchy is rather stipulative. However, as far as I know, nobody has suggested a nonstipulative explanation for these facts."

What I showed as well in the previous chapter is that the case scale NOM < ACC < DAT is a wide-spread phenomenon: it recurs in several phenomena across different languages. The scale can be observed in at least two more syntactic phenomena: agreement and relativization.[1] The case scale also appears within morphology in syncretism patterns and morphological case containment. Pittner (1995: 201:fn.4) makes this link to morphology as well: "Furthermore, the Case hierarchies receive some independent support by morphology as shown by the various inflectional paradigms."

I am not after a theory in which the case hierarchy is something construction specific, and syntax and morphology both have their own case hierarchy. I argue that there is a single trigger that is responsible for the case scales in different subparts of language (cf. Caha, 2019, on numeral constructions). Specifically, I show that the observed case scale naturally follows on the assumption that the case hierarchy is deeply anchored in syntax. The case scales in morphology and syntax are merely reflexes of how case is organized in language.[2]

This chapter is structured as follows. First, I introduce a specific case decomposition (Caha, 2009). In the two following sections, I show how this case decomposition is able to derive the syncretism and morphological case containment facts from the

---

[1]In this dissertation I do not work out accounts for these two syntactic phenomena. They merely serve as an illustration that the pattern is reflected in other syntactic phenomena as well.

[2]Himmelreich (2017) works this intuition out in a different way.

previous chapter. I make this concrete in the framework Nanosyntax (Starke, 2009). Finally, I show how the case decomposition translates to the case scale observed in headless relatives.

2.1 The basic idea

Caha (2009, 2013) (followed by cf. Starke 2009; Bobaljik 2012; McFadden 2018; Van Baal and Don 2018; Smith et al. 2019) has extensively argued that case should be decomposed into privative features. Specifically, the decomposition is cumulative: each case has a different number of case features, and the number grows one by one. This is illustrated in Table 2.1. Accusative has all the features that nominative has (here F1) plus one extra (here F2). Dative has all the features accusative has (F1 and F2) plus one extra (F3).

Table 2.1: Case decomposed

case	features
NOM	F1
ACC	F1, F2
DAT	F1, F2, F3

The case scale, repeated in (1), actually indicates containment. Nominative corresponds to a set of features (namely F1) that is contained in the set of features of accusative (which is namely F1 and F2). Similarly, nominative corresponds to a set of features that is contained in the set of features of dative (which is namely F1, F2 and F3). Lastly, accusative corresponds to a set of features (F1 and F2) that is contained in the set of features of dative (F1, F2 and F3).

(1)   NOM < ACC < DAT

The decomposition in Table 2.1 forms the basis to derive the case scale effects observed in the previous chapter. The next sections show how morphological case containment and syncretism effects follow naturally. After that, I show how the decomposition also derives the case competition facts in headless relatives.

2.2 Deriving syncretism

Case syncretism follows the ordering of the case scale NOM < ACC < DAT. Along this scale, only contiguous regions in the sequence are syncretic. In this section I show how case syncretism patterns can be derived from the case decomposition in

Table 2.1. In Table 2.2 I repeat from Table 1.7 examples that shows the possible and impossible syncretism patterns.

Table 2.2: Syncretism patterns (repeated)

pattern			NOM	ACC	DAT	translation	language
A	B	C	tú	teg	tær	2SG	Faroese
A	A	A	jullie	jullie	jullie	2PL	Dutch
A	B	B	við	okkur	okkur	1PL	Icelandic
A	A	B	sie	sie	ihr	3SG.F	German
A	B	A					not attested

Table 2.2 shows that if one orders cases in the linear sequence NOM — ACC — DAT, only contiguous regions in the sequence turn out to be syncretic. First, all three cases can be non-syncretic, as in Faroese. Second, all three cases can be syncretic, as in Dutch. Third, the accusative and the dative can be syncretic and the nominative not, as in Icelandic. Fourth, nominative and accusative can be syncretic and the dative not, as in German. The pattern that is not attested crosslinguistically is the one that targets non-contiguous regions in the table, the ABA pattern (Baerman, Brown, and Corbett, 2005; Caha, 2009; Zompì, 2017).

The syncretism facts follow in a system in which the case is decomposed as in Table 2.1 and in which lexicalization relies on containment. The latter means that a phonological form is not only inserted when the lexical specification is identical to the syntax, but also when the syntactic features are a subset of the lexical specification. The intuition is the following. Syncretic forms are realized by a single 'lexical entry' from the 'lexicon'.[3] A lexical entry can be applied if it contains all features, as long as there is no more specific one. This system can generate the patterns ABC, AAA, ABB and AAB, but not ABA.

Before I show how the four attest patterns can be derived (and the one unattested not), I need to make some theoretical assumptions explicit about Nanosyntax, the framework in which this dissertation is worked out. First, I show how the Nanosyntactic system is set up in such a way that morphological patterns (like syncretism, but also morphological containment) can inform us about the way syntax is structured. Therefore, I briefly discuss the general architecture of Nanosyntax, its postsyntactic lexicon, and the content and shape of lexical entries. Lastly, I discuss how multiple features (like F1, F2 and F3 from Table 2.1) can be spelled out by a single phonological element, i.e. phrasal spellout.

[3] I return to the terms lexical entry and lexicon shortly.

In Nanosyntax, syntax starts with atomic features, and it builds complex syntactic trees. Specifically, there are no 'feature bundles' (from a pre-syntactic lexicon) that enter the syntax. The only way complex feature structures come to exist is a a result of merge. After syntax (actually, each instance of merge), the syntactic structure is matched against the lexicon for pronunciation. The lexicon 'translates' between lexical trees (i.e. syntactic representations) on the one hand and phonology (PF) and concepts (CF) on the other hand.[4]

In Nanosyntax, the lexicon contains lexical entries, which are links between lexical trees, phonological representations and conceptual representations (Starke, 2014).[5] I leave the conceptual representation out of discussion for now, as it is not relevant for the discussion here. The fact that only syntax can create complex feature structures also has a consequence for lexical entires in the lexicon. Syntactic structures are constrained by certain principles, such that only well-formed syntactic structures exist. Since lexical entries in the lexicon link lexical trees to phonological and conceptual representation, these lexical trees are constrained by the same principles as syntactic structures are. As a result, the lexicon only contains well-formed lexical trees. The lexicon does not contain unstructured 'feature bundles', because they could never be created by syntax.

Following this logic, a feature bundle as in (2) cannot exist. It cannot have entered syntax, because syntax starts with atomic features. It can also not be created by syntax, because complex structures can only be created with merge.

(2)   [F1, F2, F3]

Instead, a possible lexical tree looks as in (3). The features are merged one by one in a binary structure.

(3)   DATP
            ╱   ╲
          F3   ACCP
                ╱   ╲
              F2   F1
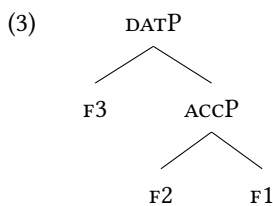
This structure leads to the concept of phrasal spellout: not terminals but multiple syntactic heads (phrases) are realized with a single piece of phonology (i.e. a single

---

[4]Throughout the dissertation I call the syntactic representations in the lexicon 'lexical trees' in order to distinguish them from syntactic structures in the syntax.

[5]The lexical tree does not have to correspond to both a phonological and a conceptual representation. Lexical trees that only correspond to a conceptual representations and not to phonological representations are (phrasal or clausal) idioms. Lexical trees that only correspond to phonological representations but not to conceptual representations are for instance irregular plurals.

morpheme). Applying this to (3), not the terminals F1, F2 and F3 receive a realization, but ᴀᴄᴄP and ᴅᴀᴛP are spelled out. A necessary requirement is that these multiple syntactic heads form a constituent. That means that ᴅᴀᴛP cannot be spelled out without ᴀᴄᴄP.

Let me illustrate all of the above with the Faroese pronouns from Table 2.2. I simplify the situation in two respects. First, I do not show the internal complexity of the pronouns, including person and number features. Instead, I give a triangle, indicating that this is a complex syntactic structure. I refer to is as the person-number phrase it refers to, so e.g. 2sGP. Second, in this simplified representation I consider the Faroese pronouns to be monomorphemic. I ignore the fact that all three pronouns have the stem *t* with a suffix following it.

The lexical entry for *tú* is given in (4). The lexical tree consists of the second person singular pronoun (the 2sGP), and F1, making it a ɴᴏᴍP. The phonological representation that is linked to the lexical tree is *tú*.[6]

(4)   ɴᴏᴍP ⟺ *tú*

        F1   2sGP
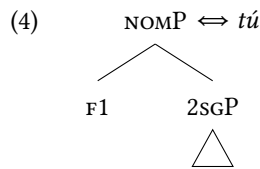
The lexical entry for *teg* is given in (5). The lexical tree consists of all the features of the lexical tree in (4), plus F2, making it an ᴀᴄᴄP. The linked phonological representation is *teg*.

(5)   ᴀᴄᴄP ⟺ *teg*

      F2   ɴᴏᴍP
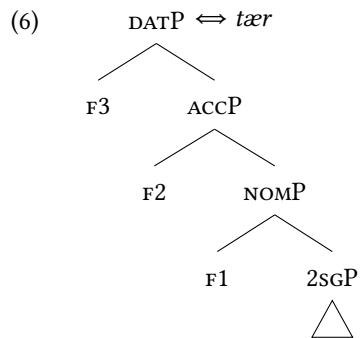
            F1   2sGP
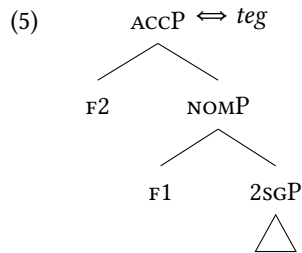
The lexical entry for *tær* is given in (6). The lexical tree consists of all the features of the lexical tree in (5), plus F3, making it an ᴅᴀᴛP. The linked phonological representation is *tær*.

---

[6]Throughout the dissertation, I use lexical trees and phonological forms connected by a double arrow (⟺) to refer to a lexical entry.

(6)   DATP ⟺ *tær*
            ╱   ╲
          F3   ACCP
                ╱   ╲
              F2   NOMP
                    ╱   ╲
                  F1   2SGP
   △

The lexical trees and their phonological counterparts I gave in (4) to (6) are lexical entries. These lexical entries are used to spell out syntactic structures. I give examples of syntactic structures in (7) to (9).

The lexical tree in (4) is identical to the syntactic structure in (7). Therefore, this syntactic structure is spelled out as *tú*.[7]

(7)
              NOMP
            ╱   ╲
          F1   2SGP
                  △

                 tú
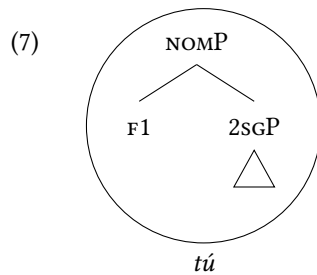
The lexical tree in (5) is identical to the syntactic structure in (8), and it is spelled out as *teg*.

(8)
              ACCP
            ╱   ╲
          F2   NOMP
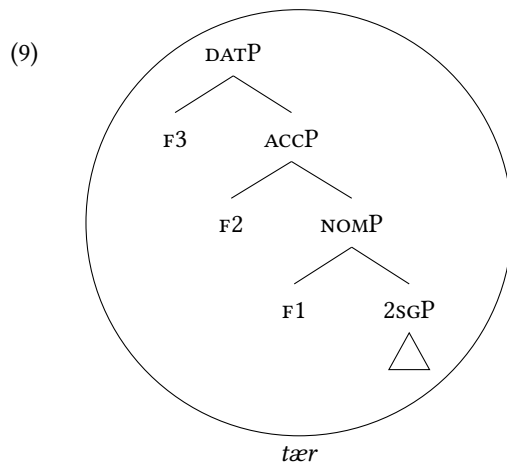   ╱   ╲
              F1   2SGP
                      △

                 teg
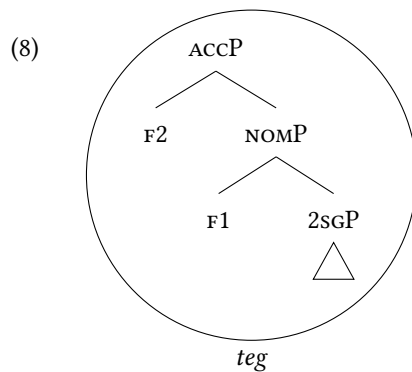
The lexical tree in (6) is identical to the syntactic structure in (9), and it is spelled out as *tær*.

---

[7]Throughout this dissertation I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, and I place the corresponding phonology under it.

(9)

DATP

F3   ACCP

F2   NOMP

F1   2SGP

tær

In the Faroese examples above, the syntactic structures are all identical to the lexical trees. However, Nanosyntax assumes that to be a successful match, identity is not a necessary requirement. Instead, matching relies on a containment relation. A lexical entry applies when it contains all features. This is formalized as in (10).

(10)   **The Superset Principle** Starke (2009):
         A lexically stored tree matches a syntactic node iff the lexically stored tree contains the syntactic node.

Let me illustrate this with the Dutch second person plural pronoun from Table 2.2. This pronoun is syncretic between between the nominative, accusative and dative. The lexicon only contains a single lexical entry, namely (11). The lexical tree consists of the complex lexical tree that corresponds to the second person plural pronoun (the 2PLP), and F1, F2 and F3 making it a DATP. The phonological representation that is linked to the lexical tree is *jullie*. The nominative, the accusative and the dative can all be spelled out with this single lexical entry using the Superset Principle in (10).

(11)   DATP ⟺ *jullie*

F3   ACCP

F2   NOMP

F1   2PLP
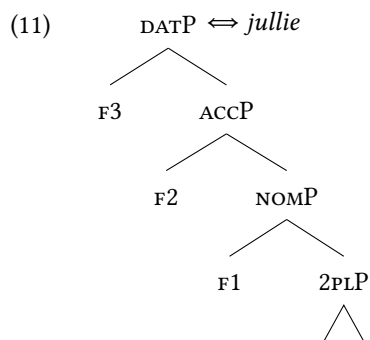
The syntactic structure of the dative, given in (12), is the least exciting of the three.

It is identical to the lexical tree (11), and therefore, spelled out as *jullie*.
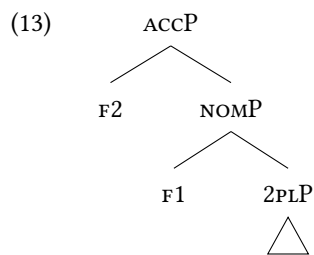
(12)

```
                    DATP
                   ╱    ╲
                 F3      ACCP
                        ╱    ╲
                      F2      NOMP
                             ╱    ╲
                           F1      2PLP
                                    △
```
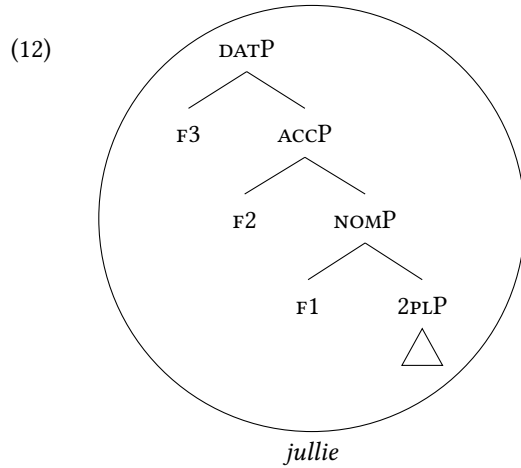
jullie

The syntactic structure of the accusative is given in (13).

(13)

```
          ACCP
         ╱    ╲
       F2      NOMP
              ╱    ╲
            F1      2PLP
                     △
```

The lexical entry in (11) is not identical to this syntactic structure. However, the lexical tree contains the syntactic structure of the accusative. I repeat the lexical entry for *jullie* in (14), marking the subpart of the tree that matches the syntactic structure in gray.

(14)   DATP ⟺ *jullie*

```
        ╱    ╲
      F3      ACCP
             ╱    ╲
           F2      NOMP
                  ╱    ╲
                F1      2PLP
                         △
```
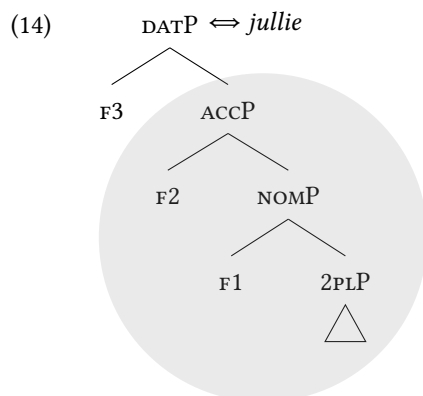
As a result, the accusative is spelled out as *jullie*, shown in (15).

(15)

ACCP

F2   NOMP

F1   2PLP

jullie
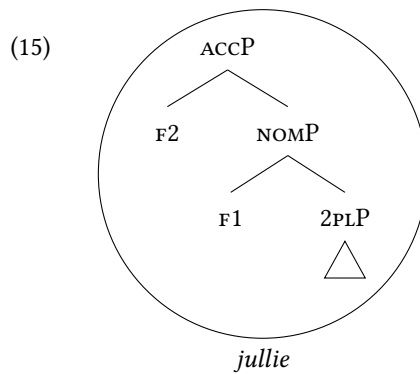
The same holds for the nominative. The syntactic structure is given in (16).

(16)   NOMP

F1   2PLP
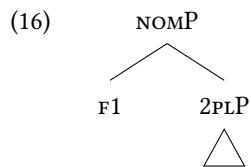
The lexical tree in (11) is not identical to this syntactic structure. However, again, the lexical tree contains the syntactic structure of the nominative. I repeat the lexical entry for *jullie* in (17), marking the subpart of the tree that matches the syntactic structure in gray.
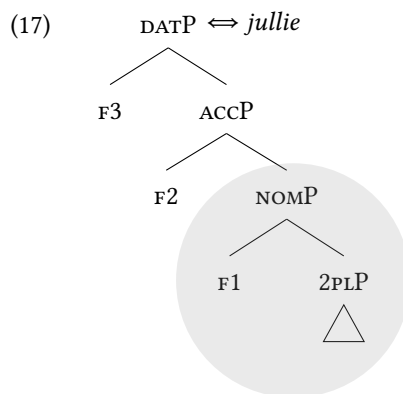
(17)   DATP ⟺ *jullie*

F3   ACCP

F2   NOMP

F1   2PLP

As a result, the nominative is spelled out as *jullie*, as shown in (18).

(18)

jullie
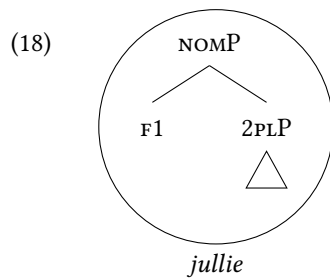
A question arises at this point. Why are the accusative and nominative in Faroese not spelled out by the lexical entry for the dative (and why is the nominative not spelled out by the lexical entry for the accusative)? These syntactic structures are namely contained in the lexical tree for the dative (and the accusative). The reason for that comes from how competition between lexical entries is regulated in Nanosyntax. When two lexical entries compete, the best fit wins. The best fit is the lexical tree with the least features that are not used. This is formalized as in (19).

(19)   **The Elsewhere Condition** (Kiparsky 1973, formulated as in Caha 2020b):
        When two entries can spell out a given node, the more specific entry wins.
        Under the Superset Principle governed insertion, the more specific entry is
        the one which has fewer unused features.

I show how the Superset Principle and the Elsewhere Condition interact in a competition with the Faroese lexical entries. I only discuss the nominative *tú* and the accusative *teg*, because for the dative *tær* there is only a single candidate that contains all features: the lexical entry *tær*.

    Consider first again the syntactic structure for the nominative in (20), repeated from (7).

(20)

The three lexical entries for *tú* in (4), *teg* in (5) and *tær* in (6) are candidates for this syntactic structure. I repeat the lexical entries for *tú*, *teg* and *tær* in (21), marking the subpart of the tree that matches the syntactic structure in gray.

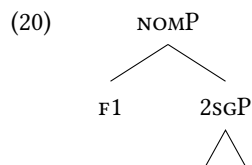(21)   a.

NOMP ⟺ *tú*

F1   2SGP

b.

ACCP ⟺ *teg*

F2   NOMP

F1   2SGP

c.

DATP ⟺ *tær*

F3   ACCP

F2   NOMP

F1   2SGP
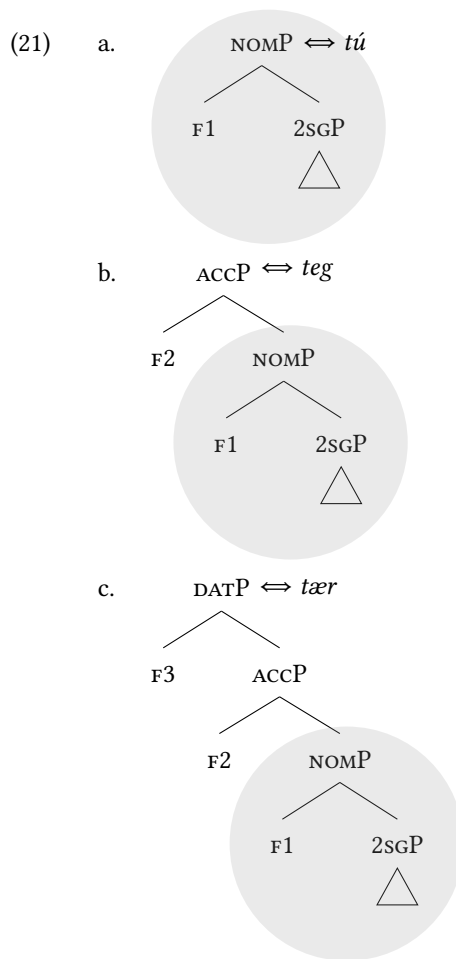
The first, (21a), has no unused features. The second, (21b), has one unused feature: F2. The third, (21c), has two unused features: F2 and F3. Because (21a) has the least amount of unused features, it wins the competition, and the syntactic structure is spelled out as *tú*. This is shown in (22).

(22)

NOMP

F1   2SGP

tú
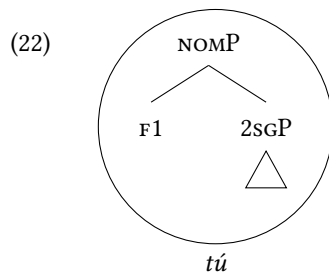
Consider the syntactic structure for the accusative in (23), repeated from (8).

(23)   ACCP
                 /   \
              F2   NOMP
                      /   \
                   F1   2SGP
                            △
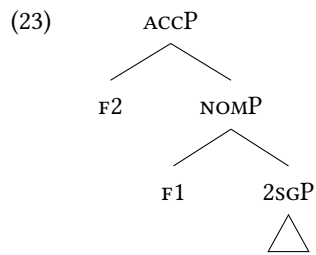
The two lexical entries for *teg* in (5) and *tær* in (6) are candidates for this syntactic structure. The lexical entry for *tú* in (4) is not a candidate here, because it does not contain the complete syntactic structure (i.e. it lacks F2). I repeat the lexical entries for *teg* and *tær* in (17), marking the subpart of the tree that matches the syntactic structure in gray.

(24)   a.   ACCP ⟺ *teg*
                        /   \
                     F2   NOMP
                             /   \
                          F1   2SGP
                                   △

         b.   DATP ⟺ *tær*
                  /   \
               F3   ACCP
                      /   \
                   F2   NOMP
                           /   \
                        F1   2SGP
                                 △
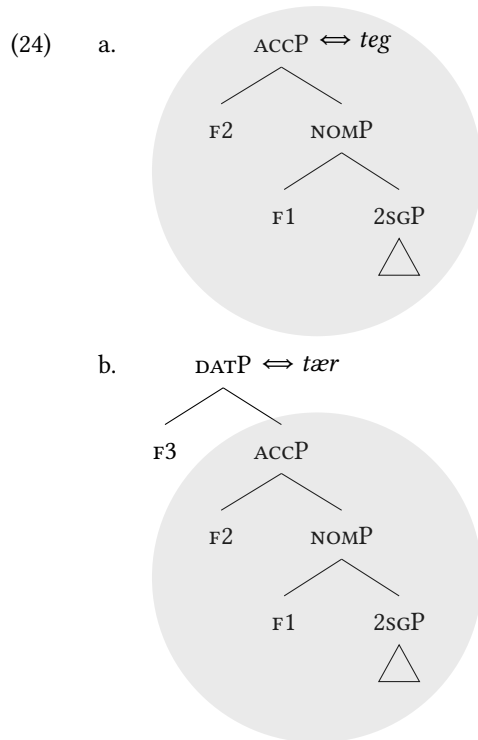
The former, (24a), has no unused features. The latter, (24b), has one unused feature: F2. Because (24a) has fewer unused features than (24b), it wins the competition, and the syntactic structure is spelled out as *teg*. This is shown in (25).

(25)

teg
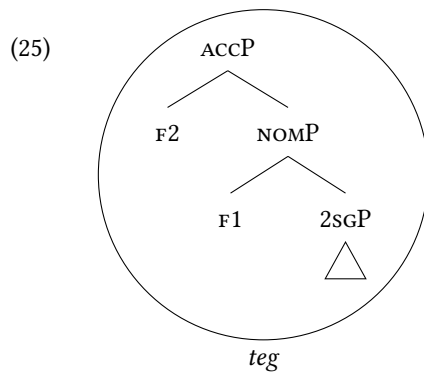
Table 2.2 contains two more attested patterns: the ABB in Icelandic and the AAB in German. In the remainder of this section I show how these two patterns are derived, and that the unattested one cannot be derived. I also show how the system is unable to derive an ABA pattern, which is crosslinguistically unattested (Baerman, Brown, and Corbett, 2005; Caha, 2009; Zompì, 2017).

Consider the Icelandic pattern. For the first person plural, Icelandic uses *við* as nominative and *okkur* as accusative and dative. Two lexical entries are needed for that. The first one in (26a) contains pronominal features and F1, and corresponds to the phonology *við*. The second one is given in (26b). It contains in addition to (26a) also the feature F2 and F3. The phonological representation that is linked to it is *okkur*.

(26)   a.   NOMP ⟺ *við*

        b.   DATP ⟺ *okkur*
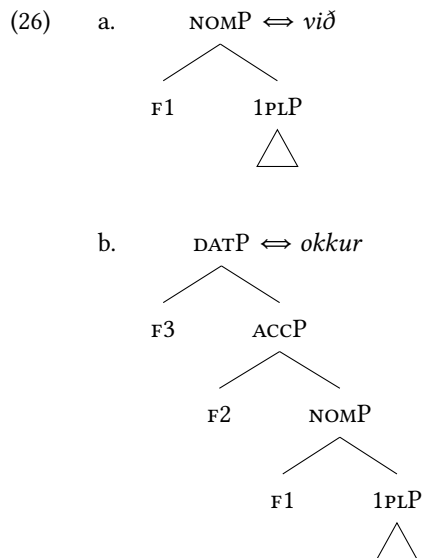
The syntactic structure for the dative is given in (27). It is contained in the lexical tree in (26b), and therefore, spelled out as *okkur*. The lexical entry in (26a) is not

considered, because it does not contain F2 and F3.

(27)

```
              DATP
             /    \
           F3     ACCP
                 /    \
               F2     NOMP
                     /    \
                   F1     1PLP
                           △
                         okkur
```

The syntactic structure for the accusative is given in (28). It is contained in the lexical tree in (26b), and therefore, spelled out as *okkur*. The lexical entry in (26a) is not considered, because it does not contain F2.

(28)

```
         ACCP
        /    \
      F2     NOMP
            /    \
          F1     1PLP
                  △
                okkur
```

The syntactic structure for the nominative is given in (29).

(29)

```
       NOMP
      /    \
    F1     1PLP
            △
```
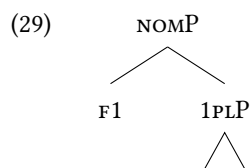
It is contained in the lexical tree for *við* in (26a) and in the one for *okkur* in (26b). I repeat the lexical entries for *við* and *okkur* in (30), marking the subparts of the trees that match the syntactic structure in gray.

(30) a.

NOMP ⟺ *við*

F1   1PLP

b.

DATP ⟺ *okkur*

F3   ACCP

F2   NOMP

F1   1PLP
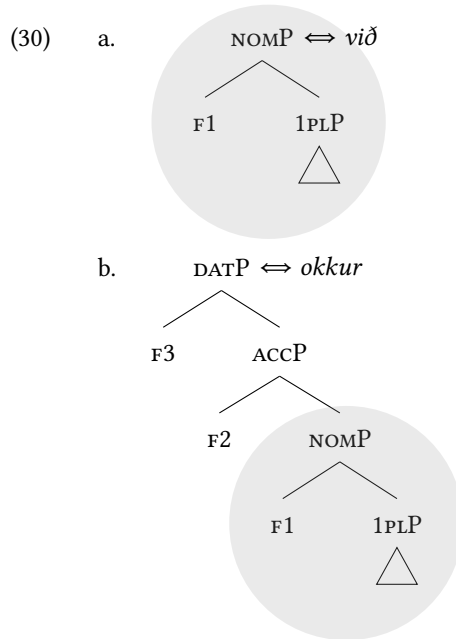
The former, (30a), has no unused features. The latter, (30b), has two unused features: F2 and F3. Because (30a) has fewer unused features, it wins the competition, and the syntactic structure is spelled out as *við*. This is shown in (31).

(31)

NOMP
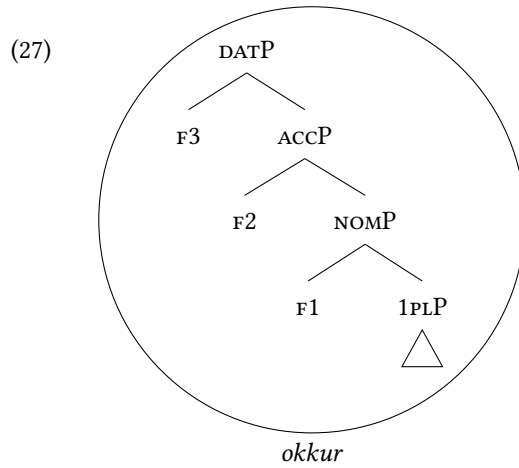
F1   1PLP

við

For the third person singular feminine, German uses *sie* as nominative and accusative, and *ihr* as dative. Two lexical entries are needed for that. The first one in (32a) contains pronominal features, F1 and F2. It corresponds to the phonology *sie*. The second one is given in (32b). It contains in addition to *sie* in (32a) also the feature F3. It corresponds to the phonology *ihr*.

(32)   a.   ᴀᴄᴄP ⟺ *sie*

                 ꜰ2   ɴᴏᴍP

                        ꜰ1   3 sɢ.ꜰP
                                   △

        b.   ᴅᴀᴛP ⟺ *ihr*

                 ꜰ3   ᴀᴄᴄP

                        ꜰ2   ɴᴏᴍP

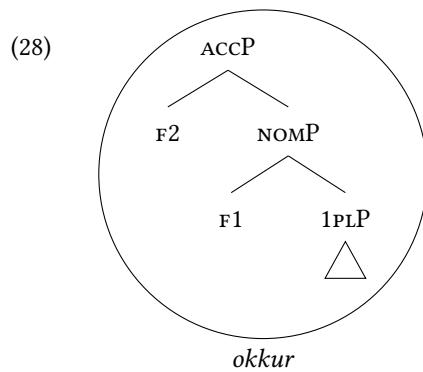   ꜰ1   3 sɢ.ꜰP
                                          △

The syntactic structure for the dative is given in (33). It is contained in the lexical tree in (32b), and therefore, spelled out as *ihr*. The lexical entry in (32a) is not considered, because it does not contain ꜰ3.

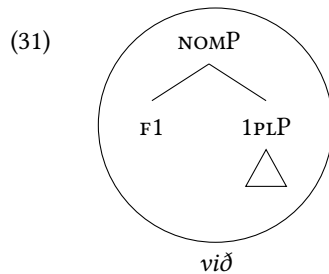(33)

            ᴅᴀᴛP

         ꜰ3   ᴀᴄᴄP

                ꜰ2   ɴᴏᴍP

                       ꜰ1   3 sɢ.ꜰP
                                  △

            ihr

The syntactic structure for the accusative is given in (34).

(34)

```
              ACCP
             /    \
           F2      NOMP
                  /    \
                F1      3SG.FP
                          △
```
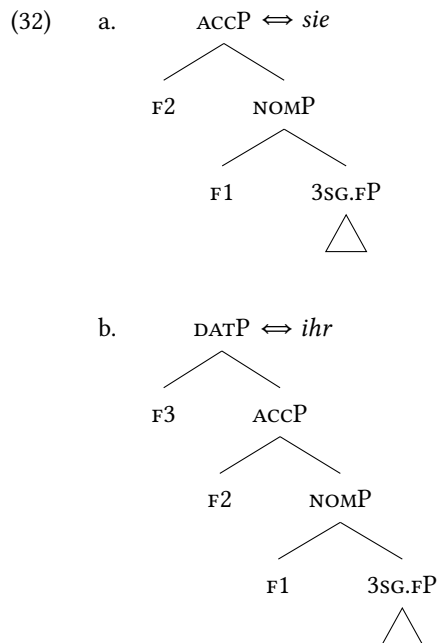
It is contained in the lexical tree for *sie* in (32a) and in the one for *ihr* in (32b). I repeat the lexical entries for *sie* and *ihr* in (35), marking the subparts of the trees that match the syntactic structure in gray.
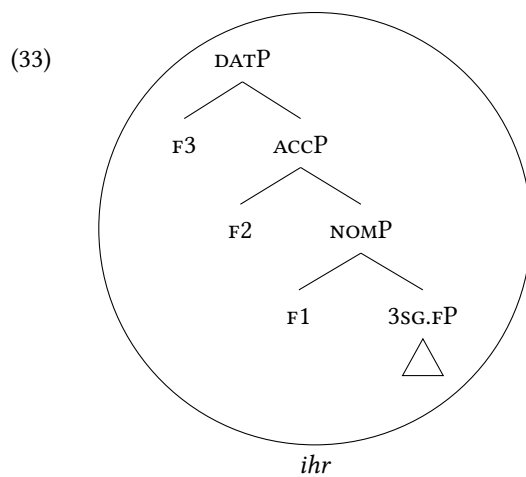
(35) a.

```
              ACCP ⟺ sie
             /    \
           F2      NOMP
                  /    \
                F1      3SG.FP
                          △
```

  b.

```
           DATP ⟺ ihr
          /    \
        F3      ACCP
               /    \
             F2      NOMP
                    /    \
                  F1      3SG.FP
                            △
```
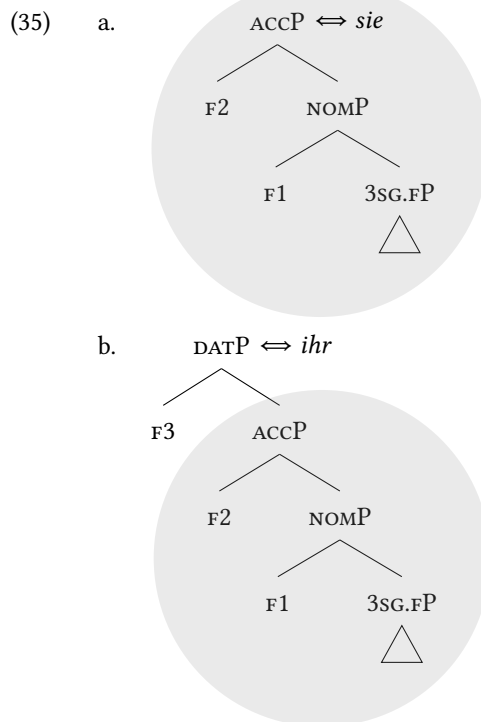
The former, (35a), has one no unused features. The latter, (35b), has one unused feature: F3. Because (35a) has fewer unused features, it wins the competition, and the syntactic structure is spelled out as *sie*. This is shown in (36)
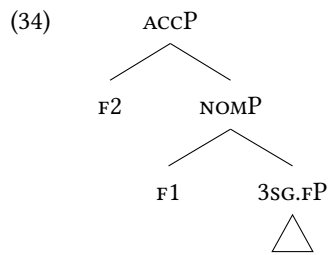
(36)

```
              ACCP
              /\
          F2     NOMP
                  /\
               F1    3SG.FP
                      △
```

sie
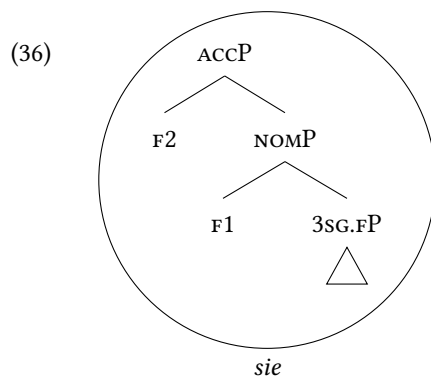
The syntactic structure for the nominative is given in (37).

(37)

```
        NOMP
        /\
     F1    3SG.FP
            △
```
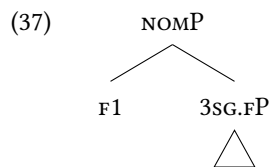
It is contained in the lexical tree for *sie* in (32a) and in the one *ihr* in (32b). I repeat
the lexical entries for *sie* and *ihr* in (38), marking the subparts of the trees that match
the syntactic structure in gray.

(38)   a.   ACCP ⟺ *sie*

```
              /\
          F2     NOMP
                  /\
               F1    3SG.FP
                      △
```

        b.   DATP ⟺ *ihr*

```
              /\
          F3     ACCP
                  /\
               F2    NOMP
                      /\
                   F1    3SG.FP
                          △
```

The former, (38a), has one unused feature: F2. The latter, (38b), has two unused features: F2 and F3. Because (38a) has fewer unused features, it wins the competition, and the syntactic structure is spelled out as *sie*. This is shown in (39).

(39)

sie

This last example also illustrates that the laid out system is unable to derive an ABA pattern. The unability of the system to derive such a pattern is a welcome one, since the pattern is unattested cross-linguistically. In an ABA pattern, the nominative and the dative are syncretic,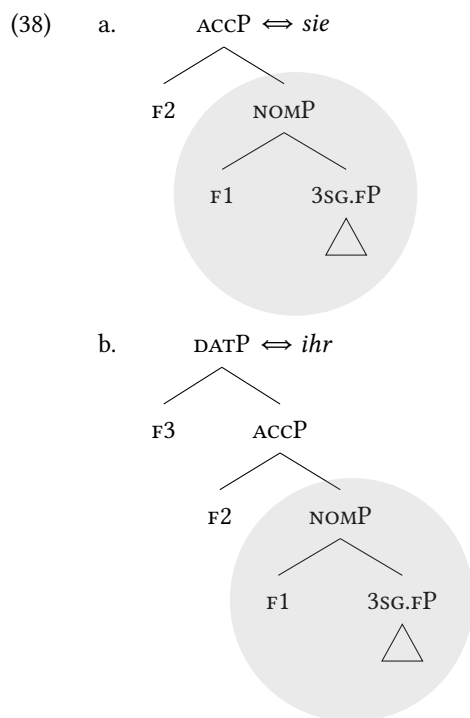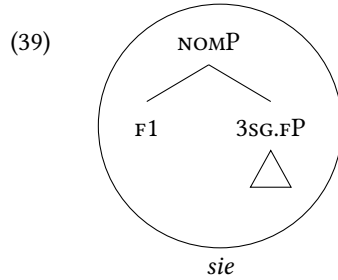 to the exclusion of the accusative. Such a language would be like German but then the nominative would be *ihr* instead of *sie*.

This result could never be derived with the lexical entries given in (32a) and (32b). *Ihr* is inserted for the dative and the cases contained in it (so accusative and nominative), unless a more specific lexical entry is found. *Sie* is the more specific lexical entry that is found from the accusative on. From the accusative on (so for the accusative and nominative), *sie* will be inserted until a more specific entry is found. If no entry is specified for nominative, *sie* will surface. *Ihr* will not resurface, because the lexical entry for *sie* is and will remain to be more specific.

In sum, the cumulative case decomposition from Table 2.1 can derive the observed syncretism patterns.

2.3   Deriving morphological case containment

Some languages morphologically reflect the case scale NOM < ACC < DAT. Khanty is an example of such a language. The phonological form of the accusative literally contains the phonological form of the nominative, and the form of the dative contains the form of the accusative. In this section I show how morphological case containment can be derived from the case decomposition in Table 2.1. I repeat an example from Khanty that shows morphological case containment in Table 2.3 (Nikolaeva 1999: 16).

The intuition is the following. The morphological form of the pronouns mirrors the cumulative feature decomposition given in Table 2.1. That is, the accusative has the morphology that the nominative has (*luw*) plus something extra (*e:l*). Similarly, the accusative also has the features that the nominative has (F1) plus something extra (F2). The dative has the morphology that the accusative has (*luw-e:l*) plus something

Table 2.3: Morphological case containment of 3sɢ in Khanty

	3sɢ
NOM	luw
ACC	luw-**e:l**
DAT	luw-**e:l**-na

extra (*na*). Again, similarly, the dative has the features that the accusative has (ꜰ1, ꜰ2) plus something extra (ꜰ3).

Before I show how languages with morphological case containment can be derived, I need to discuss how variation between languages is modeled in Nanosyntax. Crosslinguistic variation is namely explained in terms of differences in the lexicon. In other words, the syntactic structure is identical across languages, but the lexical entries package features together differently.

Let me discuss the differences between synthetic and agglutinative morphology to make this more concrete. Take the accusative, which contains ꜰ1 and ꜰ2 in all languages. The languages discussed in the previous section, Section 2.2, are all synthetic languages. ꜰ2 can only be spelled out in a single lexical entry together with ꜰ1. The result is that the examples are syncretic (i.e. formally identical) or suppletive (i.e. formally unrelated). The language I discuss in this section is agglutinative. ꜰ2 is not spelled out in the same lexical entry with ꜰ1. Instead, the ꜰ2 is spelled out by its own lexical entry. The result is that the accusative formally contains the nominative.

Let me illustrate this by deriving the 3sɢ paradigm in Khanty. First, I give the lexical entry for the nominative third person singular. It contains pronominal features and the feature ꜰ1. The phonological form associated with the structure is *luw*. The lexical entry is given in (40).

(40)   NOMP ⟺ *luw*

       ꜰ1   3sɢP
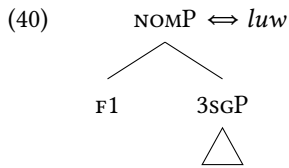
The syntactic structure in for the nominative is given in (41). It is contained in the lexical tree in (41), and the nominative is spelled out as *luw*.

(41)

luw
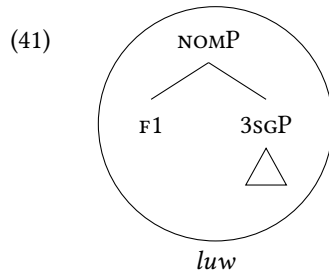
As shown in Table 2.3, the morphological form of the accusative contains the morphological form of the nominative (*luw*) plus an extra morpheme (*e:l*). As shown in Table 2.1, the syntactic features of the accusative contain the syntactic features of the nominative (F1) plus an extra feature (F2). Accordingly, I give the lexical entry for the accusative marker *e:l* in (42).[8]

(42)   ACCP $\Longleftrightarrow$ *e:l*
        |
       F2
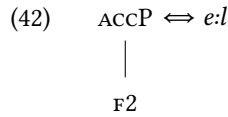
Luw-e:l consists of two morphemes that both correspond to their own piece of syntactic structure: *luw* and *e:l*. But how do these two morphemes combine? This issue brings me to another detour into the Nanosyntactic theory, which is about spellout driven movement.

   As discussed in the previous section, spellout in Nanosyntax only targets constituents. That means that it is impossible to let ACCP spell out as *e:l* while it contains NOMP.[9]

(43)

luw
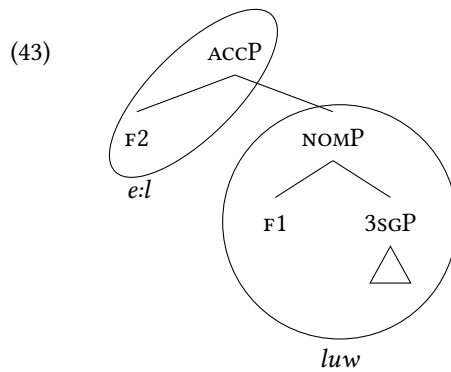
The lexical entry in (42) can only match the syntactic structure if NOMP moves away, leaving the ACCP containing F2 behind. In other words, the syntactic structure needs

---

[8]Note that it is crucial here to have a theory in which the features that form an accusative contain the features that form a nominative. If not, it would be a surprise that the nominative form is contained in the accusative form. The same holds for the accusative and dative.

[9]Notice that this also gives the incorrect order of the morphemes: *e:l-luw* instead of *luw-e:l*.

to be modified in such a way that the complement of F2 is not in the way anymore.

Exactly this movement is one of the two so-called 'evacuation movements' that is part of the spellout procedure in Nanosyntax.[10] I showed in Section 2.2 that lexical entries are matched using the Superset Principle and the Elsewhere Condition. If there is no match in the lexicon for a particular syntactic structure, two types of (evacuation) movement can take place, in a fixed order.[11] The movement types change the syntactic structure in such a way that they generate new constituents that are possible matches for spellout.[12] For the discussion in this section, only the second type of movement is relevant: complement movement. In this type of movement, the complement of a particular feature moves to the specifier of that same feature.

This is exactly the type of movement I described as necessary for the Khanty pronoun. The movement is displayed in (44). The complement of F2, the NOMP, moves to the specifier of ACCP.[13]

(44)
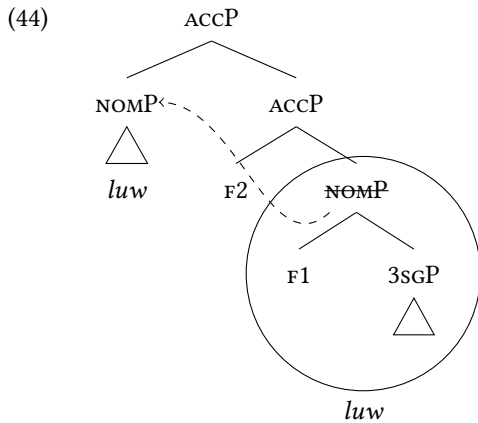
The result of the movement is given in (45). The lexical tree in (42) matches the syntactic structure, and ACCP is spelled out as *e:l*.

---

[10]In Chapter III I introduce the spellout procedure in more detail.

[11]The two types of movement are cyclic movement and snowball movement, also used to derive the possible orders in DEM > NUM > ADJ > N (Cinque, 2005).

[12]This type of movement is different from syntactic movement. It is driven by spellout, it does not have any interpretational effects, and it does not leave any traces (Starke, 2018). In Chapter III I return to 'regular' syntactic movement in Nanosyntax.

[13]In its landing position the internal structure of the NOMP is no longer shown (to save some space), and its phonological form is placed under the triangle. The strikethrough of the lower NOMP indicates that the complement of F2 disappears.

(45)

```
              ACCP
            /      \
       NOMP        ( ACCP )
        /\         (  |   )
      luw          ( F2  )
                      e:l
```
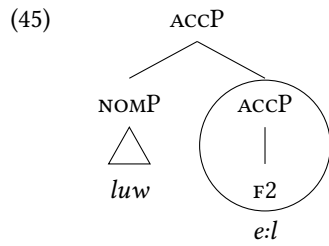
Just as Khanty has an additional morpheme that shows up in the accusative, it also has a morpheme that shows up in the dative. Similarly, just as the accusative has one more feature than the nominative (F1, F2 vs. F1), the dative has one more feature than the accusative (F1, F2, F3 vs. F1, F2). This leads me to pose the lexical entry in (46).

(46)   DATP ⟺ *na*
          |
          F3
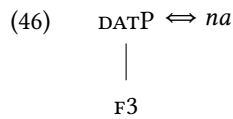
Again, because spellout only targets constituents, F3 cannot be spelled out right after it has been merged, as shown in (47).

(47)

```
          ( DATP )
          (  /  \ )
        ( F3 )    ACCP
        ( na )   /     \
              NOMP      ACCP
               /\        /\
             luw        e:l
```
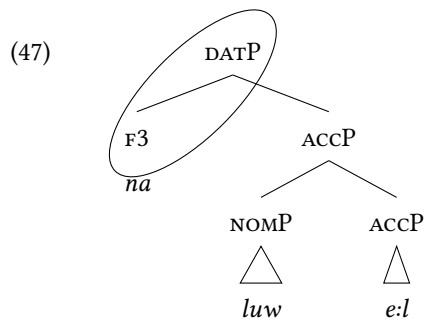
The same complement movement as before has to take place, which is shown in (48). The complement of F3, the ACCP, moves to the specifier of DATP.

(48)
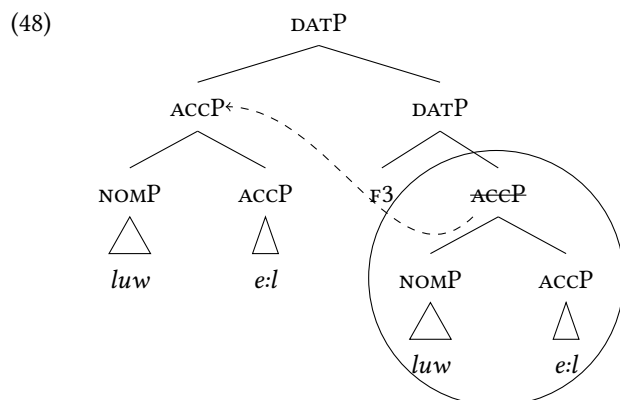
(The result of the movement is given in (49). The lexical tree in (46) matches the
syntactic structure, and DATP is spelled out as *na*.

(49)
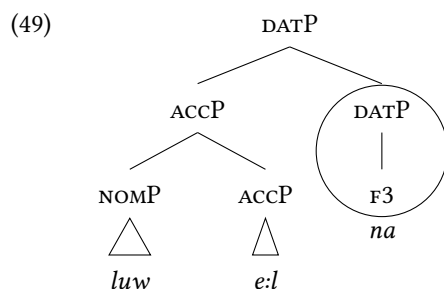
In sum, the cumulative case decomposition from Table 2.1 can derive the morpho-
logical case containment facts.

2.4   The intuition for headless relatives

In headless relatives, the internal case and the external case compete to surface on
the relative pronoun. The two competing cases adhere to the case scale NOM < ACC
< DAT, in which cases more to the right always win over cases more to the left. In
this section I show how case competition in headless relatives can be derived from
the case decomposition in Table 2.1.

I repeat the summary of the data pattern for Gothic in Table 2.4. I gave the cells
different shadings depending on which cases compete. The dark gray cells are the
ones in which dative and the accusative compete, and the dative wins. The light
gray cells are the ones in which the dative and the nominative compete, and the
dative again wins. The uncolored cells are the ones in which the accusative and the
nominative compete, and the accusative wins.

The intuition is the following. The headless relatives reflect the cumulative fea-
ture decomposition given in Table 2.1. A case wins the competition if it contains

Table 2.4: Summary of Gothic headless relative (repeated)

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[ɴᴏᴍ]	[ᴀᴄᴄ]	[ᴅᴀᴛ]
[ɴᴏᴍ]		ᴀᴄᴄ	ᴅᴀᴛ
[ᴀᴄᴄ]	ᴀᴄᴄ		ᴅᴀᴛ
[ᴅᴀᴛ]	ᴅᴀᴛ	ᴅᴀᴛ	

all features the other case has. The dative contains all features that the accusative has, so the dative surfaces. Similarly, the dative contains all features the nominative has, and again the dative surfaces. The same holds for the last pair: the accusative contains all features the nominative has, so the accusative surfaces. I illustrate this per case pair.

I start with the competition between dative and accusative, in which dative wins. The corresponding cells are marked dark gray in Table 2.4. In (50) I show the syntactic structure of a dative relative pronoun. For now I let syntactic structure that has to do with being a relative pronoun correspond to a complex XP. I elaborate on the exact content of XP in Chapter III. Following that, a dative relative pronoun contains the XP, ꜰ1, ꜰ2 and ꜰ3. Contained in this structure is an accusative relative pronoun, marked in gray. This consists of the XP, ꜰ1 and ꜰ2. The bigger structure wins against the smaller structure it contains: the dative wins over the accusative.

(50)
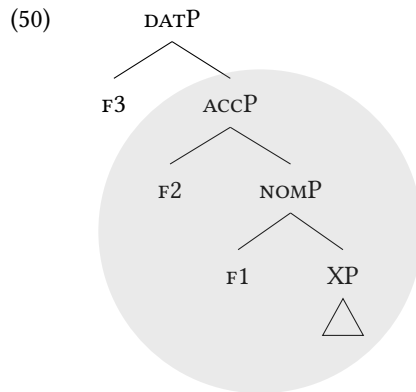
Next is the competition between dative and nominative, in which dative wins. The corresponding cells are marked light gray in Table 2.4. In (51) I show the syntactic structure of a dative relative pronoun. It contains the XP, ꜰ1, ꜰ2 and ꜰ3. Contained in this structure is a nominative relative pronoun, marked in gray. This consists of the XP and ꜰ1. The bigger structure wins against the smaller structure it contains: the dative wins over the nominative.

(51)

```
            DATP
           /    \
         F3     ACCP
               /    \
             F2     NOMP
                   /    \
                 F1      XP
                         △
```

Finally there is the competition between accusative and nominative, in which accusative wins. The corresponding cells are uncolored in Table 2.4. In (52) I show the syntactic structure of an accusative relative pronoun. It contains the XP, F1 and F2. Contained in this structure is a nominative relative pronoun, marked in gray. This consists of the XP and F1. The bigger structure wins against the smaller structure it contains: the accusative wins over the nominative.

(52)

```
          ACCP
         /    \
       F2     NOMP
             /    \
           F1      XP
                   △
```
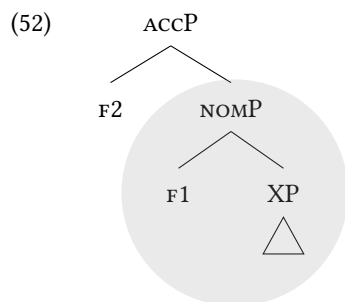
In sum, the cumulative case decomposition from Table 2.1 can derive the case scale observed for case competition in headless relatives.

2.5   Summary

In this section I discussed how a cumulative case decomposition can derive the case scale observed in syncretism patterns, morphological case containment and case competition in headless relatives. Besides the cumulative case decomposition, I assume a Nanosyntactic framework, in which syntactic structures are built from single features, and matched onto lexical entries in the postsyntactic lexicon.

Regarding syncretism, several patterns are attested crosslinguistically (ABC, AAA, AAB and ABB) but one is not: ABA. This follows in a system in which syncretic forms are realized by a single lexical entry. A lexical entry can be applied if it contains all features, as long as there is no more specific one.

Languages with morphological case containment show the cumulative case decomposition in their morphology. The phonological form of the accusative contains the form of the nominative plus an extra morpheme. The phonological form of the dative contains the form of the accusative plus an extra morpheme.

For headless relatives, the idea is that a case wins the competition if it contains all features the other case has. As the dative is the richest in features (it contains F1, F2 and F3), it wins over the accusative (which consists of F1 and F2) and the nominative (which contains only F1). Finally, the accusative wins over the nominative, because the former is richer in features than the latter.

Part II

The typology

Chapter 3

Languages with case competition

In Part I of this dissertation, I discussed a first aspect of case competition in headless relatives. There is a fixed scale that determines which case wins the case competition. This is the same case scale crosslinguistically. I repeat the case scale from Chapter 1 in (1).

(1)   NOM < ACC < DAT

In Chapter 2 within Part I, I argued that a cumulative case decomposition can derive the case scale. This does not only hold for case competition in headless relatives, but also for syncretism patterns and morphological case containment patterns. In a cumulative case composition, the scale in (1) can be interpreted as follows: the accusative contains all features the nominative contains plus one more. Similarly, the dative contains all features the accusative contains plus one. Therefore, the dative can be considered more complex than the accusative, and the accusative more complex than the nominative. In line with that, I refer to cases more to the right on the case scale as being more complex cases than cases more to the left on the scale.

This part of the dissertation, Part II, focuses on a second aspect to headless relatives. This aspect is not stable crosslinguistically, but it differs across languages. Languages differ in whether they allow the internal case (the case from the relative clause) and the external case (the case from the main clause) to surface when either of them wins the case competition. Metaphorically speaking, even though a case wins the case competition, it is a second matter whether it is allowed to come forward as a winner. Four patterns are logically possible for languages: (1) the internal case and the external case are allowed to surface when either of them wins the case competition, (2) only the internal case is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition, and the external case is not, (3) only the external case is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition, and the internal case is not, (4) neither the internal case nor the external case is allowed to surface when either of them wins

the competition.[1] I show in this chapter that one of these logically possible patterns is not attested in any natural language.

In this dissertation I discuss languages of which headless relatives have been described in the literature. As I write about case competition, I only focus on languages that morphologically distinguish between case, specifically the nominative, the accusative and the dative. By no means do I claim that my language sample is representative for the languages of the world. However, they build on independently established facts, which are the case scale from Chapter 1 and the subset requirement of the external head, to be discussed in Chapter III. Therefore, I predict that my generalizations hold for all natural languages.

The next section introduces the patterns that are logically possible with case competition. In Section 3.2 to Section 3.5, I discuss the patterns one by one, and I give examples when the pattern is attested. In Section 4, I make a sidestep to languages that do not show any case competition, and I give a typology of headless relatives.

3.1   Four possible patterns

Case competition has two aspects. The first aspect is the topic of Part I of the dissertation. It concerns which case wins the case competition. This is decided by the same case scale for all languages. The second aspects is the topic of Part II of the dissertation. This one concerns whether the case that wins the case competition is actually allowed to surface. It namely differs per language whether it allows the internal or the external case to do so.

Metaphorically, the second aspect can be described as a language-specific approval committee. The committee learns (from the first aspect) which case wins the case competition. Then it can either approve this case or not approve it. This approval happens based on where the winning case comes from: from inside of the relative clause (internal) or from outside of the relative clause (external). It is determined per language whether it approves the internal case, the external case, both of them or none of them. The approval committee can only approve the winner of the competition or deny it, it cannot propose an alternative winner. In this metaphor, the approval of the committee means that a particular case is allowed to surface. When the case is not allowed to surface, the headless relative as a whole is ungrammatical.

Taking this all together, there are four patterns possible in languages. First, the internal case and the external case are allowed to surface. Second, only the internal case is allowed to surface, and the external case is not. Third, only the external case is allowed to surface, and the internal case is not. Fourth, neither the internal case

---

[1]On the surface, the last pattern cannot be distinguished from a language that does not have case competition and does not allow for any case mismatches. I come back to this matter in 3.1, where I argue that there actually is case competition in play.

nor the external case is allowed to surface when either of them wins the competition. In what follows, I introduce these four possible patterns.

The first possible pattern is that of a language that allows the internal case and the external case to surface when either of them wins the case competition. I call this the unrestricted type of language (just as cf. Grosu, 1987; Cinque, 2020): the internal and external case do not need to match. The pattern might look familiar, because it is the one that Gothic has, which I discussed in Chapter 1. Table 3.1 (repeated from Table 1.5) illustrates what the pattern for such a language looks like.

The left column shows the internal case between square brackets. The top row shows the external case between square brackets. The other cells indicate the case of the relative pronoun. The top-left to bottom-right diagonal corresponds to the examples in which the internal and external case match. The three cells in the bottom-left corner, marked in light gray, are the situations in which the internal case surfaces when it wins the competition. The three cells in the top-right corner, marked in dark gray, are the situations in which the external case surfaces when it wins the competition. All these instances are grammatical.

Table 3.1: Internal and external case allowed

INT $^{\text{EXT}}$	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

The second possible pattern is that of a language that allows the internal case to surface when it wins the case competition, but it does not allow the external case to do so. In this type of language, the internal case gets to surface when it is more complex than the external one. When the external case is more complex, it is not allowed to surface, and the headless relative construction is ungrammatical. I call this the internal-only type of language: the internal and external case do not need to match, but only the internal case is allowed to surface as a winner.

Table 3.2 illustrates what the pattern for such a language looks like. Compared to the unrestricted type, it has three cells in which there is no grammatical relative pronoun. The top-left to bottom-right diagonal corresponds to the examples in which the internal and external case match. The three cells in the bottom-left corner, marked in light gray, are the situations in which the internal case surfaces when it wins the competition. Just as in the unrestricted type, these six instances are grammatical. The three cells in the top-right corner, marked in dark gray, are the situations in which the external case surfaces when it wins the competition. These

instances are not grammatical for this type of language. The reasoning behind that is that the language does not allow the external case to surface when it wins the case competition.

Table 3.2: Only internal case allowed

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	*	*
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	*
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

The third possible pattern is that of a language that allows the external case to surface when it wins the case competition, but it does not allow the internal case to do so. In this type of language, only the external case gets to surface when it is more complex. When the internal case is more complex, it is not allowed to surface, and the headless relative construction is ungrammatical. I call this the external-only type of language: the internal and external case do not need to match, but only the external case is allowed to surface as a winner.

Table 3.3 illustrates what the pattern for such a language looks like. Comparing this pattern to the second one, the ungrammatical cells are here the three on the other side of the diagonal. The top-left to bottom-right diagonal corresponds to the examples in which the internal and external case match. Just as in the unrestricted type and the 'unrestricted — internal-only' type, these instances are grammatical. The three cells in the bottom-left corner, marked in light gray, are the situations in which the internal case surfaces when it wins the competition. Unlike in the unrestricted type and the 'unrestricted — internal-only' type, these instances are not grammatical for this type of language. The reasoning behind that is that the language does not allow the internal case to surface when it wins the case competition. The three cells in the top-right corner, marked in dark gray, are the situations in which the external case surfaces when it wins the competition. Just as in the unrestricted type but unlike in the 'unrestricted — internal-only' type, these instances are grammatical.

The fourth possible pattern is that of a language that allows neither the internal case nor the external case to surface when either of them wins the competition. In other words, when the internal and the external case differ, there is no grammatical headless relative construction possible. Only when there is a tie, i.e. when the internal and external case match, there is a grammatical result. I call this the matching type of language: the internal and external case need to match.

Table 3.4 illustrates what the pattern for such a language looks like. The top-left to bottom-right diagonal corresponds to the examples in which the internal and ex-

Table 3.3: Only external case allowed

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	*	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	*	*	DAT

ternal case match. Just as in the other three pattern, these instances are grammatical. The three cells in the bottom-left corner, marked in light gray, are the situations in which the internal case surfaces when it wins the competition. Just as the 'unrestricted — external-only' type, but unlike the unrestricted type and the 'unrestricted — internal-only' type, these instances are not grammatical for this type of language. The three cells in the top-right corner, marked in dark gray, are the situations in which the external case surfaces when it wins the competition. Just as the 'unrestricted — internal-only' type, but unlike the unrestricted type and the 'unrestricted — external-only' pattern, these instances are not grammatical for this type of language. The reasoning behind the ungrammaticality of these six cells is that the language allows neither the internal case nor the external case to surface when either of them wins the competition.

On the surface, this pattern cannot be distinguished from a pattern that does not have case competition and does not allow for any case mismatches. I understand 'a language with case competition' as a language that compares the internal and external case in its headless relatives. If the internal and external case are not compared in this type of language, it would be unclear why the diagonal is different from all the other cells. The source of ungrammaticality for the cells in Table 3.4 can only come from the comparing the internal and external case and concluding that the internal case and the external case differ. The grammaticality of the diagonal follows from the conclusion that the internal and the external case match. In Section 4 I discuss languages in which the internal and external case are not compared to each other.

Table 3.4: Only matching allowed

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	*	*
[ACC]	*	ACC	*
[DAT]	*	*	DAT

In this chapter I show that three of these four patterns I introduced are attested crosslinguistically. Section 3.2 shows that the unrestricted type, in which either the internal case or the external case can surface, is exemplified by Gothic (repeated from Chapter 1) and by Old High German. The 'unrestricted — internal-only' type, in which only the internal case can surface, is illustrated by Modern German in Section 3.3. To my knowledge, there is no language in which only the external case can surface when it wins the case competition. This is discussed in 3.4. Section 3.5 shows a language that only allows the case to surface when there is a tie, i.e. when the internal and external case match, namely Polish.

3.2   Internal and external case allowed

This section discusses the situation in which the internal case and the external case are allowed to surface when either of them wins the case competition. I repeat the pattern from Section 3.1 in Table 3.5.

Table 3.5: Internal and external case allowed (repeated)

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

Two examples of languages that show this pattern are Gothic and Old High German. In this section, I repeat the summary of the findings from Gothic (from Chapter 1), and I present the data for Old High German, which is the result of my own research.

In Chapter 1, I discussed case competition in Gothic headless relatives, based on the work of Harbert (1978). I repeat the results from Section 1.1 in Table 3.6. In Gothic, the relative pronoun is allowed to surface in the internal case and the external case. The top-left to bottom-right diagonal corresponds to the examples in which the internal and external case match. The three cells in the bottom-left corner, marked in light gray, are the situations in which the internal case surfaces when it wins the competition. The three cells in the top-right corner, marked in dark gray, are the situations in which the external case surfaces when it wins the competition. All these instances are grammatical. The examples corresponding to the cells in Table 3.6 can be found in Section 1.1.

Old High German is another instance of a language in which the relative pronoun is allowed to surface in the internal case and the external case. This conclusion

Table 3.6: Summary of Gothic headless relatives (repeated)

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	(DAT)	DAT

follows from my own research of the texts 'Der althochdeutsche Isidor', 'The Monsee fragments', 'Otfrid's Evangelienbuch' and 'Tatian' in ANNIS (Krause and Zeldes, 2016).[2] The examples follow the spelling and the detailed glosses in ANNIS. The translations are my own.

First I discuss examples in which the internal and the external case match, and then examples in which they differ. If the internal case and the external case are identical, so there is a tie, the relative pronoun simply surfaces in that case. I illustrate this for the nominative, the accusative and the dative.

Consider the example in (2), in which the internal nominative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *senten* 'to send' takes nominative subjects. The external case is nominative as well, as the predicate *queman* 'to come' also takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *dher* 'RP.SG.M.NOM' appears in the internal and external case: the nominative.

(2)   quham   **dher**   **chisendit**   **scolda**
      come.PST.3SG$_{[NOM]}$ RP.SG.M.NOM send.PST.PTCP$_{[NOM]}$ should.PST.3SG

      uuerdhan
      become.INF
      'the one, who should have been sent, came'   (Old High German, Isid. 35:5)

Consider the example in (3), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *quedan* 'to speak' takes accusative objects. The external case is accusative as well, as the predicate *gihoren* 'to listen to' also takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *thiu* 'RP.PL.N.ACC' appears in the internal and external case: the accusative.

---

[2]Old High German is widely discussed in the literature because of its case attraction in headed relatives (cf. Pittner, 1995), a phenomenon that seems related to case competition in headless relatives. A common observation is that case attraction in headed relatives in Old High German adheres to the case scale. The same is claimed for headless relatives. What, to my knowledge, has not been studied systematically is whether Old High German headless relatives allow the internal case and the external case to surface when either of them wins the case competition. This is what I investigated in my work.

(3)   gihortut   ir   **thiu**   **ih**   **íu**   **quad**
      listen.PST.2PL[ACC] 2PL.NOM RP.PL.N.NOM 1SG.NOM 2PL.DAT speak.PST.1SG[ACC]
      'you listened to those things, that I said to you'

                                                              (Old High German, Tatian 165:6)

Consider the example in (4), in which the internal dative case competes against the external dative case.[3] The internal case is dative, as the predicate *willian* 'to wish' takes dative objects. The external case is dative as well, as the predicate *seggian* 'to say' takes dative indirect objects. The relative pronoun *them* 'RP.PL.M.DAT' appears in the internal and external case: the dative.

(4)   sagda   **them**   **siu**   **uuelda**
      say.PST.3SG[DAT] RP.PL.M.DAT 3SG.F.NOM wish.PST.3SG[DAT]
      'she said to those, whom she wished for'   (Old Saxon, Hel. 4:293)

These findings can be summarized as in Table 3.7. The top-left to bottom-right diagonal corresponds to the examples I have given so far in which the internal and external case match. The nominative marked in light gray corresponds to (2), in which the internal nominative case competes against the external nominative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the nominative case. The accusative marked in dark gray corresponds to (3), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the accusative case. The unmarked dative corresponds to (4), in which the internal dative case competes against the external dative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case.

Table 3.7: Old High German headless relatives (matching)

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM		
[ACC]		ACC	
[DAT]			(DAT)

In Table 3.7, six cells remain empty. These are the cases in which the internal and the external case differ. In the remainder of this section, I discuss them one by one.

I start with the competition between the accusative and the nominative. Following the case scale, the relative pronoun appears in the accusative case and never in

---

[3]I could not find such an instance for this situation in any of the Old High German texts. This example comes from the 'Heliand', an Old Saxon text written around the same time as the Old High German works I give examples from. Old Saxon is linguistically speaking the closest relative of Old High German.

nominative. As Old High German allows the internal and external case to surface, the accusative surfaces when it is the internal case and when it is the external case.

Consider the example in (5). In this example, the internal accusative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *zellen* 'to tell' takes accusative objects. The external case is nominative, as the predicate *sin* 'to be' takes nominative objects. The relative pronoun *then* 'RP.SG.M.ACC' appears in the internal case: the accusative. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause. Examples in which the internal case is accusative, the external case is nominative and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case are unattested.

(5) Thíz ist **then sie zéllent**
DEM.SG.N.NOM be.PRES.3SG[NOM] RP.SG.M.ACC 3PL.M.NOM tell.PRES.3PL[ACC]
'this is the one whom they talk about'   (Old High German, Otfrid III 16:50)

Consider the example in (6). In this example, the internal nominative case competes against the external accusative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *gisizzen* 'to possess' takes nominative subjects. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *bibringan* 'to create' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *dhen* 'RP.SG.M.ACC' appears in the external case: the accusative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, just as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause.[4]

(6) ih bibringu fona iacobes samin endi fona
1SG.NOM create.PRES.1SG[ACC] of Jakob.GEN seed.SG.DAT and of

iuda dhen **mina berga chisitzit**
Judah.DAT RP.SG.M.ACC my.ACC.M.PL mountain.ACC.PL possess.PRES.3SG[NOM]
'I create of the seed of Jacob and of Judah the one, who possess my mountains'
(Old High German, Isid. 34:3)

The two examples in which the nominative and the accusative compete are highlighted in Table 3.8. The light gray marking corresponds to (5), in which the internal accusative wins over the external nominative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the accusative case. The dark gray marking corresponds to (6), in which the external accusative wins over the internal nominative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the accusative case.

I continue with the competition between the dative and the nominative. Following the case scale, the relative pronoun appears in the dative case and never in

---

[4]At the end of this section I discuss a counterexample to the case scale, in which the internal case is nominative, the external case is accusative, and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case.

Table 3.8: Old High German headless relatives (NOM — ACC)

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	
[DAT]			(DAT)

nominative. As Old High German allows the internal and the external case to surface, the dative surfaces when it is the internal case and when it is the external case.

Consider the example in (7). In this example, the internal dative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is dative, as the predicate *forlazan* 'to read' takes dative indirect objects. The external case is nominative, as the predicate *minnon* 'to love' takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *themo* 'RP.SG.M.DAT' appears in the internal case: the dative. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause. Examples in which the internal case is dative, the external case is nominative and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case are unattested.

(7) **themo   min uuirdit   forlazan**,   min minnot
     RP.SG.M.DAT less become.PRES.3SG read.INF[DAT] less love.PRES.3SG[NOM]
     'to whom less is read, loves less'   (Old High German, Tatian 138:13)

Consider the example in (8). In this example, the internal nominative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *sprehhan* 'to speak' takes nominative subjects. The external case is dative, as the predicate *antwurten* 'to reply' takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *demo* 'RP.SG.M.DAT' appears in the external case: the dative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, just as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause. Examples in which the internal case is nominative, the external case is dative and the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case are unattested.

(8) enti aer   ant uurta   demo   **zaimo**
     and 3SG.M.NOM reply.PST.3SG[DAT] RP.SG.M.DAT to 3SG.M.DAT

     sprah
     speak.PST.3SG[NOM]
     'and he replied to the one who spoke to him'
                 (Old High German, Mons. 7:24, adapted from Pittner 1995: 199)

The two examples in which the nominative and the dative compete are highlighted

in Table 3.9. The light gray marking corresponds to (7), in which the internal dative wins over the external nominative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case. The dark gray marking corresponds to (8), in which the external dative wins over the internal nominative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case.

Table 3.9: Old High German headless relatives (NOM — DAT)

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	
[DAT]	DAT		(DAT)

I end with the competition between the dative and the accusative. Following the case scale, the relative pronoun appears in the dative case and never in accusative. As Old High German allows the internal and the external case to surface, the dative surfaces when it is the internal case and when it is the external case.

I have not found an example in which the internal dative case competes against the external accusative case. Interestingly, this is the same example that has not been attested with two verbal predicates in Gothic. Still, I believe that these missing occurrences are due to independent reasons rather than meaningful gaps in the paradigm. Just as in Gothic, headless relative constructions are infrequent in Old High German and Old High German also only has few verbal predicates that take dative complements.

Consider the example in (9). In this example, the internal accusative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *zellen* 'to tell' takes accusative objects. The external case is dative, as the comparative of the adjective *furiro* 'great' takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *thên* 'RP.PL.M.DAT' appears in the external case: the dative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, just as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause. Examples in which the internal case is accusative, the external case is dative and the relative pronoun appears in the accusative case are unattested.

(9) bis   -tú   nu   zi wáre furira   Ábrahame? ouh
     be.PRES.2SG -2SG.NOM now truly   great.CMPR$_{[DAT]}$ Abraham.DAT and

     thén   **man**   **hiar nu zálta**
     RP.PL.M.DAT one.NOM.M.SG here now tell.PST.3SG$_{[ACC]}$

     'are you now truly greater than Abraham? and than those, who one talked
     about here now'   (Old High German, Otfrid III 18:33)

The two examples in which the accusative and the dative compete are highlighted in Table 3.10. The empty cell that is marked light gray corresponds to the missing example, in which the internal dative would win over the external accusative, and the relative pronoun would surface in the dative case. The dark gray marking corresponds to (9), in which the external dative wins over the internal accusative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case.

Table 3.10: Old High German headless relatives (ACC — DAT)

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT		(DAT)

In my research I encountered a single counterexample to the pattern I just described. Consider the example in (10). In this example, the internal nominative case competes against the external accusative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *giheilen* 'to save' takes nominative subjects. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *beran* 'to bear' takes accusative objects. Surprisingly, the relative pronoun *thér* 'RP.SG.M.NOM' appears in the internal case: the nominative, which is the less complex of the two cases. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause.

(10)   Tház si   uns   béran   scolti   **thér**
       that 3SG.F.NOM 1PL.DAT bear.INF[ACC] should.SUBJ.PST.3SG RP.SG.M.NOM

       unsih   gihéilti
       1PL.ACC save.SBJV.PST.3SG[NOM]

       'that she should have beared for us the one, who had saved us'

                                          (Old High German, Otfrid I 3:38)

This example is unexpected, because the least complex case (the nominative) wins and not the most complex case (the accusative). The only explanation for this I can see is a functional one. The *thér* 'RP.SG.M.NOM' in (10) refers to Jesus. In the relative clause he is the subject of *unsih gihéilti* 'had saved us', hence the internal nominative case. In the main clause he is the object of *tház si uns béran scolti* 'that she should have beared', hence the external accusative case. Letting the relative pronoun surface in the internal case could be interpreted as emphasizing the role of Jesus as a savior, rather than him being the object of being given birth to. In line with that reasoning, it

is expected that certain grammatical facts more often deviate from regular patterns if Jesus is involved. I leave investigating this prediction for future research. Of course, this does not answer the question of what happens to the accusative case required by the external predicate. It also does not explain why not another emphasizing strategy is used, for instance forming a light-headed relative, which would leave space for two cases. I acknowledge this example as a counterexample to the pattern I describe, but I do not change my generalization, as this is a single occurrence.

Leaving the counterexample aside, I conclude that Gothic and Old High German are both instances of languages that allow the internal and the external case to surface. The relative pronoun surfaces in the case that wins the case competition.

3.3 Only internal case allowed

This section discusses the situation in which only the internal case is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition. When the internal case wins the case competition, the result is ungrammatical. I repeat the pattern from Section 3.1 in Table 3.11.

Table 3.11: Only internal case allowed (repeated)

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	*	*
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	*
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

An example of a language that shows this pattern is Modern German. In this section I discuss the Modern German data, based on the research of Vogel (2001). The examples and the judgements are Vogel's (2001). I made the glosses more detailed, and I added translations where they were absent.

First I discuss examples in which the internal and the external case match, and then examples in which they differ. If the internal case and the external case are identical, so there is a tie, the relative pronoun simply surfaces in that case. I illustrate this for the nominative, the accusative and the dative.

Consider the example in (11), in which the internal nominative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *mögen* 'to like' takes nominative subjects. The external case is nominative as well, as the predicate *besuchen* 'to visit' also takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *wer* 'RP.AN.NOM' appears in the internal and external case: the nominative.

(11) Uns   besucht,   **wer**   **Maria**   **mag**.
      2PL.ACC visit.PRES.3SG[NOM] RP.AN.NOM Maria.ACC like.PRES.3SG[NOM]
      'Who visits us likes Maria.'

                                    (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 343)

Consider the example in (12), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *mögen* 'to like' takes accusative objects. The external case is accusative as well, as the predicate *einladen* 'to invite' also takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *wen* 'RP.AN.ACC' appears in the internal and external case: the accusative.

(12) Ich   lade ein,   **wen**   **auch**   **Maria**   **mag**.
      1SG.NOM invite.PRES.1SG[ACC] RP.AN.ACC Maria.NOM like.PRES.3SG[ACC]
      'I invite who Maria also likes.'

                                    (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 344)

Consider the examples in (13), in which the internal dative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is dative, as the predicate *vertrauen* 'to please' takes dative objects. The external case is dative as well, as the predicate *folgen* 'to follow' also takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *wem* 'RP.AN.DAT' appears in the internal and external case: the dative.

(13) Ich   folge,   **wem**   **immer ich**
      1SG.NOM folge.PRES.1SG[DAT] RP.AN.DAT ever   1SG.NOM

      vertraue.
      vertraue.PRES.3SG[DAT]
      'I follow whoever I trust.'   (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 342)

These findings can be summarized as in Table 3.12. The top-left to bottom-right diagonal corresponds to the examples I have given so far in which the internal and external case match. The nominative marked in light gray corresponds to (11), in which the internal nominative case competes against the external nominative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the nominative case. The accusative marked in dark gray corresponds to (12), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the accusative case. The unmarked dative corresponds to (13), in which the internal dative case competes against the external dative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case.

   In Table 3.12, six cells remain empty. These are the cases in which the internal and the external case differ. In the remainder of this section, I discuss them one by one.

   I start with the competition between the accusative and the nominative. Follow-

Table 3.12: Modern German headless relatives (matching)

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM		
[ACC]		ACC	
[DAT]			DAT

ing the case scale, the relative pronoun appears in the accusative case and never in nominative. Following the internal-only requirement, when the accusative case is the internal case, the sentence is grammatical. When the accusative is the external case, the sentence is ungrammatical.

I start with the situation in which the internal case wins the competition, and it is possible to have a grammatical Modern German headless relative. Consider the example in (14). In this example, the internal accusative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *mögen* 'to like' takes accusative objects. The external case is nominative, as the predicate *besuchen* 'to visit' takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *wen* 'RP.AN.ACC' appears in the internal case: the accusative. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause. The example is grammatical, because the example adheres to the case scale, and the most complex case (here the accusative) is the internal case.

(14) Uns   besucht,   **wen   Maria   mag**.
      2PL.ACC visit.PRES.3SG$_{[NOM]}$ RP.AN.ACC Maria.NOM like.PRES.3SG$_{[ACC]}$
      'Who visits us, Maria likes.'

                                          (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 343)

The example in (15) is identical to (14), except for that the relative pronoun appears in the external less complex nominative case. This example is ungrammatical: although the internal case is more complex, the relative pronoun appears in the least complex case (the nominative) and not in the most complex case (the accusative).

(15) *Uns   besucht,   wer   **Maria   mag**.
      2PL.ACC visit.PRES.3SG$_{[NOM]}$ RP.AN.NOM Maria.NOM like.PRES.3SG$_{[ACC]}$
      'Who visits us, Maria likes.'

                                          (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 343)

Now I turn to the situation in which the external case wins the competition, and there is no grammatical outcome possible, whichever case the relative pronoun appears in.

Consider the example in (16). In this example, the internal nominative case competes against the external accusative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *sein* 'to be' takes nominative subjects. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *einladen* 'to invite' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *wen* 'RP.AN.ACC' appears in the external case: the accusative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, just as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause. The example adheres to the case scale, but the most complex case (here the accusative) is not the internal case. The example is ungrammatical, because only the internal can win the case competition in Modern German.

(16) *Ich   lade ein,   wen   **mir   sympathisch**
      1SG.NOM invite.PRES.1SG[ACC] RP.AN.ACC 1SG.DAT nice

      ist.
      be.PRES.3SG[NOM]
      'I invite who I like.'   (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 344)

The example in (17) is identical to (16), except for that the relative pronoun appears in the external less complex nominative case. This example is also ungrammatical: in addition to the most complex case not being the internal case, the relative pronoun also does not appear in the most complex case (the accusative) but in the least complex case (the nominative).[5]

---

[5]Not every speaker or Modern German agrees with the ungrammaticality of (17). A sentence for which also has been claimed that speakers accept it is given in (i). This example was originally marked as ungrammatical by Groos and van Riemsdijk (1981: 206).

(i) Ich   liebe   **wer   gutes   tut**,   und hasse,   **wer   mich**
     1SG.NOM love.1SG[ACC] RP.AN.NOM good.NMLZ do.3SG[NOM] and hate.1SG[ACC] RP.AN.NOM 1SG.ACC

     verletzt.
     hurt.3SG[NOM]
     'I love who does good and hate who hurts me.'
                    (Modern German, adapted from Groos and van Riemsdijk 1981: 206)

The relative acceptability of (17) and (i) is unexpected because the relative pronoun appears in the least complex case (the nominative) and not in the more complex case (the accusative). However, the more complex case would also not be grammatical, because it is the external case, and Modern German only allows the relative pronoun to surface in the internal case. My hypothesis is that, because there is no way of making the headless relative grammatical, speakers try to make the construction work by somehow repairing it. I can think of two strategies for that: (1) they can take *wer gutes tut* 'who does good' and *wer mich verletzt* 'who hurts me' as clauses objects, which are not case-marked in German, or (2) they insert a morphologically silent object as the head of the relative clause.

Notice that this type of example is crucially different from the Old High German counterexample in (10). In the Old High German situation, there was a grammatical possibility which was not used, and in the Modern German situation, there is no grammatical way to make a headless relative.

(17) *Ich   lade ein,   **wer   mir   sympathisch**
      1SG.NOM invite.PRES.1SG[ACC] RP.AN.NOM 1SG.DAT nice

      ist.
      be.PRES.3SG[NOM]

      'I invite who I like.'   (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 344)

The two examples in which the nominative and the accusative compete are highlighted in Table 3.13. The light gray marking corresponds to (14), in which the internal accusative wins over the external nominative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the accusative case (and not in the losing nominative case as in (15)). The dark gray marking corresponds to (16), in which the external accusative wins over the internal nominative, but the relative pronoun is not allowed to surface in the accusative case (or in the losing nominative case as in (17)).

Table 3.13: Modern German headless relatives (NOM — ACC)

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	*	
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	
[DAT]			DAT

I continue with the competition between the dative and the nominative. Following the case scale, the relative pronoun appears in the dative case and never in nominative. Following the internal-only requirement, when the dative case is the internal case, the sentence is grammatical.

I start again with the situation in which the internal case wins the competition, and it is possible to have a grammatical Modern German headless relative. Consider the example in (18). In this example, the internal dative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is dative, as the predicate *vertrauen* 'to trust' takes dative objects. The external case is nominative, as the predicate *besuchen* 'to visit' takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *wem* 'RP.AN.DAT' appears in the internal case: the dative. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause. The example adheres to the case scale, and the most complex case (here the dative) is the internal case, so the example is grammatical.

(18) Uns   besucht,   **wem   Maria   vertraut**.
      2PL.ACC visit.PRES.3SG[NOM] RP.AN.DAT Maria.NOM trust.PRES.3SG[DAT]

      'Who visits us, Maria trusts.'

The example in (19) is identical to (18), except for that the relative pronoun appears in the external less complex nominative case. This example is ungrammatical: although the internal case is more complex, the relative pronoun appears in the least complex case (the nominative) and not in the most complex case (the dative).

(19) *Uns   besucht,   wer   **Maria   vertraut**.
       2PL.ACC visit.PRES.3SG[NOM] RP.AN.NOM Maria.NOM trust.PRES.3SG[DAT]
       'Who visits us, Maria trusts.'

Now I turn again to the situation in which the external case wins the competition, and there is no grammatical outcome possible, whichever case the relative pronoun appears in. Consider the example in (20). In this example, the internal nominative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *mögen* 'to like' takes nominative subjects. The external case is dative, as the predicate *vertrauen* 'to trust' takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *wem* 'RP.AN.DAT' appears in the external case: the dative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, just as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause. The example adheres to the case scale, but the most complex case (here the dative) is not the internal case. The example is ungrammatical, because only the internal can win the case competition in Modern German.

(20) *Ich   vertraue,   wem   **Hitchcock   mag**.
       1SG.NOM trust.PRES.1SG[DAT] RP.AN.DAT Hitchcock.ACC like.PRES.3SG[NOM]
       'I trust who likes Hitchcock.'

The example in (21) is identical to (20), except for that the relative pronoun appears in the external less complex nominative case. This example is also ungrammatical: in addition to the most complex case not being the internal case, the relative pronoun also does not appear in the most complex case (the dative) but in the least complex case (the nominative).

(21) *Ich   vertraue,   **wer   Hitchcock   mag**.
       1SG.NOM trust.PRES.1SG[DAT] RP.AN.NOM Hitchcock.ACC like.PRES.3SG[NOM]
       'I trust who likes Hitchcock.'

The two examples in which the nominative and the dative compete are highlighted in Table 3.14. The light gray marking corresponds to (18), in which the internal

dative wins over the external nominative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case (and not in the losing nominative case as in (19)). The dark gray marking corresponds to (20), in which the external dative wins over the internal nominative, but the relative pronoun is not allowed to surface in the dative case (or in the losing nominative case as in (21)).

Table 3.14: Modern German headless relatives (NOM — DAT)

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	*	*
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	
[DAT]	DAT		DAT

I end with the competition between the dative and the accusative. Following the case scale, the relative pronoun appears in the dative case and never in accusative. Following the internal-only requirement, when the dative case is the internal case, the sentence is grammatical.

I start again with the situation in which the internal case wins the competition, and it is possible to have a grammatical Modern German headless relative. Consider the example in (22). In this example, the internal dative case competes against the external accusative case. The internal case is dative, as the predicate *vertrauen* 'to trust' takes dative objects. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *einladen* 'to invite' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *wem* 'RP.AN.DAT' appears in the internal case: the dative. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause. The example adheres to the case scale, and the most complex case (here the dative) is the internal case, so the example is grammatical.

(22) Ich   lade ein,   **wem   auch Maria   vertraut**.
      1SG.NOM invite.PRES.1SG$_{[ACC]}$ RP.AN.DAT also   Maria.NOM trust.PRES.3SG$_{[DAT]}$
      'I invite whoever Maria also trusts.'

                                    (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 344)

The example in (23) is identical to (22), except for that the relative pronoun appears in the external less complex accusative case. This example is ungrammatical: although the internal case is more complex, the relative pronoun appears in the least complex case (the accusative) and not in the most complex case (the dative).

(23) *Ich   lade ein,   wen   **auch Maria   vertraut**.
      1SG.NOM invite.PRES.1SG$_{[ACC]}$ RP.AN.ACC also   Maria.NOM trust.PRES.3SG$_{[DAT]}$
      'I invite whoever Maria also trusts.'

                                      (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 344)

Now I turn again to the situation in which the external case wins the competition,
and there is no grammatical outcome possible, whichever case the relative pronoun
appears in. Consider the example in (24). In this example, the internal accusative
case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is accusative, as
the predicate *mögen* 'to like' takes accusative objects. The external case is dative,
as the predicate *vertrauen* 'to trust' takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *wem*
'RP.AN.DAT' appears in the external case: the dative. The relative pronoun is not
marked in bold, just as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns
with the main clause. The example adheres to the case scale, but the most complex
case (here the dative) is not the internal case. The example is ungrammatical, because
only the internal can win the case competition in Modern German.

(24) *Ich   vertraue,   wem   **auch Maria   mag**.
      1SG.NOM trust.PRES.1SG$_{[DAT]}$ RP.AN.DAT also   Maria.NOM like.PRES.3SG$_{[ACC]}$
      'I trust whoever Maria also likes.'

                                      (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 345)

The example in (25) is identical to (24), except for that the relative pronoun appears
in the external less complex accusative case. This example is also ungrammatical: in
addition to the most complex case not being the internal case, the relative pronoun
also does not appear in the most complex case (the dative) but in the least complex
case (the accusative).

(25) *Ich   vertraue,   **wen   auch Maria   mag**.
      1SG.NOM trust.PRES.1SG$_{[DAT]}$ RP.AN.ACC also   Maria.NOM like.PRES.3SG$_{[ACC]}$
      'I trust whoever Maria also likes.'

                                      (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 345)

The two examples in which the nominative and the dative compete are highlighted
in Table 3.15. The light gray marking corresponds to (22), in which the internal
dative wins over the external accusative, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the
dative case (and not in the losing accusative case as in (23)). The dark gray marking
corresponds to (24), in which the external dative wins over the internal nominative,
but the relative pronoun is not allowed to surface in the dative case (or in the losing
accusative case as in (25)).

   In sum, Modern German is an instance of a language that only allows the internal

Table 3.15: Modern German headless relatives (ACC — DAT)

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	*	*
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	*
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

case to surface. The relative pronoun surfaces in the most complex case, but only when this more complex case is the internal case.[6]

3.4   Only external case allowed

This section discusses the situation in which only the external case is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition. When the internal case wins the case competition, the result is ungrammatical. I repeat the pattern from Section 3.1 in Table 3.16.

Table 3.16: Only external case allowed (repeated)

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	*	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	*	*	DAT

---

[6]Another language of the internal-only type seems to be Finnish. *valita* 'choose' takes a partitive object

(i)   Valitsen mista sina piddt. choose-I.el what-el you like-you.part 'I choose what you like.'

pitää 'like' takes elative objects

(ii)   *Pidan   mista   sind valitset.
        like-I.part what-el you choose-you.el
        'I like what you choose.'

(iii)   *Pidan   mita   sind valitset.
        like-I.part what-el you choose-you.el
        'I like what you choose.'

To my knowledge, this pattern is not attested in any natural language, whether extinct or alive. Classical Greek has been mentioned in the literature both as a language of the third type (c.f. Cinque 2020, p. 120, who actually classifies Gothic also as such) and as a language of the first type (cf. Grosu, 1987, p. 41). I show that the correct description of Classical Greek is the latter, and that it patterns with Gothic and Old High German.[7] I start with an example in which a more complex external case wins the case competition over a less complex internal case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the external case.

Consider the example in (26). In this example, the internal accusative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *tíktō* 'to give birth to' takes accusative objects. The external case is dative, as the predicate *ékhō* 'to provide' takes dative indirect objects. The relative pronoun *hǭ* 'RP.SG.M.DAT' appears in the internal case: the dative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, unlike as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause.

(26) pãn tò tekòn   trophèn   ékhei   hǭ   **án**
      any parent.SG.NOM food.SG.ACC provide.PRES.3SG$_{[DAT]}$ RP.SG.M.DAT MOD

      tékē̥
      gives birth.AOR.3SG$_{[ACC]}$
      'any parent provides food to what he would have given birth to'
                    (Classical Greek, Pl. Men. 237e, adapted from Kakarikos 2014: 292)

This example is compatible with the picture of Classical Greek only allowing the external case to surface when it wins the competition. I repeat Table 3.16 from the beginning of this section as Table 3.17, and I mark the cell that corresponds to the example in (26) in gray.

However, the example in (26) is not only compatible with the external-only type. Considering only the example I have given so far, it is still possible for Classical Classical Greek to be of the unrestricted type. I repeat Table 3.5 from Section 3.2 as Table 3.18, and I mark the cell that corresponds to the example in (26) in gray.

What sets Table 3.17 and Table 3.18 apart is the bottom-left corner of the table. These are cases in which the internal case wins the case competition. In Table 3.17 these examples are not allowed to surface, and in Table 3.18 they are. In what follows, I give an example in which a more complex internal case wins over a less complex

---

[7]It does seem to be the case that examples in which the external case wins over the internal case are more frequent in Classical Greek than examples in which the internal case wins over the external case (see Kakarikos 2014 for numerous examples of the former type). In this dissertation I do not address the question of why certain constructions and configurations are more frequent than others. My goal is to set up a system that generates the grammatical patterns and excludes the ungrammatical or unattested patterns.

Table 3.17: Classical Greek headless relatives possibility 1

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	*	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	*	*	DAT

Table 3.18: Classical Greek headless relatives possibility 2

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

external case. This indicates that Classical Greek cannot be of the type shown in Table 3.17, but is has to be of the type shown in Table 3.18. In other words, it is not of the type that only allows the external case to surface when it wins the case competition.

Consider the example in (27). In this example, the internal accusative case competes against the external nominative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *philéō* 'to love' takes accusative objects. The external case is nominative, as the predicate *apothnéiskō* 'to die' takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *hòn* 'RP.SG.M.ACC' appears in the internal case: the accusative. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause.[8]

(27) **hòn   hoi theoì philoũsin** apothnḗskei néos
      RP.SG.M.ACC the god.PL love.3PL[Acc] die.3SG[NOM] young
      'He, whom the gods love, dies young.'   (Classical Greek, Men. DD., 125)

This example shows that Classical Greek is not an instance of the third possible pattern, in which only the external case is allowed to surface. Instead, as illustrated by Table 3.19, the language allows the internal case (marked light gray) and the external case (marked dark gray) to surface when either of them wins the case competition.

---

[8]The sentence in (27) can also be analyzed as a headed relative, in which the relative clause modifies the phonologically empty subject of *apothnéiskō* 'to die'. Then, however, more needs to be said about how it is possible for a relative clause to modify a phonologically empty element.

Table 3.19: Summary of Classical Greek headless relatives

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

I do not discuss more examples from Classical Greek than I did until now. This does not change anything about the point I am making here: the only kind of system that is compatible with the examples given is the one in which the internal and the external case are allowed to surface when either of them wins the case competition. For more examples in which the external case wins, I refer the reader to Kakarikos (2014: 292-294). An example in which the external dative wins over the internal nominative can be found in Noussia-Fantuzzi (2015). I am not aware of an example in which the internal dative wins over the external accusative.

To sum up, to my knowledge, there is no language in which only the external case is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition, and the internal case is not. Classical Greek patterns with Gothic and Old High German in that is allows the internal and the external case to surface.

3.5   Only matching allowed

This section discusses the situation in which the case is neither the internal case nor the external case allowed to surface when either of them wins the competition. In other words, when the internal and the external case differ, there is no grammatical headless relative construction possible. Only when there is a tie, i.e. when the internal and external case match, there is a grammatical result. I repeat the pattern from Section 3.1 in Table 3.20.

Table 3.20: The matching type (repeated)

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	*	*
[ACC]	*	ACC	*
[DAT]	*	*	DAT

An example of a language that shows this pattern is Polish. In this section I dis-

cuss the Polish data, based on the research of Citko (2013) after Himmelreich (2017). I only go through the case competition between accusative and dative, as only this data is discussed. This does not change anything about the point I am making here: the only kind of system that is compatible with the examples given is the one in which the case is allowed to surface in neither the internal case nor in the external case, when either of them wins the case competition. I made the glosses more detailed, and I added translations where they were absent.

First I discuss examples in which the internal and the external case match, and then examples in which they differ. If the internal case and the external case are identical, so there is a tie, the relative pronoun simply surfaces in that case. I illustrate this for the nominative, the accusative and the dative.

Consider the example in (28), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case. The internal case and external case are accusative, as the predicate *lubić* 'to like' in both clauses takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *kogo* 'RP.ACC.AN' appears in the internal and external case: the accusative.

(28) Jan lubi   kogo   **-kolkwiek Maria lubi**.
      Jan like.3SG$_{[Acc]}$ RP.ACC.AN ever   Maria like.3SG$_{[Acc]}$
      'Jan likes whoever Maria likes.'
                      (Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

Consider the example in (29), in which the internal dative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is dative, as the predicate *ufać* 'to trust' takes dative objects. The external case is dative as well, as the predicate *pomagać* 'to help' also takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *them* 'RP.PL.AN.DAT' appears in the internal and external case: the dative.

(29) Jan pomaga   komu   **-kolkwiek ufa**.
      Jan help.3SG$_{[DAT]}$ RP.DAT.AN ever   trust.3SG$_{[DAT]}$
      'Jan helps whomever he trusts.'
                      (Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

These findings can be summarized as in Table 3.21. The top-left to bottom-right diagonal corresponds to the examples I have given so far in which the internal and external case match. The accusative marked in light gray corresponds to (28), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the accusative case. The dative marked in dark gray corresponds to (29), in which the internal dative case competes against the external dative case, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the dative case.

In Table 3.21, two cells remain empty. These are the cases in which the internal

Table 3.21: Polish headless relatives (matching)

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[ACC]	[DAT]
[ACC]	ACC	
[DAT]		DAT

and the external case differ. In the remainder of this section, I discuss them one by one.

I give examples from the case competition between accusative and dative. According to the case scale, the dative would win over the accusative. However, as the case is neither allowed to surface in the internal case nor in the external case, all examples are ungrammatical.

I start with the situation in which the internal case wins the competition, and there is no grammatical outcome possible, whichever case the relative pronoun appears in. Consider the example in (22). In this example, the internal dative case competes against the external accusative case. The internal case is dative, as the predicate *dokuczać* 'to tease' takes dative objects. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *lubić* 'to like' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *komu* 'RP.AN.DAT' appears in the internal case: the dative. The relative pronoun is marked in bold, just as the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the relative clause. The example adheres to the case scale, but the internal case is not allowed to surface when it wins the case competition. Therefore, the example is ungrammatical.

(30)   *Jan lubi   **komu   -kolkwiek dokucza**.
        Jan like.3sg$_{[ACC]}$ RP.DAT.AN ever   tease.3sg$_{[DAT]}$
        'Jan likes whoever he teases.'
                            (Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

The example in (31) is identical to (30), except for that the relative pronoun appears in the external less complex accusative case. This example is also ungrammatical: the external case is less complex, and the external case is not allowed to surface when it wins the case competition.

(31)   *Jan lubi   kogo   **-kolkwiek dokucza**.
        Jan like.3sg$_{[ACC]}$ RP.ACC.AN ever   tease.3sg$_{[DAT]}$
        'Jan likes whoever he teases.'
                            (Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

Now I turn to the situation in which the external case wins the competition, and there

is no grammatical outcome possible, whichever case the relative pronoun appears in. Consider the example in (32). In this example, the internal accusative case competes against the external dative case. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *wpuścić* 'to let' takes accusative objects. The external case is dative, as the predicate *ufać* 'to trust' takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *komu* 'RP.AN.DAT' appears in the external case: the dative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, just as the main clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause. The example adheres to the case scale, but the external case is (as the internal case) not allowed to surface when it wins the case competition. Therefore, the example is ungrammatical.

(32) *Jan ufa   komu   **-kolkwiek wpuścil   do domu**.
      Jan trust.3SG[DAT] RP.DAT.AN ever   let.3SG[ACC] to home
      'Jan trusts whoever he let into the house.'
                          (Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

The example in (33) is identical to (32), except for that the relative pronoun appears in the internal less complex accusative case. This example is also ungrammatical: the internal case is less complex, and the internal case is not allowed to surface when it wins the case competition.

(33) *Jan ufa   **kogo   -kolkwiek wpuścil   do domu**.
      Jan trust.3SG[DAT] RP.ACC.AN ever   let.3SG[ACC] to home
      'Jan trusts whoever he let into the house.'
                          (Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

The two examples in which the accusative and the dative compete are highlighted in Table 3.22. The light gray marking corresponds to (30), in which the internal dative wins over the external accusative, but the relative pronoun is not allowed to surface in the dative case (or in the losing accusative case as in (31)). The dark gray marking corresponds to (32), in which the external dative wins over the internal accusative, but the relative pronoun is not allowed to surface in the dative case (or in the losing accusative case as in (33)).

Table 3.22: Polish headless relatives (ACC — DAT)

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[ACC]	[DAT]
[ACC]	ACC	*
[DAT]	*	DAT

In sum, Polish is an instance of a language that only allows for matching cases.

When the internal and the external case differ in Polish, there is no way to form a grammatical headless relative construction.

3.6   Summary

In case competition in headless relatives two aspects play a role. The first one is which case wins the case competition. It is a crosslinguistically stable fact that this is determined by the case scale in (34), repeated from Chapter 1. A case more to the right on the scale wins over a case more to the left on the scale.

(34)   NOM < ACC < DAT

This generates the pattern shown in Table 3.23. The left column shows the internal case between square brackets. The top row shows the external case between square brackets. The other cells indicate the case of the relative pronoun. When the dative wins over the accusative, the relative pronoun appears in the dative case. When the dative wins over the nominative, the relative pronoun appears in the nominative case. When the accusative wins over the nominative, the relative pronoun appears in the accusative case.

Table 3.23: Relative pronoun follows case competition

INT EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

The second aspect is whether the internal and the external case are allowed to surface when either of them wins the case competition. This differs across languages. There are four logical possibilities, listed in (35).

(35)   Logicaly possibile language types

    i.   The unrestricted type: the internal and the external case are allowed to surface when either of them wins the case competition

    ii. The internal-only type: only the internal case is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition

    iii. The external-only type: only the external case is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition

    iv. The matching type: neither the internal case nor in the external case is allowed to surface when either of them wins the case competition

As far as I am aware, not all of these logical possibilities are attested in natural languages. I discuss the types one by one, and I give example when they are attested. In my description, I refer to the differ gray-marking in Table 3.24. The cells marked in light gray are the ones in which the internal case wins the case competition, the cells marked in dark gray are the ones in which the external case wins the case competition, and the unmarked cells are the ones in which the internal and external case match.

Gothic, Old High German and Classical Greek are examples of the unrestricted type in (35i). In these languages, relative pronouns in the unmarked, light gray and dark gray cells are attested. Modern German is an example of the 'unrestricted — internal-only' type in (35ii). In this language, relative pronouns in the unmarked and light gray cells are grammatical. To my knowledge, the 'unrestricted — external-only' type in (35iii) is not attested. This would be a language in which relative pronouns in the unmarked and the dark gray cells are grammatical. Polish is an example of a language of the matching type in (35iv). In this language, relative pronoun in only in the unmarked cells are grammatical.

Table 3.24: Relative pronoun follows case competition

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

Figure 3.1 shows a diagram that generates the three attested patterns and not the unattested one. The diamonds stand for parameters that distinguish different types of languages. The texts along the arrows to the rectangles (and to a diamond) indicate how the different types of languages behave with respect to the parameters. The rectangles describe the form that the relative pronoun appears in. Below the rectangle I give examples of languages that are of this particular type.

The first parameter is whether or not a language allows for a mismatch between the internal and external case. If a language does not allow for a mismatch, the matching type of language (35iv) is generated. If a language allows for a mismatch between the internal and external case, the second parameter comes into play. This one is concerned with the case the relative pronoun is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition. Here I give two options: (1) it is allowed to surface in only the internal case or (2) it is allowed to surface in the internal and the external case.[9] If a language allows the internal case to surface when it wins the case competition, the

---

[9]I do not introduce the option of allowing the relative pronoun to surface only in the external case.

'unrestricted — internal-only' type is generated. If a language allows the internal and the external case to surface, the unrestricted type is generated.[10]
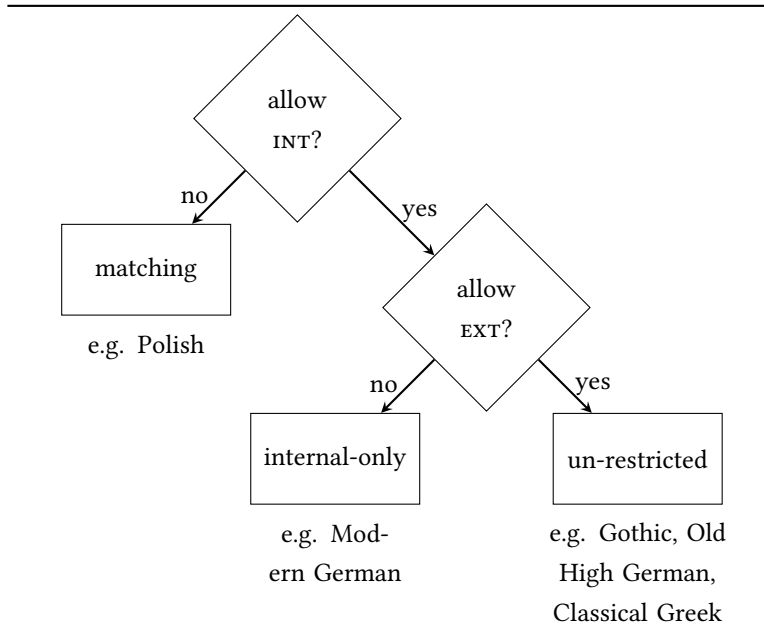

Figure 3.1: Attested patterns in headless relatives with case competition

The main focus of Chapter III is the linguistic counterpart of the second parameter. I show with general properties of relative clauses how the difference between the unrestricted and the 'unrestricted — internal-only' type can be modeled, and how the exclusion of the 'unrestricted — external-only' type follows from these particular properties. I also introduce a linguistic counterpart for the first parameter, which distinguishes matching from unrestricted languages.

The reason for this is that this pattern is not attested crosslinguistically. If a language like this appears, this option could in principle be added. However, I predict that it will not appear. In Chapter III, I show how it follows from general properties of relative clauses that this type of language is excluded.

[10]The matching type could also have been generated with the second parameter. The text along the arrow would have been *none*. I choose to not do this, because in Chapter III I propose separate mechanisms for each of the parameters in Figure 3.1. The first one distinguishes matching languages from unrestricted (i.e. unrestricted and internal-only) languages, and the second one distinguishes unrestricted from internal-only languages.

Chapter 4

Aside: languages without case competition

In the previous chapter, I discussed languages that show case competition. There are also languages that do not show any case competition. This section discusses these languages, and gives a typology of headless relatives.

In languages without case competition, the internal and external case do not compete to show their case on the relative pronoun. It is irrelevant how the two cases relate to each other on the case scale. Instead, it is fixed per language whether the relative pronoun appears in the internal or the external case. Logically, there are two possible languages without case competition: one that lets the relative pronoun appear in the internal case, and one that lets the relative pronoun appear in the external case.

Table 4.1 shows the pattern of a language in which the relative pronoun always appears in the internal case. In the second row, the internal case is nominative and the external case is nominative, accusative or dative. The relative pronoun appears in the nominative. It is irrelevant here that the nominative is less complex than the accusative and the dative, because there is no case competition taking place. The third row shows that the relative pronoun always appears in the accusative when the internal case is the accusative, and the fourth row shows the same for the dative. To my knowledge, this type is not attested in any natural language.

Table 4.2 shows the pattern of a language in which the relative pronoun always appears in the external case. In the second column, the external case is nominative and the internal case is nominative, accusative or dative. The relative pronoun appears in the nominative. It is irrelevant here that the nominative is less complex than the accusative and the dative, because there is no case competition taking place. The third column shows that the relative pronoun always appears in the accusative when the external case is the accusative, and the fourth column shows the same for

Table 4.1: Always internal case

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	NOM	NOM
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	ACC
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

the dative.

Table 4.2: Always external case

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	NOM	ACC	DAT

Section 4.1 discusses two languages that let their relative pronouns in headless relatives always surface in the external case: Old English and Modern Greek. In Section 4.2 I extend the typology from Section 3.6 by adding the languages without case competition. As I briefly mentioned, I do not know of any language, whether extinct or alive, that lets the relative pronoun always surface in the internal case. I do not offer an explanation for why it is not attested, and I include this possibility in my typology.

4.1   Always external case

In this section I discuss two languages in which the relative pronoun always appears in the external case. I show that these languages do not show any case competition. In other words, these languages are of the type shown in Table 4.2 and not of the type I discussed in Section 3.4 (or of the one in Section 3.2).

Two example of languages that shows this pattern are Old English and Modern Greek. In this section I discuss the Old English data with examples from Harbert (1983). The Modern Greek data I discuss is taken from Daskalaki (2011). For all examples holds that I made the glosses more detailed, and I added and modified translations.

I start with Old English. I give an example in which the external case is more complex than the internal case and the relative pronoun appears in the most complex

Table 4.3: Always external case (repeated)

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	NOM	ACC	DAT

external case.

Consider the example in (1). The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *gegyltan* 'to sin' takes nominative subjects. The external case is dative, as the predicate *for-gifan* 'to forgive' takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *ðam* 'RP.DAT.PL' appears in the external case: the dative. The relative pronoun is not marked in bold, unlike the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause.

(1) ðæt is, ðæt man for-gife,   ðam **ðe   wið   hine**
     that is that one forgive.SUBJ.SG$_{[DAT]}$ RP.DAT.PL COMP against 3SG.M.ACC

     gegylte
     sin.3SG$_{[NOM]}$
     'that is, that one₂ forgive him₁, who sins against him₂'

                                        (Old English, adapted from Harbert 1983: 549)

This example is compatible with three patterns. First, Old English could be a case competition language that only allows the external case to surface. I repeat Table 3.16 from Section 3.4 as Table 4.4, and I mark the cell that corresponds to example (1) in gray.

Table 4.4: Old English headless relatives possibility 1

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	*	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	*	*	DAT

Second, Old English could be a case competition language that allows the internal case and the external case to surface. I repeat Table 3.5 from Section 3.2 as Table 4.5, and I mark the cell that corresponds to example (1) in gray.

Table 4.5: Old English headless relatives possibility 2

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

Third, Old English could be a language without case competition that lets the relative pronoun appear in the external case. I repeat Table 4.3 from the beginning of this section as Table 4.6, and I mark the cell that corresponds to example (1) in gray.

Table 4.6: Old English headless relatives possibility 3

INT ^{EXT}	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	NOM	ACC	DAT

What sets Table 4.4, Table 4.5 and Table 4.6 apart is the bottom-left corner of the table. These are situations in which the internal case is more complex than the external case. In Table 4.4 the winning case is not allowed to surface, and there is no grammatical headless relative possible. If this is the pattern that Old English shows, then it would be a language with case competition that only allows the external case to surface, i.e. it would be of the type of Section 3.4 I claimed did not exist. In Table 4.5 and in Table 4.6 there is a relative pronoun that can surface, but the case of the relative pronouns differs. In Table 4.5, the relative pronoun surfaces in the most complex case that wins the case competition: the internal case. In Table 4.6, there is no case competition taking place, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the external case.

In the example that follows I show that Old English is of the type in Table 4.6. I give an example in which the internal case is more complex than the external one. Nevertheless, the relative pronoun surfaces in the less complex external case. Old English is namely a language without case competition that lets the relative pronoun surface in the external case.

Consider the example in (2). The internal case is dative, as the preposition *onuppan* 'upon' takes dative objects. The external case is accusative, as the pred-

icate *tōbrȳsan* 'to pulversize' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *ðone* 'RP.SG.ACC' appears in the external case: the accusative. The relative pronoun appears in the external case, although it is the least complex case of the two. The example is grammatical, because Old English does not show case competition, so the case scale is irrelevant. As long as the relative pronoun appears in the external case, the headless relative is grammatical.

(2) he tobryst   ðone   **ðe   he onuppan fylð**
     it pulverizes[ACC] RP.SG.ACC COMP it upon[DAT] falls
     'It pulverizes him whom it falls upon.'

                    (Old English, adapted from Harbert 1983: 550)

This example shows that Old English is neither an instance of the pattern in Section 3.4, in which only the external case is allowed to surface, nor is it an instance of the pattern in Section 3.2, in which the internal case and external case are allowed to surface. Instead, as illustrated by Table 4.7, the language does not have any case competition. The relative pronoun appears in the external case: the external case can be the most complex case, illustrated by the example in (1), marked here in light gray, or it can be the least complex case, illustrated by the example in (2), marked here in dark gray.

Table 4.7: Summary of Old English headless relatives

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	NOM	ACC	DAT

I do not discuss more examples from Old English than I did until now. This does not change anything about the point I am making here: the only kind of system that is compatible with the examples given is the one in which the relative pronoun always appears in the external case.

The same pattern appears in Modern Greek. The only difference is that Modern Greek has the genitive, and not the dative. I start again with an example in which the external case is more complex than the internal case and the relative pronoun appears in the most complex external case.

Consider the example in (3). The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *voíθisó* 'to help' takes nominative subjects. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *efχarístisó* 'to thank' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *ópjus* 'RP.PL.M.ACC' appears in the external case: the accusative. The relative pronoun is

not marked in bold, unlike the relative clause, showing that the relative pronoun patterns with the main clause.

(3)   Efχarístisa   ópjus   **me**   **voíϑisan**.
      thank.PST.3PL[ACC] RP.PL.M.ACC CL.1SG.ACC help.PST.3PL[NOM]
      'I thanked whoever helped me.'
                                            (Modern Greek, adapted from Daskalaki 2011: 80)

This example is compatible with three patterns. First, Modern Greek could be a case competition language that only allows the external case to surface. I repeat Table 3.16 from Section 3.4 as Table 4.8, and I mark the cell that corresponds to example (3) in gray.

Table 4.8: Modern Greek headless relatives possibility 1

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[GEN]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	GEN
[ACC]	*	ACC	GEN
[GEN]	*	*	GEN

Second, Modern Greek could be a case competition language that allows the internal case and external case to surface. I repeat Table 3.5 from Section 3.2 as Table 4.9, and I mark the cell that corresponds to example (3) in gray.

Table 4.9: Modern Greek headless relatives possibility 2

INT ᴱˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[GEN]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	GEN
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	GEN
[GEN]	GEN	GEN	GEN

Third, Modern Greek could be a language without case competition that lets the relative pronoun appear in the external case. I repeat Table 4.3 from the beginning of this section as Table 4.10, and I mark the cell that corresponds to example (3) in gray.

What sets Table 4.8, Table 4.9 and Table 4.10 apart is the bottom-left corner of the table. These are cases in which the internal case is more complex than the external case. In Table 4.8 the winning case is not allowed to surface, and there is no grammatical headless relative possible. If this is the pattern that Modern Greek shows,

Table 4.10: Modern Greek headless relatives possibility 3

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[GEN]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	GEN
[ACC]	NOM	ACC	GEN
[GEN]	NOM	ACC	GEN

then it would be a language with case competition that only allows the external case to surface, i.e. it would be of the type of Section 3.4 I claimed did not exist. In Table 4.9 and in Table 4.10 there is a relative pronoun that can surface, but the case of the relative pronouns differs. In Table 4.9, the relative pronoun surfaces in the most complex case that wins the case competition: the internal case. In Table 4.10, there is no case competition taking place, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the external case.

In the example that follows I show that Modern Greek is of the type in Table 4.10. I give an example in which the internal case is more complex than the external one. Nevertheless, the relative pronoun surfaces in the less complex external case. Modern Greek is namely a language without case competition that lets the relative pronoun surface in the external case.

Consider the example in (4). The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *irθó* 'to invite' takes accusative objects. The external case is nominative, as the predicate *kálesó* 'to come' takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *ópji* 'RP.PL.M.NOM' appears in the external case: the nominative. The relative pronoun appears in the external case, although it is the least complex case of the two. The example is grammatical, because Modern Greek does not show case competition, so the case scale is irrelevant. As long as the relative pronoun appears in the external case, the headless relative is grammatical.

(4) Irθan   ópji   **káleses**.
     come.PST.3PL$_{[NOM]}$ RP.PL.M.NOM invite.PST.2SG$_{[ACC]}$
     'Whoever you invited came.'

                              (Modern Greek, adapted from Daskalaki 2011: 80)

The example in (5) is identical to (4), except for that the relative pronoun appears in the internal more complex case. This example is ungrammatical: the relative pronoun does not appear in the external case. The fact that the internal case is more complex is irrelevant.

(5)   *Irθan   **ópjus   káleses**.
      come.PST.3PL[NOM] RP.PL.M.ACC invite.PST.2SG[ACC]
      'Whoever you invited came.'

                              (Modern Greek, adapted from Daskalaki 2011: 79)

This example shows that Modern Greek is neither an instance of the pattern in Section 3.4, in which only the external case is allowed to surface, nor is it an instance of the pattern in Section 3.2, in which the internal case and external case are allowed to surface. Instead, as illustrated by Table 4.11, the language does not have any case competition. The relative pronoun appears in the external case: the external case can be the most complex case, illustrated by the example in (3), marked here in light gray, or it can be the least complex case, illustrated by the example in (4), marked here in dark gray.

Table 4.11: Summary of Modern Greek headless relatives

INT \ EXT	[NOM]	[ACC]	[GEN]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	GEN
[ACC]	NOM	ACC	GEN
[GEN]	NOM	ACC	GEN

There is something more to be said about the situation in Modern Greek. When the internal case is genitive instead of accusative, a clitic is added to the sentence to make it grammatical.

Consider the example in (6). The internal case is genitive, as the predicate *eðósó* 'to give' takes genitive objects. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *efχarístisó* 'to thank' takes nominative subjects. The relative pronoun *ópjon* 'RP.PL.M.NOM' appears in the external case: the nominative. The relative pronoun appears in the external case, although it is the least complex case of the two. The example is grammatical, because Modern Greek does not show case competition, so the case scale is irrelevant. As long as the relative pronoun appears in the external case, the headless relative is grammatical. In addition, the relative clause obligatorily contains the genitive clitic *tus* 'CL.3PL.GEN'.[1]

(6)   Me   efχarístisan   ópji   **tus**   íχa
      CL.1SG.ACC thank.PST.3PL[NOM] RP.PL.M.NOM CL.3PL.GEN have.PST.1SG

---

[1]In Modern German, it is possible to insert a light head to resolve a situation with a more complex external case. However, then the relative pronoun has to change as well (from a WH-pronoun into a D-pronoun). I assume this is a different construction, and the Modern Greek one with the clitic inserted is not.

ðósi   leftá.

give.PTCP[GEN] money

'Whoever I had given money to, thanked me.'

(Modern Greek, adapted from Daskalaki 2011: 80)

This once again confirms the picture of Modern Greek always letting the relative pronoun surface in the external case. The internal case is taken care of by the clitic, which is independent of the relative clause construction.

I do not discuss more examples from Modern Greek than I did until now. This does not change anything about the point I am making here: the only kind of system that is compatible with the examples given is the one in the relative pronoun always appears in the external case. For more examples that illustrate this pattern, I refer the reader to Daskalaki (2011: 79-80) and Spyropoulos (2011: 31-34).[2]
[3]

In sum, Old English and Modern Greek are languages without case competition in their headless relatives. The relative pronoun always appears in the external case.

4.2   A typology of headless relatives

This section provides a typological overview of headless relatives. First, I describe the difference between the patterns of languages with and without case competition. Second, I include the parameters of non-case competition languages in the diagram I introduced in Section 3.6. Third, I give an overview of all logically possible patterns, I show how the diagram generates the attested ones, and I discuss the non-attested patterns.

---

[2]When the relative clause is dislocated, both the internal and the external case can be used. In (ia), the internal case is accusative, and the external case is nominative. Normally the relative pronoun should appear in the external case, so the nominative. However, the accusative is also grammatical here. Spyropoulos (2011) argues that in these left-dislocated structure, there is a silent *pro* or a clitic (*ton* in (ib)) that satisfies the external case. This allows the relative pronoun to take the internal case. This makes this construction more of a correlative.

(i)   a.   ópjos/   ópjon   epiléksume θa   pári to   vravío
             RP.SG.M.NOM/RP.SG.M.ACC choose.1PL[ACC] FUT   take.3SG[NOM] the price.ACC

             'Whoever we may choose, he will get the price.'

       b.   ópjos/   ópjon   me   aɣapá   ton   aɣapó
             RP.SG.M.NOM/RP.SG.M.ACC CL.1SG.ACC love.3SG[NOM] CL.3SG.M.ACC love.1SG[ACC]

             'Whoever loves me, I love him.'

[3]Then there is also the thing that Modern Greek has oblique accusatives that require a clitic. Difference between S-ACC and B-ACC.

In Section 3.2 to 3.5, I discussed four different patterns. These four patterns are all based on a single table, shown in Table 4.12 (repeated from Section 3.2). The cases in the cells are the ones that win the case competition. The variation between the four patterns lies in whether all cells in the table are grammatical, or whether some of them are not. In none of the four patterns in Section 3.2 to 3.5, the cells are filled by a case different from what is given in 4.12.

Table 4.12: Relative pronoun follows case competition

INT ᴇˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

In this section I introduced two different ways of filling out the table. The first one is the one in which the relative pronoun appears in the internal case, as in Table 4.13 (repeated from Table 4.2).

Table 4.13: Relative pronoun in internal case

INT ᴇˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	NOM	NOM
[ACC]	ACC	ACC	ACC
[DAT]	DAT	DAT	DAT

The second one is the one in which the relative pronoun appears in the external case, as in Table 4.14 (repeated from Table 4.2).

Table 4.14: Relative pronoun in external case

INT ᴇˣᵀ	[NOM]	[ACC]	[DAT]
[NOM]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[ACC]	NOM	ACC	DAT
[DAT]	NOM	ACC	DAT

I incorporate the parameters that generates these different patterns into the diagram from Section 3.6 in Figure 4.1. I added two different parameters. First, a

language either has case competition or it does not at at 'case competition?'. If the language has case competition, the pattern shown in Table 4.12 is generated. The two parameters that follow then ('INT as winner?' and 'EXT as winner?') are described in Section 3.6. If the language does not have case competition, the second parameter is whether the language lets its relative pronouns appear either in the internal case or in the external case at at 'INT/EXT?'. If the language lets its relative pronouns appear in the internal case, the pattern shown in Table 4.13 is generated. I am not aware of any language that lets its relative pronoun appear in the internal case.[4] If the language lets its relative pronouns appear in the external case, the pattern shown in Table 4.14 is generated. Old English and Modern Greek are two examples of languages that let their relative pronouns appear in the external case.
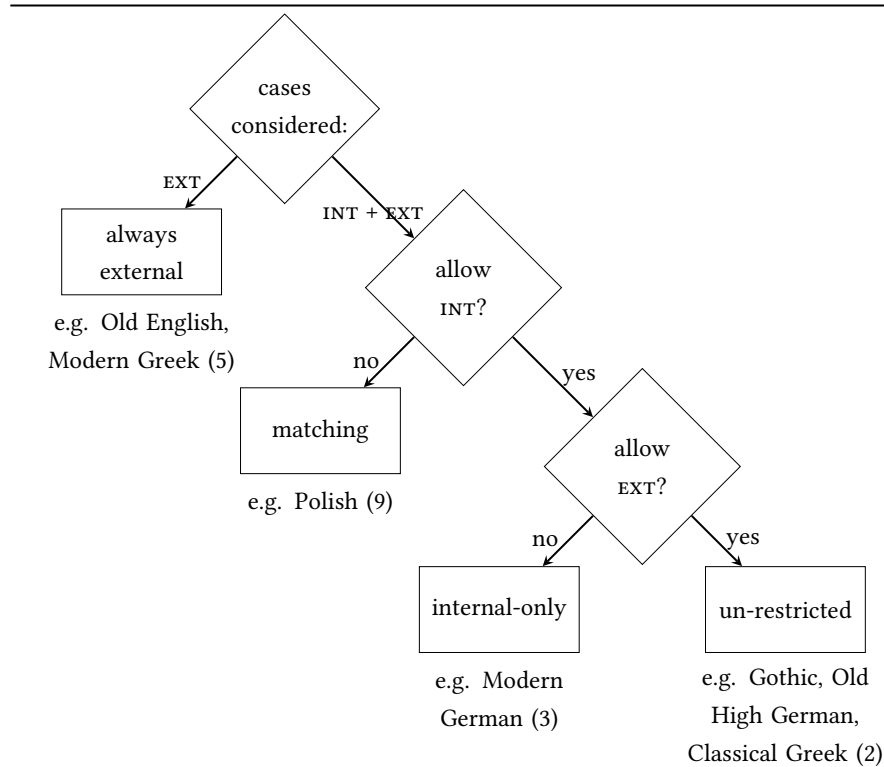
Figure 4.1: Attested patterns in headless relatives

In Table 4.15, I give all logically possible patterns for headless relatives. The top row sketches two different situations: one in which the internal case is the most complex ([INT]>[EXT]) and one in which the external case is the most com-

---

[4]In this dissertation I do not offer an explanation for why this type of example should be absent. Future research should determine whether this pattern is actually attested, or whether this option should be excluded and how.

plex ([EXT]>[INT]). The second row refers to the case which the relative pronoun appears in, which can be either the internal case (INT) or the external case (EXT).

When the internal case and the external case differ (which holds for both options the top row indicates), the relative pronoun cannot appear in both the internal and external case at the same time. This excluded the possibility of having a checkmark at both INT and EXT in the same situation. This leaves the possibility to have a checkmark at INT, at EXT or at none of them. This gives 3 × 3 = 9 logically possible options, which are listen in Table 4.15.

Table 4.15: Possible patterns for headless relatives

	[INT]>[EXT]		[EXT]>[INT]		
	INT	EXT	INT	EXT	language
1	✓	*	✓	*	n.a.
2	✓	*	*	✓	e.g. Old High German
3	✓	*	*	*	e.g. Modern German
4	*	✓	✓	*	n.a.
5	*	✓	*	✓	e.g. Old English
6	*	✓	*	*	n.a.
7	*	*	✓	*	n.a.
8	*	*	*	✓	n.a.
9	*	*	*	*	e.g. Polish

In what follows I show how Figure 4.1 generates of all logically possible patterns only the attested patterns (except for the one in which the relative pronoun always takes the internal case).

I start with the leftmost pattern in Figure 4.1, which is number 1 in Table 4.15. In this pattern, there is no case competition, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the internal case. As I mentioned earlier, I am not aware of a language that exemplified this pattern and future research should tell whether this option is attested or whether it should be excluded. The second pattern in Figure 4.1 is number 5 in Table 4.15. In this pattern, there is no case competition, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the external case. This pattern is exemplified by Old English and Modern Greek. The third pattern in Figure 4.1 is number 9 in Table 4.15. In this pattern, there is case competition, and the relative pronoun is only allowed to surface in the case when there is a tie, i.e. when the internal and external case match. This pattern is exemplified by Polish. The fourth pattern in Figure 4.1 is number 3 in Table 4.15. In this pattern, there is case competition, and the relative pronoun is only allowed

to surface in the internal case when it wins the case competition. This pattern is exemplified by Modern German. The fifth and last pattern in Figure 4.1 is number 2 in Table 4.15. In this pattern, there is case competition, and the relative pronoun is allowed to surface in the internal case and the external case when either of them wins the case competition. This pattern is exemplified by Old High German, Gothic and Classical Greek.

This leaves four patterns that are logically possible but not attested in languages: pattern numbers 4, 6, 7 and 8 in Table 4.15. These patterns cannot be generated by the diagram in Figure 4.1. That means that they are not a result of any of the possible parameter settings in the diagram.

In the pattern number 4, the relative pronoun surfaces in the external case when the internal case is the most complex, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the internal case when the external case is the most complex. In other words, the relative pronoun appears in the losing case in the case competition. Pattern number 6 and 7 are both subsets of pattern number 4 in the sense that they allow part of what number 4 allows. In the pattern number 6, the relative pronoun surfaces in the external case when the internal case is the most complex, and there is no grammatical option when the external case is the most complex. Patterns number 7 is the opposite of pattern number 6: there is no grammatical option when the external case is the most complex, and the relative pronoun surfaces in the internal case when the external case is the most complex. The absence of these three patterns across languages provides further evidence for the case scale in Chapter 1.

In the pattern number 8, the relative pronoun is only allowed to surface in the external case when it wins the case competition. This pattern is excluded as a result of the relative ordering of 'INT as a winner?' and 'EXT as a winner?' in the diagram in Figure 4.1. The next chapter, Chapter 2, discusses the linguistic counterpart of this ordering.

Part III

Deriving the typology

Chapter 5

The source of variation

In Chapter 3, I introduced two descriptive parameters that describe the differences between the attested languages. I repeat the overview in Figure 5.1.
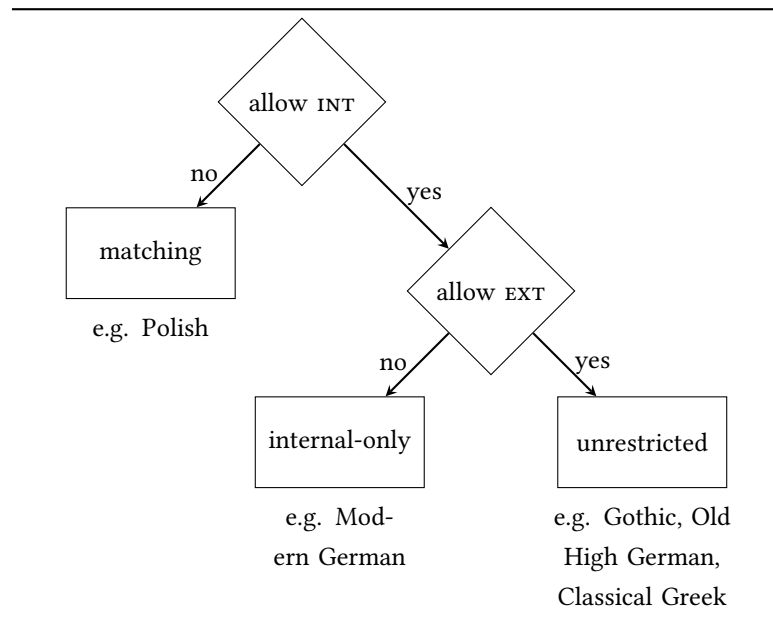

Figure 5.1: Two descriptive parameters generate three language types

The first parameter, *allow* INT, is whether the internal case is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition. This parameter distinguishes the matching type of language from the internal-only and the unrestricted type of languages. The second parameter, *allow* EXT, is whether the external case is allowed to surface when it wins the case competition. This parameter distinguishes the internal-only type of language from the unrestricted type of language.

When the parameters are formulated like this, they describe the different lan-

guage types, but they are specific to the headless relative construction. Ideally, differences between languages can be derived from independent properties of the language.[1] I argue that there is such a property for the variation in headless relatives, namely the different lexical entries that are present in different languages. These different lexical entries are the links between lexical trees, phonological representations and conceptual representations, which are part of the language's lexicon. The goal of Part III of this dissertation is to show how different lexical entries lead to differences in language types and to illustrate in detail how this works for the three different language types discussed in Chapter 3. The goal of the current chapter is to give the basic idea behind my proposal. In the following three chapters, I work the proposal for the three different language types out in detail.

This chapter is structured as follows. First, I discuss the basic assumptions that I am making, which are the same for each of the discussed language types. Then I introduce the source of the crosslinguistic variation: the lexical entries that are present in the different language types. I show how differences in lexical entries ultimately lead to different language types.

5.1   Underlying assumptions

I start with my assumption that headless relatives are derived from light-headed relatives.[2] The light head bears the external case, and the relative pronoun bears the internal case, as illustrated in (1).

(1)   light head$_{\text{EXT}}$ [relative pronoun$_{\text{INT}}$ ...]

In a headless relative, either the light head or the relative pronoun is deleted.

To see what a light-headed relative looks like, consider the Old High German light-headed relative in (2). The relative clause, including the relative pronoun, is marked in bold. *Thér* 'LH.SG.M.NOM' is the light head of the relative clause. This is the element that appears in the external case, the case that reflects the grammatical role in the main clause. *Then* 'RP.SG.M.ACC' is the relative pronoun in the relative clause. This is the element that appears in the internal case, the case that reflects the grammatical role within the relative clause.

---

[1] Exactly this point was raised by in Grosu (2003b, p. 147): "A natural question at this point is whether this typology needs to be fully stipulative, or is to some extent derivable from independent properties of individual languages." He investigated the correlation between morphological richness and the willingness for a language to show headless relatives. He found a certain tendency, but no absolute rule.

[2] The same is argued for headless relatives with D-pronouns in Modern German by Fuß and Grewendorf (2014) and Hanink (2018) and for Polish by Citko (2004). Several others claim that headless relatives have a head, but that it is phonologically empty (cf. Bresnan and Grimshaw, 1978; Groos and van Riemsdijk, 1981; Himmelreich, 2017).

(2)   eno nist   thiz   thér   **then**   **ir**
      now not be.3SG[NOM] DEM.SG.N.NOM LH.SG.M.NOM RP.SG.M.ACC 2PL.NOM

      suochet   zi arslahanne?
      seek.2PL[ACC] to kill.INF.SG.DAT

      'Isn't this now the one, who you seek to kill?'

<div align="right">(Old High German, Tatian 349:20)</div>

The difference between a light-headed relative and a headless relative is that in a headless relative either the light head or the relative pronoun does not surface. The surfacing element is the one that bears the winning case, and the absent element is the one that bears the losing case. This means that what I have so far been glossing as the relative pronoun and calling the relative pronoun is actually sometimes the light head (when the relative pronoun is deleted) and sometimes the relative pronoun (when the light head is deleted). To reflect that, I call the surfacing element from now on the surface pronoun.

This brings me to my second assumption, which concerns the circumstances under which the light head or the relative pronoun can be deleted. A light head or a relative pronoun can be deleted when their content can be recovered. The content can be recovered when there is an antecedent which contains the deleted element. More specifically, the deleted element needs to be contained as a whole within the antecedent.[3,4]

For light heads and relative pronouns this means that one of them can be absent when they are contained in the other element. In other words, it depends on the comparison between the light head and the relative pronoun themselves which one of them is absent. Note that it is also possible that neither of the elements is contained in the other one. The consequence is then that neither of them is deleted, which describes the situation in which there is no grammatical headless relative.

I continue with my third assumption. In order to be able to compare the light head and the relative pronoun, I zoom in on their internal syntax. In Chapter 6 to 8 I give arguments to support the structures I am assuming here. I assume that all languages have two possible light heads. Figure 5.2 gives a simplified representation of the first possible light head and the relative pronoun.

I assume that the first possible light head and the relative pronoun partly contain the same syntactic features. The features they have in common are case features (κ)

---

[3]In Section 5.2.2 I show that 'containment as a whole' is also a necessary requirement in other types of deletion operations.

[4]Throughout this chapter I elaborate further on the exact requirements for containment. There are namely two types of containment possible. The first type is structural containment: an element can be absent if it is structurally contained in the other element. I elaborate on this in Section 5.2.2. The second type is formal containment: an element can be absent if it is formally contained in the other element. I elaborate on this in Section 5.2.3.

light head 1   relative pronoun

RELP

κP   REL   κP

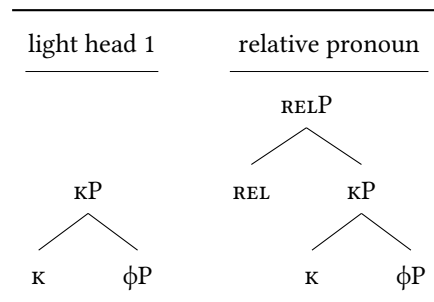κ   ϕP   κ   ϕP

Figure 5.2: LH-1 and RP

and what I here simplify as phi features (ϕ). The light head and the relative pronoun differ from each other in that the relative pronoun has at least one feature more, which I call here REL.

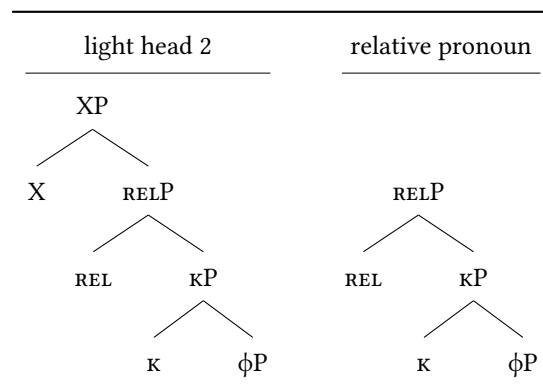Figure 5.3 gives a simplified representation of the second possible light head and the relative pronoun.

light head 2   relative pronoun

XP

X   RELP   RELP

REL   κP   REL   κP

κ   ϕP   κ   ϕP

Figure 5.3: LH-2 and RP

I assume that the second possible light head and the relative pronoun also partly contain the same syntactic features. The features they have in common are case features (κ), phi features (ϕ) and the feature REL. The light head and the relative pronoun differ from each other in that the light head has at least one feature more, which I call here X.

The three assumptions I just introduced hold for all language types I discuss. In all language types, headless relatives are derived from light-headed relatives. For all language types, the deletion operation requires containment. And in all language types, there are two possible light heads: the first possible light head contains at least one feature less than the relative pronoun, and the second possible light head contains at least one feature more than the relative pronoun. The difference between languages does not come from modifying these assumptions in any way, but from

how different languages package their features into constituents. Before I explain how differences in internal syntax lead to different language types, I show how differences in internal syntax arise.

In Chapter 2 I discussed the third person singular feminine pronoun in German. I repeat the lexical entry I gave for it in (3).
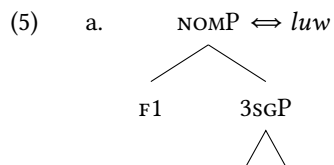
(3)   ACCP ⟺ *sie*

     F2   NOMP

           F1   3SG.FP
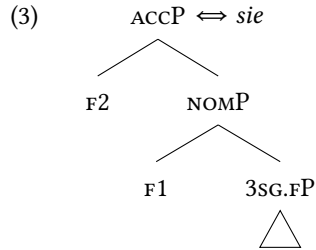
The lexical entry corresponds to the pronominal features, F1 and F2 and the phonological form *sie*.

Consider the syntactic structure of the accusative pronoun in German in (4).

(4)

          ACCP

       F2   NOMP

           F1   3SG.FP

          sie
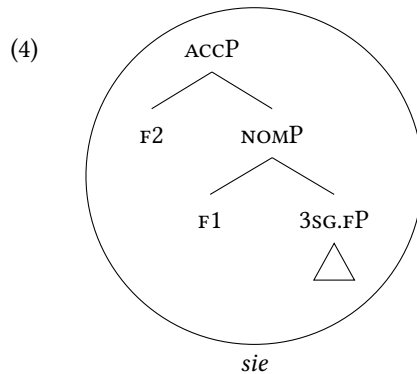
This syntactic structure is contained in the lexical tree in (3), so is spelled out as *sie*. This means that the accusative pronoun in German is spelled out by a single lexical entry.

The situation is different for the third person singular pronoun in Khanty, which I also showed in Chapter 2. In Khanty, there is not a single lexical entry that spells out all features that the German lexical entry in (3) spells out. Instead, the same features are realized by two separate lexical entries, shown in (5).

(5)   a.   NOMP ⟺ *luw*

        F1   3SGP

     b.   ᴀᴄᴄP ⟺ *e:l*
             |
            ꜰ2
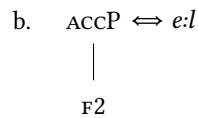
The lexical entry in (5a) corresponds to the pronominal features and the feature ꜰ1 and the phonological form *luw*. The lexical entry in (5b) corresponds to the feature ꜰ2 and the phonological form *e:l*.

    Consider the syntactic structure of the accusaitve pronoun in Khanty in (6).

(6)
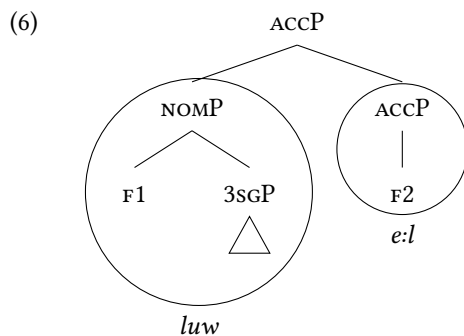
Nanosyntax only allows constituents to be spelled out, which means that in order to spell out the ᴀᴄᴄP, the ɴᴏᴍP needs to be moved out of the way first.[5] Now compare the syntactic structures of the German accusative pronoun in (4) and the Khanty one in (6). The feature content is the same (except for the feminine feature, which does not play a role here), but the internal syntax looks different. This change in internal syntax is a direct consequence of the lexical entries that are available within the language.

    Exactly this type of difference is what leads to the different language types in headless relatives. Languages contain different lexical entries that spell out the features of the light heads and the relative pronouns. The different lexical entries lead to differences in the internal syntax of the light heads and the relative pronouns. Differences in the internal syntax of the light heads and the relative pronouns lead to differences in whether or not one of them is contained in the other. Whether or not one of them is contained in the other determines whether or not the light head or relative pronoun can be recovered and, therefore, deleted. Whether or not the light head or relative pronoun can be deleted determines whether or not there is a single surface pronoun and, with that, a grammatical headless relative. I summarize this chain in (7).

---

[5]The movement operation is part of the spellout algorithm in Nanosyntax, which is the same for all languages. I elaborate on this spellout algorithm in Chapters 6 and 7.

(7) lexical entries → internal syntax → containment → deletion → surface pronoun

The different language types appear by going through the chain in (7) in the three different situations: (i) when the internal and external case match, (ii) when the internal case is the more complex case, and (iii) when the external case is the more complex case. An overview of these situation and whether or not a surface pronoun, and therefore a grammatical headless relative, results from it is shown in Table 5.1.

Table 5.1: Overview situations

language type	situation	surface pronoun
unrestricted	$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} = \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	✓
	$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} > \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	✓
	$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} < \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	✓
internal-only	$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} = \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	✓
	$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} > \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	✓
	$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} < \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	*
matching	$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} = \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	✓
	$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} > \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	*
	$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} < \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	*

In the unrestricted type of language, the lexical entries are such that there is a grammatical headless relative when the cases match, when the internal case is more complex and when the external case is more complex. In the internal-only type of language, the lexical entries are such that there is a grammatical headless relative when the cases match and when the internal case is more complex but not when external case is more complex. In the matching type of language, the lexical entries are such that there is a grammatical headless relative when the cases match but not when the internal case is more complex or when the external case is more complex.

In sum, I assume that headless relative clauses are derived from light-headed relatives. Light-headed relatives contain a light head and a relative pronoun. In a headless relative either the light head or the relative pronoun is deleted. The necessary requirement for deletion is that the deleted element (either the light head or relative pronoun) is structurally or formally contained in the other element. All languages have two possible light heads, which partly overlap in feature content with the relative pronoun. The difference between language types arises from languages having different lexical entries that spell out the features of the light heads and the

relative pronouns.

5.2   The three language types

In Chapter 3 I discussed three different language types. In this section I broadly
sketch the kind of lexical entries these language types have that ultimately leads
to them being of these types. For each language type I start with describing the
kind of lexical entries they have, and I show the internal syntax that the light head
and the relative pronoun have because of that.[6] For each language type, I compare
the internal syntax of the light head and the relative pronoun in the three different
situations: (i) when the cases of the light head and the relative pronoun match, (ii)
when the relative pronoun bears the more complex case, and (iii) when the light head
bears the more complex case. I show that the internal syntax I assume for the light
heads and the relative pronouns leads to the different patterns observed in the given
language types.

5.2.1   The internal-only type

I start with the internal-only type of language. In this type of language, grammatical
headless relatives can only be derived from light-headed relatives headed by the first
possible light head. Therefore, I only discuss the first possible light head, and I leave
the second possible light head aside.

   I suggest that the light head and the relative pronoun in this type of language
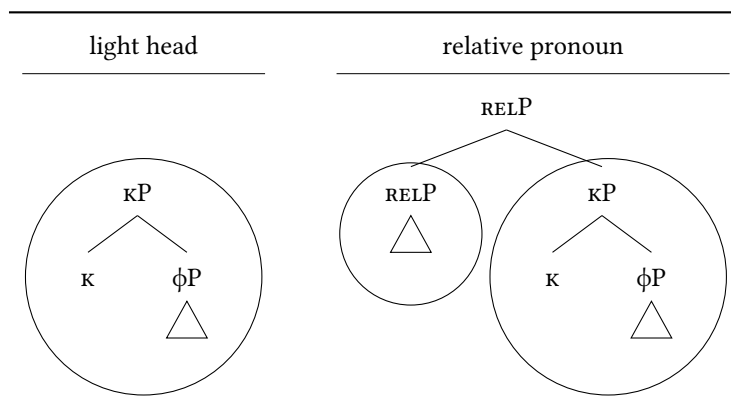have the internal syntax as shown in Figure 5.4.

Figure 5.4: LH and RP in the internal-only type

   This is a consequence of the following lexical entries. The light head is spelled
out by a single lexical entry, indicated by the circle around the κP. This lexical entry

---

[6]In this chapter I do not motivate the lexical entries I propose. In chapters 6 to 8 I take a concrete
example for each language type and I show evidence for the lexical entries I am proposing.

is a portmanteau of a phi and case features. The relative pronoun is spelled out by two lexical entries, indicated by the circles around the κP and the RELP. The phi and case features of the relative pronoun are spelled out by the same portmanteau as the light head is. The RELP is spelled out by a separate lexical entry. Chapter 6 motivates this analysis for the internal-only type of language Modern German.

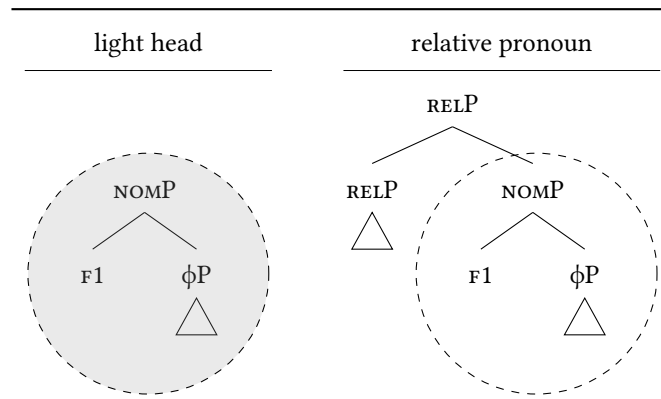In Figure 5.5, I give an example in which the relative pronoun and the light head bear the same case.

Figure 5.5: EXT$_{\text{NOM}}$ vs. INT$_{\text{NOM}}$ in the internal-only type

I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun. The light head (the NOMP) is contained in the relative pronoun (the RELP), so the light head can be deleted. I illustrate this by marking the content of the dashed circles for the light head gray. As the light head is deleted, the headless relative surfaces with the relative pronoun that bears the internal case.

In Figure 5.6, I give an example in which the relative pronoun bears a more complex case than the light head.

I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun. The light head (the NOMP) still is contained in the relative pronoun (the RELP), so the light head can be deleted. I illustrate this by marking the content of the dashed circles for the light head gray. As the light head is deleted, the headless relative surfaces with the relative pronoun that bears the internal case.

In Figure 5.7, I give an example in which the light head bears a more complex case than the relative pronoun.

I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun. Different from the examples in Figure 5.5 and 5.7, the light head is not contained in the relative pronoun. The NOMP of the light head is contained in the relative pronoun, but the relative pronoun does
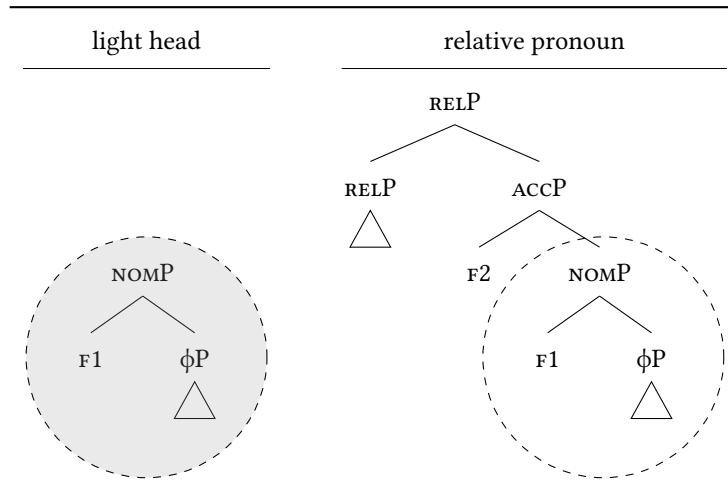
Figure 5.6: EXT_NOM vs. INT_ACC in the internal-only type
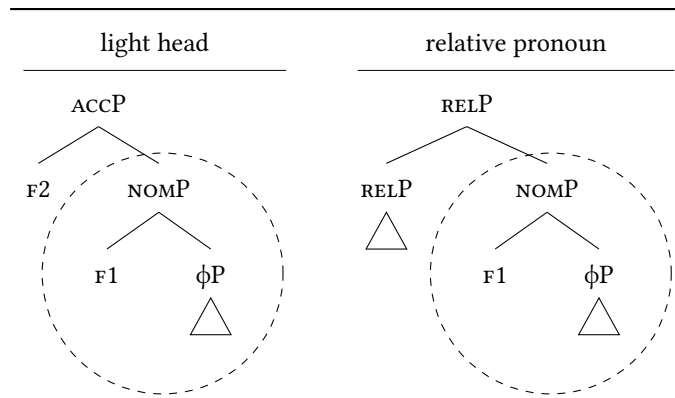
Figure 5.7: EXT_ACC vs. INT_NOM in the internal-only type

not contain the feature F2 that forms an ACCP. The NOMP of the relative pronoun is contained in the relative pronoun, but the light head does not contain the feature REL that forms a RELP. As a result, none of the elements can be absent. I illustrate this by leaving the content of both dashed circles unfilled. As none of the items is deleted, there is no grammatical headless relative possible.

The comparisons between the light head and the relative pronoun in different cases correctly derive the observed patterns in the internal-only type of language. An overview of the patterns is shown in Table 5.2.

Languages of the internal-only type have a lexical entry that spells out phi and case features and a lexical entry that spells out the feature REL. Headless relatives in this type of language are grammatical when the internal and the external case match and when the internal case is more complex than the external case. In these situations, the light head is contained in the relative pronoun, the light head is deleted,

Table 5.2: Grammaticality in the internal-only type

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	LH	RP			
$\kappa_{\text{INT}} = \kappa_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\kappa_1[\phi]]$	$[\text{REL}], [\kappa_1[\phi]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$\kappa_{\text{INT}} > \kappa_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\kappa_1[\phi]]$	$[\text{REL}], [\kappa_2[\kappa_1[\phi]]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$\kappa_{\text{INT}} < \kappa_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\kappa_2[\kappa_1[\phi]]]$	$[\text{REL}], [\kappa_1[\phi]]$	no	none	*

and the relative pronoun is the surface pronoun. Headless relatives are ungrammatical when the external case is more complex than the internal case, because then the light head no longer is contained in the relative pronoun, and none of the elements is deleted.

5.2.2 The matching type

I continue with the matching type of language. Just as in the internal-only type of language, in this type of language, grammatical headless relatives can only be derived from light-headed relatives headed by the first possible light head. Therefore, I only discuss the first possible light head, and I leave the second possible light head aside.

I suggest that the light head and the relative pronoun in this type of language have the internal syntax as shown in Figure 5.8.
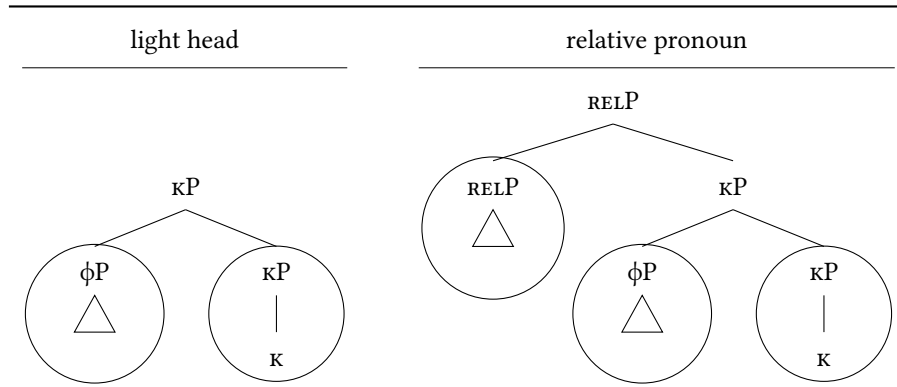

Figure 5.8: LH and RP in the matching type

This is a consequence of the following lexical entries. The light head is spelled out by two lexical entries: one that spells out the φP and one that spells out the κP which does not contain the φP. I indicate this by circling the φP and the κP. Notice that the φP has moved over the κP, which is a direct consequence of the available lexical entries. Remember that Nanosyntax only allows constituents to be spelled out. κP

can only be spelled out if the φP is moved out of the way. This is the crucial difference between the internal-only type of language and the matching type of language: the former has a single lexical entry that spells out both phi and case features and the latter has two separate ones. Exactly this ultimately leads to two different languages types. The relative pronoun in the matching type of language is spelled out by three lexical entries: the φP and the ᴋP that are also part of the light head, and in addition the ʀᴇʟP. I indicate this by circling the ʀᴇʟP, the φP and the ᴋP. Chapter 6 motivates this analysis for the matching type of language Polish.

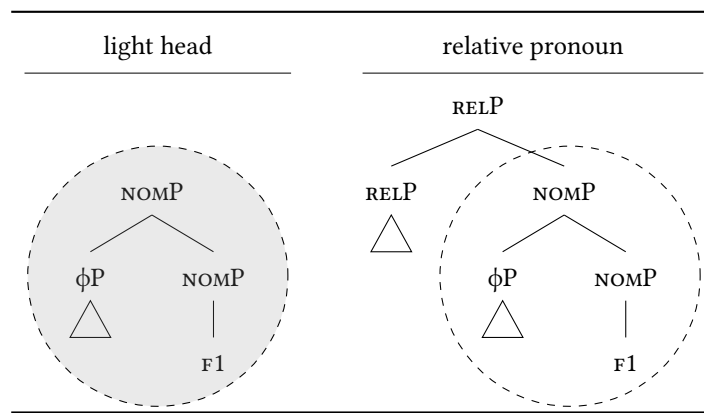In Figure 5.9, I give an example in which the light head and the relative pronoun bear the same case.

Figure 5.9: ᴇxᴛ_{ɴᴏᴍ} vs. ɪɴᴛ_{ɴᴏᴍ} in the matching type

I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun. In this instance it is no problem that the φP has moved over the ɴᴏᴍP. The light head (the ɴᴏᴍP) still is contained in the relative pronoun (the ʀᴇʟP), so the light head can be deleted. I illustrate this by marking the content of the dashed circles for the light head gray. As the light head is deleted, the headless relative surfaces with the relative pronoun that bears the internal case.

In Figure 5.10, I give an example in which the relative pronoun bears a more complex case than the light head.

I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun. The light head (the ɴᴏᴍP) no longer is contained in the relative pronoun (the ʀᴇʟP). Therefore, the light head cannot be deleted, which I illustrate by leaving the content of both dashed circles unfilled. As none of the items is deleted, there is no grammatical headless relative possible. Figure 5.10 shows that in this instance it is a problem the φP has moved over the ɴᴏᴍP or ᴀᴄᴄP.

Something else the example shows is the necessity to formulate the proposal in

light head | relative pronoun
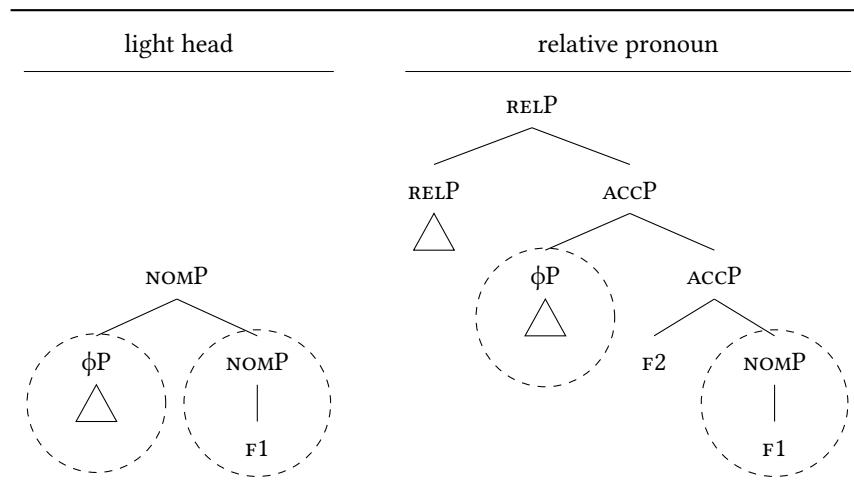
Figure 5.10: EXT$_{\text{NOM}}$ vs. INT$_{\text{ACC}}$ in the matching type

terms of structural containment instead of feature containment. To illustrate the difference, I repeat the example from the internal-only type in which the relative pronoun could delete the light head in Figure 5.11 from Figure 5.6.

light head | relative pronoun
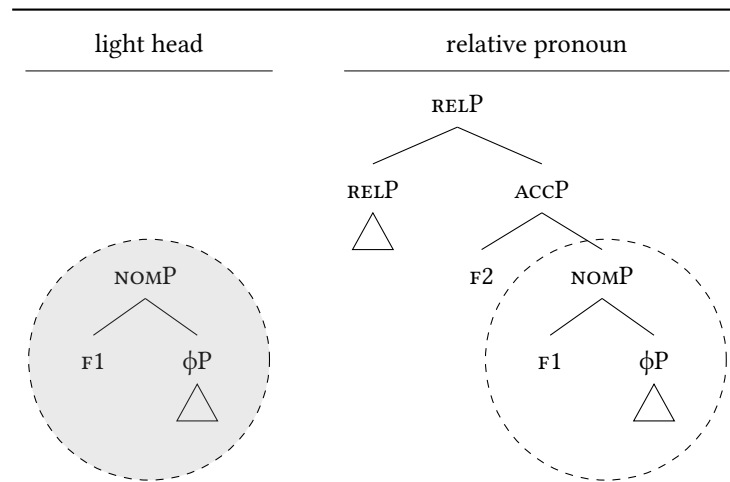
Figure 5.11: EXT$_{\text{NOM}}$ vs. INT$_{\text{ACC}}$ in the internal-only type (repeated)

In Figure 5.11, two different types of containment hold: feature containment and structural containment. With feature containment, each feature of the light head (i.e. features contained in ϕP and F1) is also a feature within the relative pronoun. Therefore, the relative pronoun contains the light head. With structural containment, the NOMP is structurally contained in the RELP. Therefore, the relative pronoun contains contains the light head.

Consider Figure 5.10 again. Here feature containment holds, but structural con-

tainment does not. The light head and the relative pronoun contain exactly the same features for the light head and the relative pronoun as in Figure 5.11, so also here each feature of the light head (i.e. features contained in ϕP and F1) is also a feature within the relative pronoun. However, the features form a different syntactic structure, in such a way that the light head no longer forms a single constituent within the relative pronoun.

In sum, structural containment is a stronger requirement than feature containment. Only this stronger requirement is able to distinguish the internal-only type of language from the matching type of language. Therefore, this account crucially relies on structural containment being the containment requirement that needs to be fulfilled.

Structural containment is not an ad hoc requirement for deletion of a light head or relative pronoun. It is also what seems to be crucial in NP ellipsis in general. Cinque (2020) argues that nominal modifiers can only be absent if they form a constituent with the NP. If they do not, they can not be deleted while still being interpreted, meaning that ellipsis is ungrammatical. In what follows, I present his argument.

In (8), I give an example of a conjunction with two noun phrases from Dutch. The first conjunct consists of a demonstrative, an adjective and a noun, and the second one of only a demonstrative.

(8)   deze witte huizen en   die
        these white houses and those
        'these white houses and those white houses'   (Dutch)

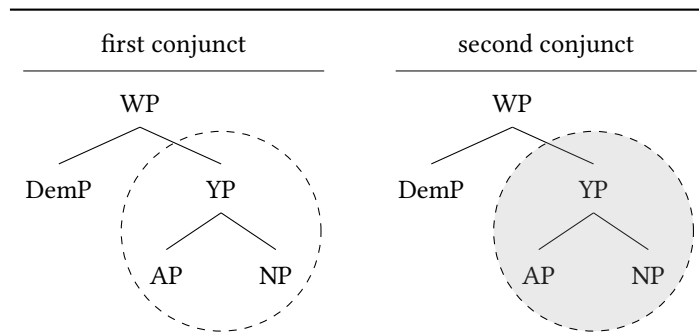In Figure 5.12, I schematically show the first and second conjunct of (8).

Figure 5.12: Nominal ellipsis in Dutch

The YP in the second conjunct is the constituent that is deleted. I draw a dashed circle around it, and I mark the content gray. This YP contains the adjective and the noun. The interpretation of the YP in the second conjunct can be recovered, because the YP in the first conjunct serves as the antecedent. What is crucial here is that the

deleted material forms a single constituent, and that is why it can be recovered.

The situation is different in Kipsigis, a Nilotic Kalenjin language spoken in Kenya. In (9), I give an example of a conjunction of two noun phrases in Kipsigis. The first conjunct consists of a noun, a demonstrative and an adjective, and the second one only of a demonstrative.

(9) kaarii-chuun leel-ach ak   chu
     houses-those white-PL and these
     'those white houses and these houses'
     not: 'those white houses and these white houses' (Kipsigis, Cinque 2020: 24)

The order of the noun, the demonstrative and the adjective indicates that the NP must have moved (probably cyclically via YP) to the specifier of WP. I show this in (10).

(10)
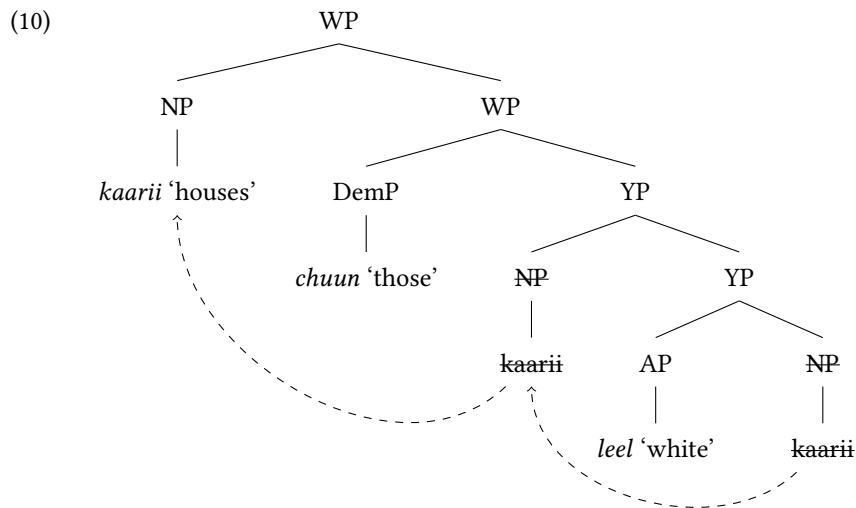
In Figure 5.13, I schematically show the first and second conjunct of (9).

Different from the Dutch example, the adjective and the noun that are deleted in the second conjunct of (9) do not form a constituent. I draw a dashed circle around the deleted elements and their antecedents in Figure 5.13. Since the adjective and the noun in Figure 5.13 do not form a single constituent together, they cannot be interpreted in the second conjunct of (9). Instead, only the noun can be recovered.

This observation regarding NP ellipsis provides independent support for my assumption that structural containment is the crucial requirement for deletion of the light head or the relative pronoun in headless relatives.

Coming back to the matching type of language, I do not give an example in which the light head bears a more complex case than the relative pronoun. The reasoning

	first conjunct	second conjunct

WP
—— NP ——— WP
————— DemP ——— YP
————————————— AP

WP
—— NP ——— WP
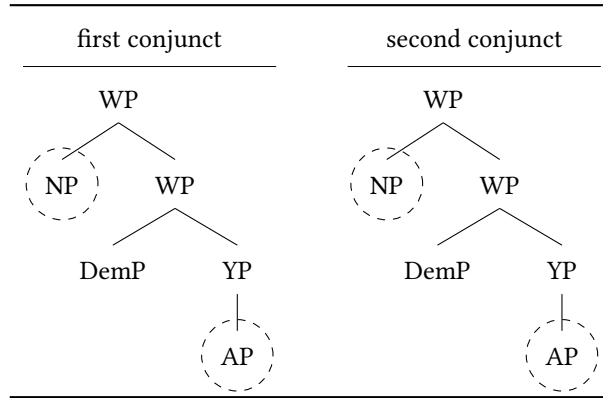————— DemP ——— YP
————————————— AP

Figure 5.13: Nominal ellipsis in Kipsigis

here is the same as for the internal-only type: both the light head and the relative pronoun contain a feature that the other element does not contain (F2 or REL). Since the weaker requirement of feature containment is not met, the stronger requirement of structural containment cannot be met either. As none of the elements contains the other one, none of them is deleted, and there is no grammatical headless relative possible.

The comparisons between the light head and the relative pronoun in different cases correctly derive the observed patterns in the matching type of language. An overview of the patterns is shown in Table 5.3.

Table 5.3: Grammaticality in the matching type

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	LH	RP			
$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} = \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\text{K}_1], [\phi]$	$[\text{REL}], [\text{K}_1], [\phi]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} > \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\text{K}_1], [\phi]$	$[\text{REL}], [\text{K}_2[\text{K}_1]], [\phi]$	no	none	*
$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} < \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\text{K}_2[\text{K}_1]], [\phi]$	$[\text{REL}], [\text{K}_1], [\phi]$	no	none	*

Languages of the matching type have a lexical entry that spells out phi features, a lexical entry that spells out case features and a lexical entry that spells out the feature REL. Headless relatives in this type of language are only grammatical when the internal and the external case match. In this situation, the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun, the light head is deleted, and the relative pronoun is the surface pronoun. When one of the cases is more complex than the other one, there is no longer a grammatical outcome possible. This follows from the fact that in the matching type of language ϕP and KP are both spelled out by their own lexical entry, which means that they both form separate constituents. As a result, the light

head no longer is structurally contained in the relative pronoun, and none of the elements is deleted.

5.2.3 The unrestricted type

I end with the unrestricted type of language. In this type of language, grammatical headless relatives can be derived from both light-headed relatives headed by the first possible light head and from light-headed relatives headed by the second possible light head.

I suggest that the first possible light head and the relative pronoun in this type of language have the internal syntax as shown Figure 5.14.
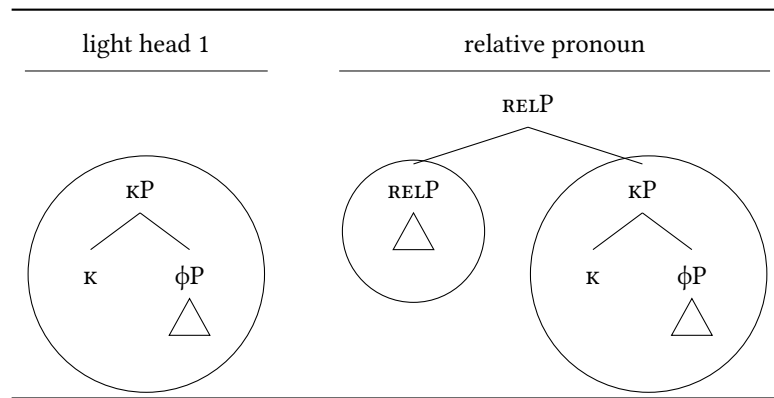

Figure 5.14: LH-1 and RP in the unrestricted type

This is a consequence of the following lexical entries, which are exactly the same as they are in the internal-only type of language. The light head is spelled out by a single lexical entry, indicated by the circle around the KP. This lexical entry is a portmanteau of a phi and case features. The relative pronoun is spelled out by two lexical entries, indicated by the circles around the KP and the RELP. The phi and case features of the relative pronoun are spelled out by the same portmanteau as the light head is. The RELP is spelled out by a separate lexical entry. Chapter 8 motivates this analysis for the unrestricted type of language Old High German.

Because the internal syntax of the light head and the relative pronoun is the same as in the internal-only type of language, the outcomes of the comparison between them in different cases are also the same as in the internal-only type of language. This means that when the internal case and the external case match or when the internal case is more complex than the external case, the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun, and the light head is deleted, as shown in Figure 5.5 and Figure 5.6. This is the pattern that is observed in the unrestricted type of language.

Crucially, the unrestricted type of language differs from the internal-only type of language when the external case is more complex than the internal case. The structures given in Figure 5.14 cannot lead to a grammatical headless relative, shown in Figure 5.7. Before I resort to introducing the second possible light head, I investigate whether it is possible to let a more complex external case surface while still keeping the light head but changing something else: a different kind of containment.

I zoom in on the situation in which the external case is more complex. At first sight, it is unexpected that the light head bearing the external case surfaces to begin with. Recall that the feature content of light head is that of the relative pronoun minus the feature REL. So far, I proposed that the light head can be deleted when all of its features are structurally contained in the relative pronoun. This is impossible the other way around: all features of the relative pronoun can never be structurally contained in the light head, because the relative pronoun contains the feature REL that the light head does not. It seems that there is one case that defies this rule: syncretism. In what follows I show a situation similar to the missing REL feature: a syncretism between nominative and accusative case in Modern German. The phenomenon can be understood if we assume that there is a second type of containment: formal containment.

Consider the example in (11), in which the internal nominative case competes against the external accusative case. The relative clause is marked in bold. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *gefällen* 'to please' takes nominative subjects. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *erzählen* 'to tell' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *was* 'RP.INAN.NOM/ACC' is syncretic between the nominative and the accusative.

(11) Ich   erzähle   **was**   **immer mir**
      1SG.NOM tell.PRES.1SG$_{[ACC]}$ RP.INAN.NOM/ACC ever   1SG.DAT

      gefällt.
      pleases.PRES.3SG$_{[NOM]}$
      'I tell whatever pleases me.'

                                        (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 344)

Remember from Chapter 3 that Modern German is an internal-only type of language. This means that it allows the internal case to surface when it wins the case competition, but it does not allow the external case to do so. Solely looking at the cases in the example, it is expected that the example is ungrammatical: the internal nominative case cannot win over the external accusative case, and the external case is not allowed to surface. However, the example in (11) is grammatical, because there is a syncretism between the nominative and the accusative in the inanimate gender.

This leads me to distinguish a second type of containment: formal containment.

This type of containment holds when an element is formally (i.e. with its phonological form) contained in the other element. Technically, it works as follows. The fact that there is a syncretism between the nominative and the accusative means that there is a lexical entry for the ACCP which contains the feature F2 and the NOMP, but not a more specific one that spells out only the NOMP. In (12), I give such a lexical entry, which spells out as *s*.

(12)   ACCP ⟺ *s*

```
        ACCP
        /  \
      F2   NOMP
            /  \
          F1   ϕP
                △
```
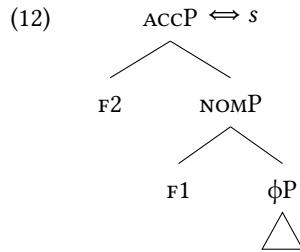
In Figure 5.15, I give the example in which the light head bears a more complex case than the relative pronoun and there is a syncretism between the nominative and the accusative case.
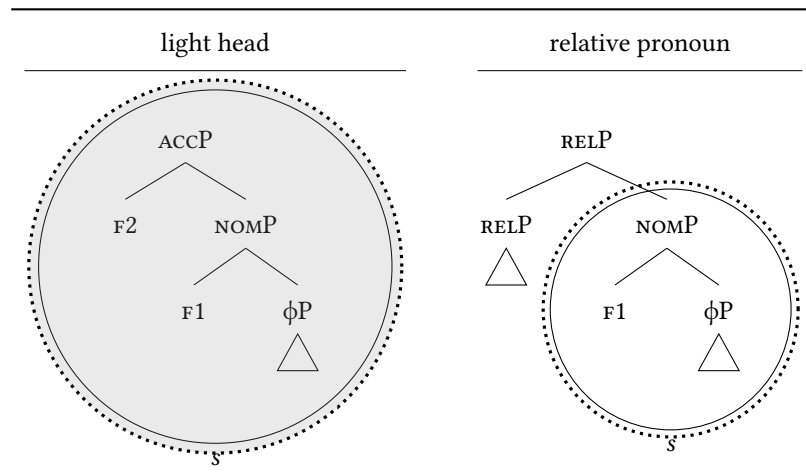

Figure 5.15: EXT_ACC vs. INT_NOM with case syncretism

The ACCP in the light head corresponds to *s*, illustrated by the circle around the ACCP and the *s* below it. The NOMP in the relative pronoun corresponds to *s* too, illustrated in the same way. I draw a dotted circle around the biggest possible element that is formally contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun. The light head (the ACCP realized by *s*) is formally contained in the relative pronoun (the NOMP realized by *s*), so the light head is deleted. I illustrate this by marking the content of the dotted circle for the light head gray. As the light head is deleted, the headless relative surfaces with the relative pronoun that bears the internal case.

In sum, a more complex case can be deleted when it is syncretic with the less complex case, even though the more complex case contains a case feature more. If that is the case, then a relative pronoun can also be deleted when it is syncretic with the light head, even though the relative pronoun contains at least one feature more. Consider such a situation in 5.16.[7,8]
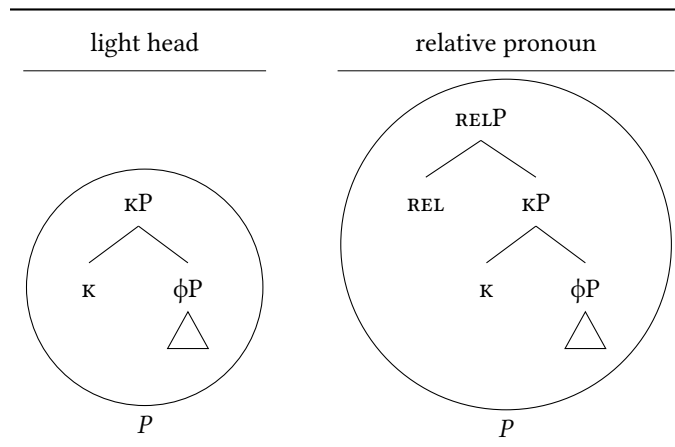

Figure 5.16: A syncretic light head and relative pronoun

The light head corresponds to *P*, illustrated by the circle around the κP and the *P* below it. The relative pronoun corresponds to *P* too, illustrated by the circle around the RELP and the *P*. The relative pronoun (the RELP realized by *P*) is formally contained in the light head (the κP realized by *P*), so the relative pronoun can be deleted. Although in this situation the relative pronoun can be deleted, this does not describe the situation in Old High German, the language I discuss in Chapter 8. I leave it open

---

[7]Note here that the two cases need to match in this situation as well. This can be achieved by making reference to an intermediate step in the derivation, which I explain later on in this section.

[8]Another option to get a relative pronoun deleted is to let the relative features form a separate constituent which is not deleted.

(i)
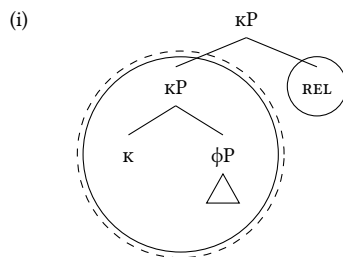
This is in a nutshell what I assume the analysis for Gothic to be. In this chapter and in Chapter 8 (in which I work out the proposal for Old High German) I only discuss the situation in which the relative pronoun as a whole is formally contained in the light head, and the relative pronoun is deleted.

for future research to find out whether a language like the one described in Figure 5.16 exists or not.

In Old High German, the second possible light head that I introduced in Section 5.1 generates a grammatical headless relative. Now consider the second possible light head and the relative pronoun in Figure 5.17.
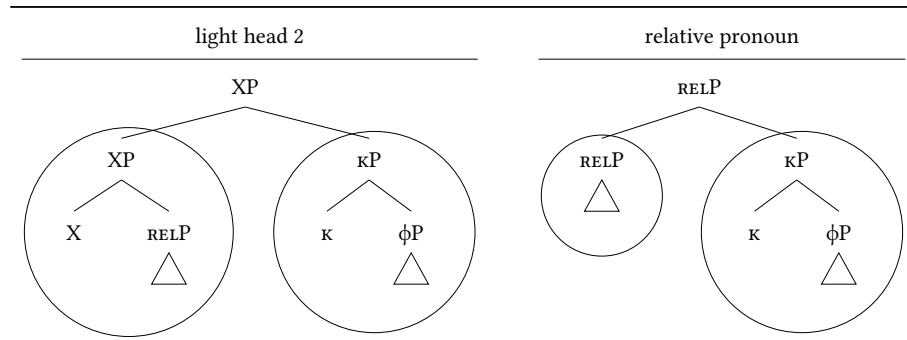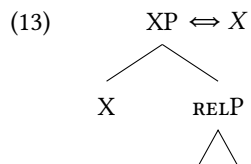

Figure 5.17: LH-2 and RP in the unrestricted type

As discussed, I propose that this light head does not only consist of phi and case features, but it also contains a feature I here refer to as X. In Chapter 8 I motivate this claim and I discuss what X refers to.

The internal syntax of the light head and the relative pronoun is the consequence of the following lexical entries. The light head is spelled out by two lexical entries. The feature X and REL are spelled out by their own lexical entry, indicated by the circle around the XP. The rest of the light head is spelled out by the portmanteau of phi and case features. The relative pronoun is the same as the one I introduced in Figure 5.14. It is spelled out by two lexical entries, indicated by the circles around the KP and the RELP. The phi and case features of the relative pronoun are spelled out by the same portmanteau as the light head is. The RELP is spelled out by a separate lexical entry.

It is crucial for the analysis that the lexical entry that spells out the XP in the light head is the same lexical entry that spells out the RELP in the relative pronoun. I give the lexical entry in (13).

(13)   XP ⟺ X

Chapter 8 motivates this analysis for the unrestricted type of language Old High

German.[9]

I now return to the problem at hand, being that in the unrestricted type of language a relative pronoun can be deleted. In Figure 5.18, I give an example in which this can happen. It contains the second possible light head and the relative pronoun, which both elements bear the same case.
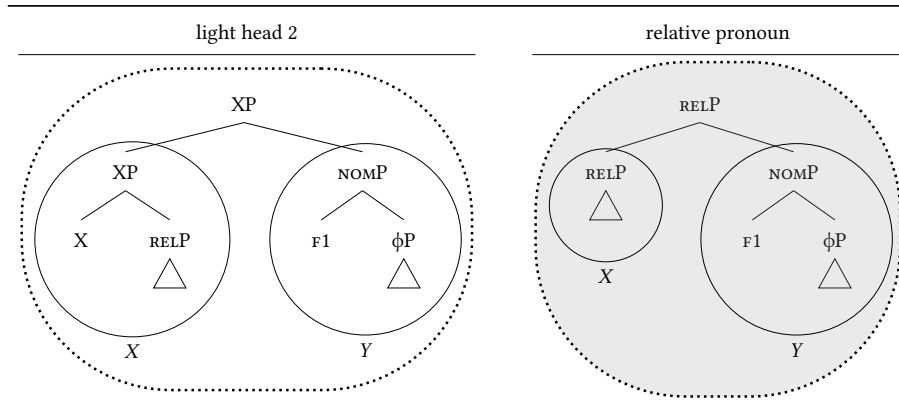

Figure 5.18: EXT_{NOM} vs. INT_{NOM} in the unrestricted type

The light head corresponds to *XY*, illustrated by the circle around the XP and the *X* below it and the circle around the NOMP and the *Y* below it. The relative pronoun corresponds to *XY* too, illustrated by the circle around the RELP and the *X* below it and the circle around the NOMP and the *Y* below it. I draw a dotted circle around the biggest possible element that is formally contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun. The relative pronoun (the RELP realized by *XY*) is formally contained in the light head (the XP realized by *XY*), so the relative pronoun is deleted.[10] I illustrate this by marking the content of the dotted circle for the relative pronoun gray.

Finally arriving at the situation in which the external case is more complex than the internal case, I show that the analysis of Figure 5.18 cannot simply be extended

---

[9]In Chapter 6 and in Chapter 7, I show that Modern German and Polish also have the second possible light head in their language. In these chapters, I argue that light-headed relatives headed by that head cannot be the source of headless relatives in these languages based on their interpretation.

In Chapter 8, I explain that there is another reason. The crucial reason for Old High German allowing headless relatives being derived from light-headed relatives headed by the second possible light head is that Old High German has a syncretism between the relative pronoun and the second possible light head. Modern German and Polish do not have that syncretism, so the light-headed relative headed by this second possible light head cannot be the source of the headless relative.

[10]The same holds the other way around: the light head (the XP realized by *XY*) is formally contained in the relative pronoun (the RELP realized by *XY*). Therefore, either the light head or the relative pronoun can be deleted. I delete the relative pronoun here, as I discuss how it is possible for the relative pronoun to be deleted even though it has a feature less than the light head.

to this situation. In Figure 5.19 I give an example of the second possible light head and the relative pronoun, in which the light head bears the more complex case.
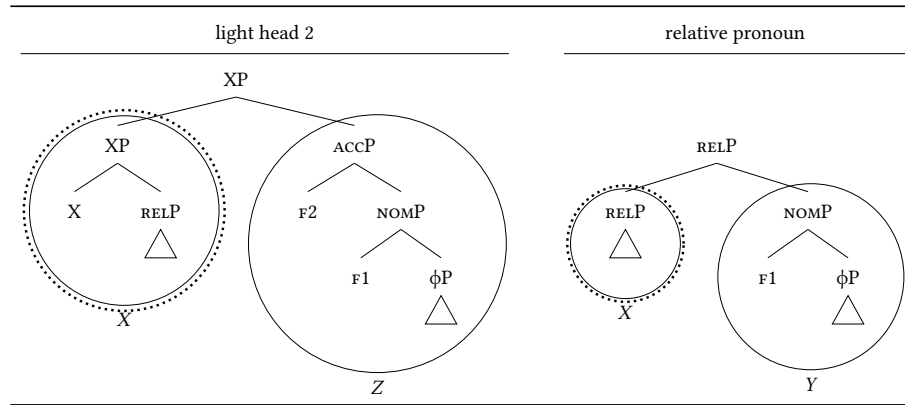

Figure 5.19: EXT$_{\text{ACC}}$ vs. INT$_{\text{NOM}}$ in the unrestricted type

The light head corresponds to *XZ*, illustrated by the circle around the XP and the *X* below it and the circle around the ACCP and the *Z* below it. The relative pronoun corresponds to *XY*, illustrated by the circle around the RELP and the *X* below it and the circle around the NOMP and the *Y* below it. I draw a dotted circle around the biggest possible element that is formally contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun. The relative pronoun is no longer formally contained in the light head. Therefore, the relative pronoun cannot be deleted, which I illustrate by leaving the content of both dotted circles unfilled. As none of the items is deleted, it is expected that there is no grammatical headless relative possible.

However, this is not what is observed in the unrestricted type of language. For this type of language I need to make an assumption explicit that concerns the larger syntactic structure of headless relatives. I assume that the relative clause is built first, which includes the relative pronoun that bears its case. At a later stage in the derivation, the light head is built. The last features of the light head that are merged are the case features. This means that there is a stage in the derivation in which the light head bears the nominative case (as in Figure 5.18). At that point, the relative pronoun is deleted. The light head remains as the surface pronoun. Subsequently the feature F2 is merged to the light head to make it a ACCP.

This type of derivation is not possible in the situation in which the internal case is more complex than the external case. In that situation, there is namely no stage in the derivation in which the case of the relative pronoun and the case of the light head match. The relative pronoun is namely built before the light head, and even at the end of the derivation the light head does not have the more complex case that the relative pronoun has. In Chapter 8 I discuss these derivations in more detail.

Crucially, this deletion option is only successful for languages of the unrestricted

type but not for languages of the internal-only or the matching type. This is derived from the fact that the unrestricted type of language has a light head available that is syncretic with the relative pronoun. This is not the case in the internal-only and the matching type of language. I elaborate on this in Chapter 8.

The comparisons between the first possible light head and the relative pronoun correctly derive the observed patterns for the situation in which cases match and for the situation in which internal case is more complex than the external case. An overview of the patterns is shown in Table 5.4.

Table 5.4: Grammaticality in the unrestricted type with LH-1

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	LH-1	RP			
$K_{INT} = K_{EXT}$	$[K_1[\phi]]$	$[REL], [K_1[\phi]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$K_{INT} > K_{EXT}$	$[K_1[\phi]]$	$[REL], [K_2[K_1[\phi]]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$K_{INT} < K_{EXT}$	$[REL], [K_1[\phi]]$	$[K_2[K_1[\phi]]]$	no	none	*

Focusing on the first possible light head, languages of the unrestricted type have a lexical entry that spells out phi and case features and a lexical entry that spells out the feature REL. Headless relatives in this language are grammatical in all situations: when the internal and the external case match, when the internal case is more complex and when the external case is more complex. The first possible light head only derives the correct result for the first two situations and not for the last one. In the first two situations, the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun, the light head is deleted, and the relative pronoun is the surface pronoun. In the last situation, the light head no longer is structurally contained in the relative pronoun, and none of the elements is deleted.

The comparisons between the second possible light head and the relative pronoun correctly derive the observed patterns for the situation in which cases match and for the situation in which external case is more complex than the internal case. An overview of the patterns is shown in Table 5.5.

Focusing on the second possible light head, languages of the unrestricted type have a lexical entry that spells out phi and case features and a lexical entry that spells out the features X and REL and crucially not a lexical entry that provides a different spellout for only the feature REL. Headless relatives in this language are grammatical in all situations: when the internal and the external case match, when the internal case is more complex and when the external case is more complex. The second possible light head only derives the correct result for the first and the last situation but not for the second one. In the first and last situation, the relative pro-

Table 5.5: Grammaticality in the unrestricted type with LH-2

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	LH-2	RP			
$K_{INT} = K_{EXT}$	/X/, /Y/	/X/, /Y/	form	RP	LH_{EXT}
$K_{INT} > K_{EXT}$	/X/, /Y/	/X/, /Z/	no	none	*
$K_{INT} < K_{EXT}$	/X/, /Y/	/X/, /Y/	form	RP	LH_{EXT}

noun is (at some point of the derivation) formally contained in the light head, the relative pronoun is deleted, and the light head is the surface pronoun. In the second situation, the relative pronoun is at no point in the derivation formally contained in the light head, and none of the elements is deleted.

5.3 Summary

In summing up this chapter, I return to the metaphor with the committee that I introduced in Chapter 3. I wrote that first case competition takes place, in which a more complex case wins over a less complex case. This case competition can now be reformulated into a more general mechanism, namely containment. A more complex case contains a less complex case.

Subsequently, I noted that there is a committee that can either approve the winning case or not approve it. In Chapter 3 I wrote that the approval happens based on where the winning case comes from: from inside of the relative clause (internal) or from outside of the relative clause (external). I argued in this chapter that headless relatives are derived from light-headed relatives. The light head bears that external case and the relative pronoun bears the internal case. The 'approval' of an internal or external case relies on the same mechanism as case competition, namely containment. If the light head is (structurally) contained in the relative pronoun, the light head can be deleted. Then the light head with its external case is deleted, and the relative pronoun with its internal case surfaces. This is what corresponds to the the internal case 'being allowed to surface'. If the relative pronoun is (formally) contained in the light head, the relative pronoun can be deleted. Then the relative pronoun with its internal case is deleted, and the light head with its external case surfaces. This is what corresponds to the the external case 'being allowed to surface'.

In other words, the grammaticality of a headless relative depends on containment. What is being compared is the internal syntax of the light head and the relative pronoun, which both bear their own case. Case is special in that it can differ from

sentence to sentence within a language. Therefore, the grammaticality of a sentence can differ within a language depending on the internal and external case. The part of the light head and relative pronoun that does not involve case features is stable within a language. Therefore, whether the internal or external case is 'allowed to surface' does not differ within a language.

The source of variation between languages is the different lexical entries that languages have. The parameters introduced in Chapter 3 and repeated in the introduction of the chapter can be reformulated as in Figure 5.20.
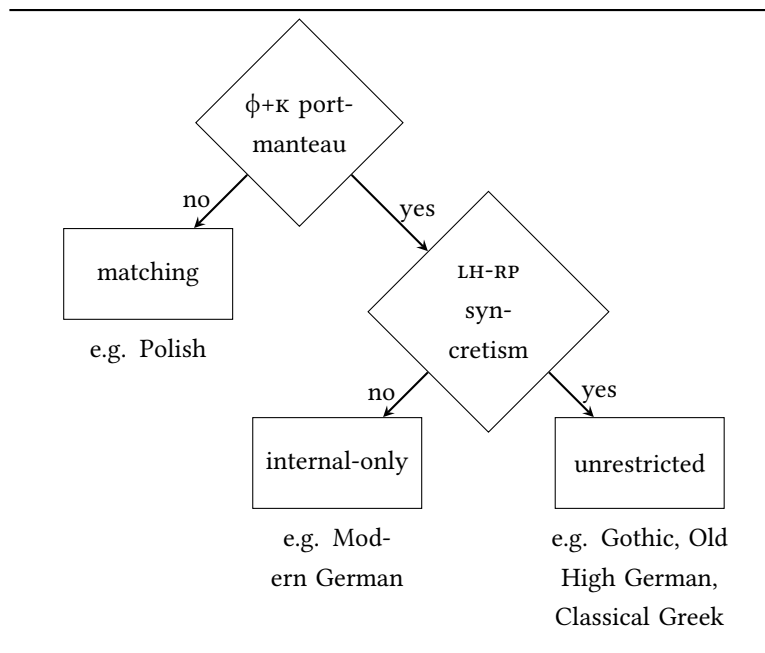
Figure 5.20: Different lexical entries generate three language types

The first parameter distinguishes the matching type of language from the internal-only and the unrestricted type of languages. The internal-only and unrestricted type of languages have a portmanteau that spells out these two features. The matching type of language does not have that, but it has two separate lexical entries for the phi and case features. The second parameter distinguishes the internal-only type of language from the unrestricted type of language. The unrestricted type of language has a light head that is syncretic with the relative pronoun. The internal-only type of language does not have such a syncretism.

This system excludes the external-only type. An external-only type would be a language type in which the relative pronoun can be deleted, but the light head cannot be deleted. In my proposal, an element can be deleted if it is structurally or formally contained in the other element. First consider only structural containment, leaving formal containment aside for now. Every language has two possible light heads. The

first possible light head contains one feature more less than the relative pronoun, and the second possible light head contains one feature more than the relative pronoun. Since the first possible light head contains one feature less than the relative pronoun, it can never structurally contain the relative pronoun. Therefore, relative pronoun can never be deleted.

Now consider also formal containment. Remember that an external-only type of language is a language in which the relative pronoun can be deleted, but the light head cannot be deleted. In Figure 5.16, I showed a situation in which the light head is syncretic with the relative pronoun, which I repeat here in Figure 5.21.
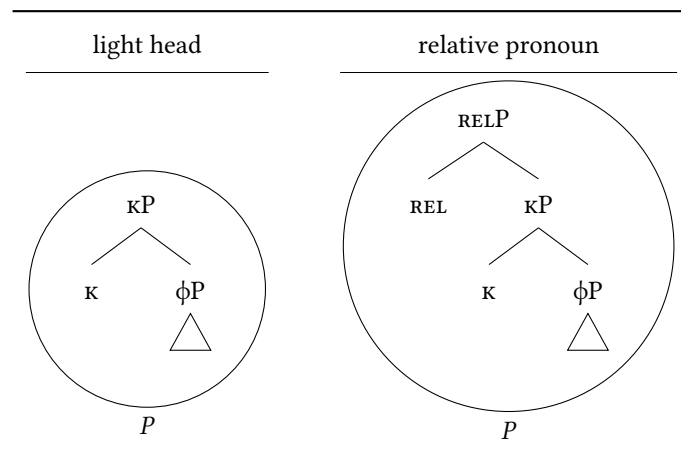
Figure 5.21: A syncretic light head and relative pronoun

In Figure 5.21, the relative pronoun is formally contained in the light head, and the relative pronoun can be deleted. Note here that the internal and external case need to be identical too. Only then the two forms are fully syncretic, and deletion can take place. As I explained at the of Section 5.2.3, this is a situation that appears when the internal and external cases match, but also when the external case is more complex. In a derivation with a more complex external case, there is namely always a stage in which the internal and external case match, since the external case features are the last features to be merged with the light head. When the internal case is more complex, the light head cannot be deleted by formal containment. There is namely no stage in the derivation in which the internal and external case match and the light head and the relative pronoun are fully syncretic. However, consider Figure 5.21 again. Although the light head cannot be deleted by formal containment, it can be deleted by structural containment. The light head is namely still formally contained in the relative pronoun.[11]

In this dissertation I describe different language types in case competition in headless relatives. In my account, the different language types are a result of a com-

---

[11] This reasoning holds for monomorphemic light heads and relative pronouns.

parison of the light head and the relative pronoun in the language. The larger syntactic context in which this takes place should be kept stable across languages. The operation that deletes the light head or the relative pronoun is the same for all language types. Therefore, the larger syntactic structure and the deletion operator do not play a central role in the account. At the end of Chapter 8, the larger syntactic structure of headless relatives enters the discussion when I account for how an external case can win the case competition. There I show where in the larger syntax the (different) light heads are situated and that deletion takes place under c-command.

To conclude, in this chapter I introduced the assumptions that headless relatives are derived from light-headed relatives and that relative pronouns contain at least one more feature than light heads. A headless relative is grammatical when either the light head or the relative pronoun is structurally or formally contained in the other element. This set of assumptions derives that only the most complex case can surface and that there is no language of the external-only type.

Chapter 6

Deriving the internal-only type

In Chapter 5, I suggested that languages of the internal-only type have two lexical entries that spell out light heads and relative pronouns in the language: a portmanteau for phi and case features and a separate lexical entry that spells out the feature REL. This means that the internal syntax of light heads and relative pronouns looks as shown in Figure 6.1.
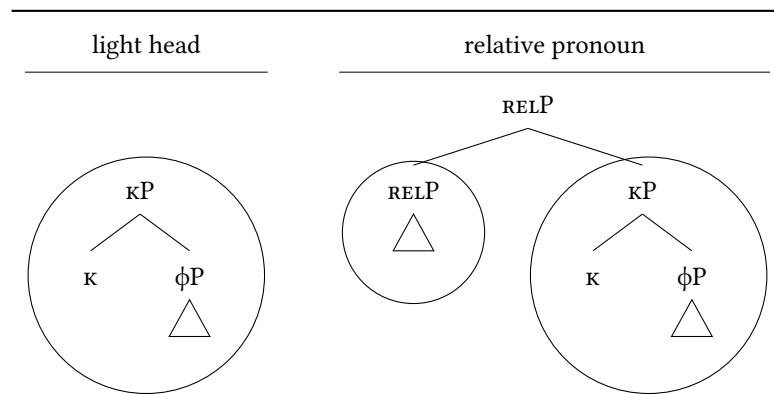
Figure 6.1: ELH and RP in the internal-only type

These lexical entries lead to the grammaticality pattern shown in Table 6.1.

Consider the first situation in which the internal and the external case match. The light head consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau. The relative pronoun consists of the same morpheme plus an additional morpheme that spells out the feature REL. The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the light head can be deleted, and the relative pronoun surfaces, bearing the internal case.

Consider now the situation in the internal case wins the case competition. The light head consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau. The relative pronoun consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau that contains at least one more case

Table 6.1: Grammaticality in the internal-only type

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	LH	RP			
$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} = \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\text{K}_1[\phi]]$	$[\text{REL}], [\text{K}_1[\phi]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} > \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\text{K}_1[\phi]]$	$[\text{REL}], [\text{K}_2[\text{K}_1[\phi]]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$\text{K}_{\text{INT}} < \text{K}_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\text{K}_2[\text{K}_1[\phi]]]$	$[\text{REL}], [\text{K}_1[\phi]]$	no	none	*

feature than the light head (K_2 in Figure 6.1) plus an additional morpheme that spells out the feature REL. The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the light head can be deleted, and the relative pronoun surfaces, bearing the internal case.

Finally, consider the situation in which the external case wins the case competition. The relative pronoun consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau and an additional morpheme that spells out the feature REL. Compared to the relative pronoun, the light head lacks the morpheme that spells out REL, and it contains at least one more case feature (K_2 in Figure 6.1). The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally contained in the other element. Therefore, none of the elements can be deleted, and there is no headless relative construction possible.

In Chapter 3, I showed that Modern German is a language of the internal-only type. In this chapter, I show that Modern German light heads and relative pronouns have the type of internal syntax described in Figure 6.1. I give a compact version of the internal syntax of Modern German light heads and relative pronouns in Figure 6.2.
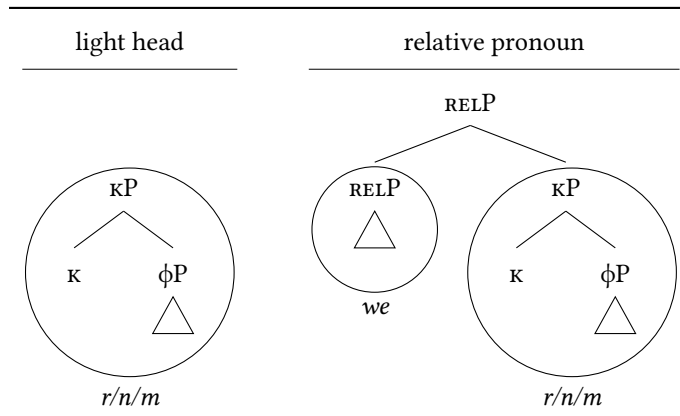

Figure 6.2: LH and RP in Modern German

Consider the light head in Figure 6.2. Light heads (i.e. phi and case features) in Modern German are spelled out by a single morpheme, indicated by the circle around the structure. They are spelled out as *n* or *m*, depending on which case they realize. Consider the relative pronoun in Figure 6.2. Relative pronouns in Modern German consist of two morphemes: the constituent that forms the light head (i.e. phi and case features) and the RELP, again indicated by the circles. The constituent that forms the light head has the same spellout as in the light head (*n* or *m*), and the RELP is spelled out as *we*. Throughout this chapter, I discuss the exact feature content of light heads and relative pronouns, I give lexical entries for them, and I show how these lexical entries lead to the internal syntax shown in Figure 6.2.

The chapter is structured as follows. First, I discuss the relative pronoun. I start by decomposing it into the two morphemes I showed in Figure 6.2. Then I show which features each of the morphemes corresponds to. I illustrate how different morphemes are combined into the internal syntax in Figure 6.2. Then I discuss the light head. I argue that Modern German headless relatives are derived from a type of light-headed relative clause that does not surface in the language. I show that the light head corresponds to one of the morphemes of the relative pronoun (the κP in Figure 6.2). Finally, I compare the internal syntax of the light head and the relative pronoun. I show that the light head can be deleted when the internal case matches the external case or when the internal case is more complex than the external case. When the external case is more complex, I show that none of the elements can be deleted.

6.1 The Modern German relative pronoun

In the introduction of this chapter, I suggested that the internal syntax of relative pronouns in Modern German looks as shown in (1).

(1)
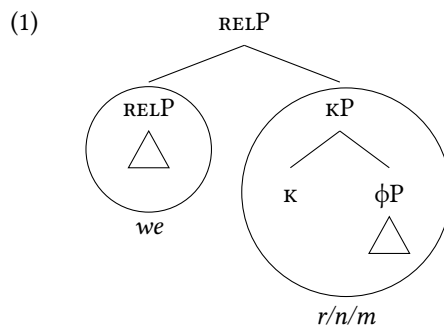
In Chapter 5, I suggested that relative pronouns consist of at least three features: REL, φ and κ. In this section, I show that relative pronoun consists of more features than that. Still, the crucial claim I made in Chapter 5 remains unchanged: internal-

only languages (of which Modern German is an example) have a portmanteau for the features that correspond to phi and case features and a morpheme that spells out the features the light head does not contain. I show the complete structure that I work towards in this section in (2).[1]

(2)
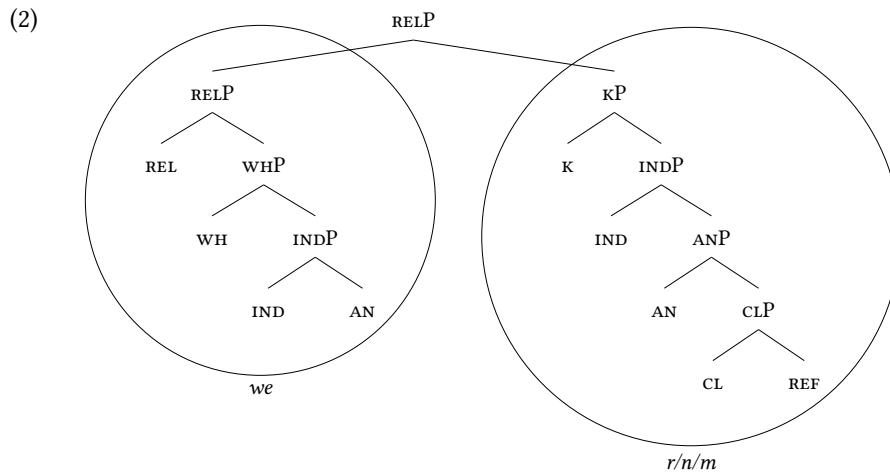
I discuss two relative pronouns: the animate accusative and the animate dative. These are the two forms that I compare the internal syntax of in Section 6.4.[2] I show them in (3).

(3)   a.   we-n
             'RP.AN.ACC'

       b.   we-m
             'RP.AN.DAT'

I decompose the relative pronouns into two morphemes: the *we* and the final consonant (*n* or *m*). For each morpheme, I discuss which features they spell out, and I give their lexical entries. In the next section, I show how I construct the relative pronouns by combining the separate morphemes.

I start with the final consonants: *n* and *m*. These two morphemes correspond to what I called the phi and case feature portmanteau in Chapter 5 and the introduction to this chapter. I argue that the phi features actually correspond to gender features,

---

[1]The κP in this functional sequence is a placeholder for multiple case projections. When the relative pronoun is the nominative, the κP consists of the feature F1, and it forms the NOMP. When the relative pronoun is the accusative, the κP consists of the features F1 and F2, and they form the ACCP. When the relative pronoun is the dative, the κP consists of the features F1, F2 and F3, and they form the DATP.

[2]For reasons of space, I do not discuss the animate nominative *wer* 'RP.AN.ACC'. I assume its analysis is identical to the one I propose for *wen* and *wem*, except that *wer* spells out fewer case features. I work out the proposal for *wen* and *wem* to be able to do a comparison between Modern German and Polish in which the relative pronouns spell out exactly the same feature content.

number features and pronominal features. Adding this all up, I claim that the final consonants correspond to number features, gender features, pronominal features and case features. Consider Table 6.2.

Table 6.2: Modern German relative pronouns (Durrell 2011: 5.3.3)

	AN	INAN
NOM	we-r	wa-s
ACC	we-n	wa-s
DAT	we-m	-

The final consonants change depending on animacy and case.[3] The differing final consonant can be observed in several contexts besides relative pronouns. Table 6.3 gives an overview of the demonstrative *dieser* 'this' in Modern German in two numbers, three genders and three cases.[4]

Table 6.3: Modern German demonstrative *dieser* 'this' (Durrell 2011: Table 5.2)

	M.SG	N.SG	F.SG	PL
NOM	diese-r	diese-s	diese	diese
ACC	diese-n	diese-s	diese	diese
DAT	diese-m	diese-m	diese-r	diese-n

Table 6.3 shows that the final consonant differs depending on gender, number and case. There is no vowel that differs between the different forms. I conclude from this that the consonant realizes features having to do with gender, number and case. In other words, the final consonant is a portmanteau that realizes gender, number and case features.

For number and gender, I adopt the features that are distinguished by Harley and Ritter (2002) for pronouns. The feature CL corresponds to a gender feature, which is inanimate or neuter if it is not combined with any other features. Combining CL with the feature AN gives the animate or masculine gender.[5] The feature IND corresponds to number, which is singular if it is not combined with any other features.

---

[3]The vowel also differs between animacy. I return to this point when I discuss the feature content of the *we*.

[4]Notice that the animate forms in Table 6.2 are the masculine forms in Table 6.3 and that the inanimate forms in Table 6.2 are the neuter forms in Table 6.3. This is a pattern that appears more often.

[5]If the features CL and AN are combined with the feature FEM, it becomes the feminine gender.

For case, I adopt the features of Caha (2009), already introduced in Chapter 2. The feature F1 and F2 corresponds to the accusative, and the features F1, F2 and F3 correspond to the dative.

Having discussed the number, gender and case features, only the pronominal features remain. Another context in which the final consonants appear (besides their use in relative pronouns and demonstrative pronouns) is as pronouns on their own. In (4), I give examples of the masculine accusative singular and masculine dative singular.

(4)   a.   Ich wollte   n   gestern   schon   anrufen.
              I   wanted 3SG.M.ACC.WK yesterday already call
              'I already wanted to call him yesterday.'
       b.   Ich helfe   m   sein Fahrrad zu reparieren.
              I   help   3SG.M.DAT.WK his   bike   to repare
              'I help him reparing his bike.'

This means that the forms also correspond to pronominal features. I follow Harley and Ritter (2002) who claim that all pronouns contain the feature REF, because they are referential expressions.[6]

---

[6] To be more precise, the final consonants correspond to the weak pronoun in Modern German. Cardinaletti and Starke (1994) split pronouns in three classes: strong pronouns, weak pronouns and clitics. Following the tests in Cardinaletti and Starke (1994) that distinguish the types from each other, the pronouns in (4) are neither strong pronouns nor clitics, and therefore, should be classified as weak pronouns.

First, *n* and *m* are not strong pronouns because of how they behave under coordination and under focus. Strong pronouns can be coordinated. *n* and *m* cannot be coordinated, as shown in (i).

(i)   a.   *Ich wollte   Jan und n   gestern   schon   anrufen.
              I   wanted Jan and 3SG.M.ACC.WK yesterday already call
              'I already wanted to call Jan and him yesterday.'
       b.   *Ich helfe   Jan und m   sein Fahrrad zu reparieren.
              I   help   Jan and 3SG.M.ACC.WK his   bike   to repare
              'I help Jan and him repairing his bike.'

Strong pronouns can be focused, whereas *n* and *m* cannot be focused.

Second, the consonants are not clitics because clitics cannot combine with prepositions, but *n* and *m* can, as shown in (ii).

(ii)   a.   Ich bin schnell auf n   zu gelaufen.
              I   am fast   on 3SG.M.ACC.WK to walked
              'I walked toward him fast.'
       b.   Ich war   mit   m im Wald wandern.
              I   have already a gift for   3SG.M.DAT.WK bought
              'I was hiking with him in the woods.'

Clitics can either follow a dative object or precede it. Strong and weak pronouns can only follow it. *n* and

I give the lexical entries for *n* and *m* in (5). The *n* is the accusative animate singular, so it spells out the features REF, CL, AN, IND, F1 and F2. The *m* is the dative animate singular, so it spells out the features that the *n* spells out plus F3.

(5) a. ACCP ⟺ *n*

```
        ACCP ⟺ n
        /    \
      F2     NOMP
             /   \
           F1    INDP
                 /   \
               IND   ANP
                     /   \
                   AN    CLP
                         /   \
                       CL    REF
```

b. DATP ⟺ *m*

```
        DATP ⟺ m
        /    \
      F3     ACCP
             /   \
           F2    NOMP
                 /   \
               F1    INDP
                     /   \
                   IND   ANP
                         /   \
                       AN    CLP
                             /   \
                           CL    REF
```
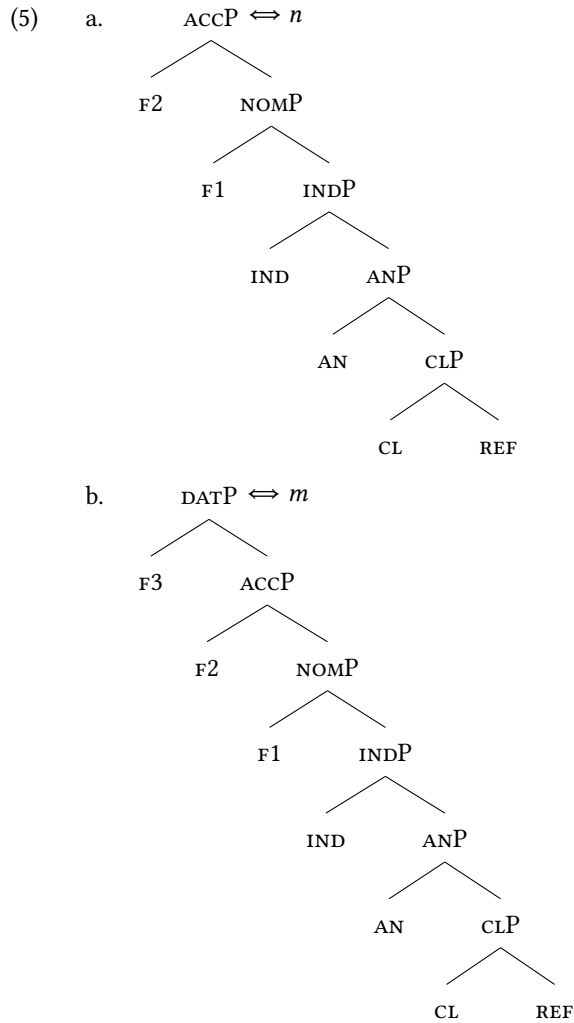
Note that the ordering of the features here is not random. I motivate the ordering in Section 6.2.

I continue with the morpheme *we*. This morpheme corresponds to what I called the REL-feature in Chapter 5 and in the introduction to this chapter. I argue that

---

m can only follow a dative object.

Since *n* and *m* are not strong pronouns and not clitics, they are weak pronouns. Therefore, I propose that actually two pronominal features are present: REF and Σ. The feature Σ is present because the consonants are weak pronouns (Cardinaletti and Starke, 1994). I assume that clitics lack the features REF (which corresponds to the LP in Cardinaletti and Starke 1994: 61) and the feature Σ. Strong pronouns have, in addition to REF and Σ, another feature (C in terms of Cardinaletti and Starke 1994: 61).

this morpheme actually spells out the operator features WH and REL and number and gender features.

Consider Table 6.4 and Table 6.5, repeated from Table 6.2.

Table 6.4: Modern German demonstrative pronouns (Durrell 2011: 5.4.1)

	M	N	F	PL
NOM	de-r	da-s	die	die
ACC	de-n	da-s	die	die
DAT	de-m	de-m	de-r	de-n

Table 6.5: Modern German relative pronouns (Durrell 2011: 5.3.3)

	AN	INAN
NOM	we-r	wa-s
ACC	we-n	wa-s
DAT	we-m	-

The morpheme *we* combines with the same endings as the morpheme *de* does in demonstrative pronouns (or relative pronouns in headed relatives).[7] This identifies the *de* and, more importantly for the discussion here, the *we* as a separate morpheme.[8,9]

---

[7]Note that WH-pronouns, unlike the demonstratives, do not have feminine and plural forms. As far as I know, this holds for all relative pronouns in languages of the internal-only type (cf. also for Finnish, even though it makes a lot of morphological distinctions) and of the matching type. Relative pronouns in languages of the unrestricted type do inflect for feminine and plural, as well as always-external languages.

[8]It is also possible to analyze *we* as two separate morphemes: *w* and *e*. This further decomposition would not make a difference for the analysis I propose here. What is crucial is that phi and case features correspond to a single morpheme and the other part has its own morpheme or morphemes.

[9]I actually think that *we* also spells out deixis features. In relative pronouns it does not express spatial deixis, but discourse deixis: it establishes a relation with an antecedent. Generally, three types of deixis are distinguished: proximal, medial and distal. I argue that *e* in the relative pronoun corresponds to the medial. Generally speaking, WH-pronouns combine with the medial or the distal. English has morphological evidence for this claim. Demonstratives in English can combine with either the proximal or this medial/distal, as shown in (i).

(i)   a.   this
              DEM.PROX

        b.   that
              DEM.MED/DIST

I start with discussing the operator features WH and REL. WH is a feature that WH-pronouns, such as WH-relative pronouns and interrogatives, share. The feature triggers the construction of a set of alternatives in the sense of Rooth (1985, 1992) (Hachem, 2015). This contrasts with the D in Table 6.4, which is responsible for establishing a definite reference. The feature REL is present to establish a relation.

I continue with the last two features that are spelled out by *we*, namely the number feature IND and the gender feature AN. Consider again Table 6.5. In the different genders, not only the final consonants differ, but also the vowel. This suggests that *we* also realizes gender features.[10]

WH-pronouns combine with the medial/distal and are ungrammatical when combined with the proximal, shown in (ii).

(ii)   a.   *whis
            WH.PROX

       b.   what
            WH.MED/DIST

The use of the medial in WH-pronouns can be understood conceptually if one connects spatial deixis to discourse deixis (cf. Colasanti and Wiltschko, 2019). The proximal is spatially near the speaker, and it refers to knowledge that the speaker possesses. The medial is spatially near the hearer, and it refers to knowledge that the hearer possesses. The distal is spatially away from the speaker and the hearer, and refers to knowledge that neither of them possess. In WH-pronouns, the speaker is not aware of the knowledge, so the use of the proximal is excluded. Since I do not have explicit evidence for the presence of the distal, I assume that it is the medial that combines with the WH-pronoun.

I adopt the features for deixis distinguished by Lander and Haegeman (2018). The feature DX_1 corresponds to the proximal, the features DX_1 and DX_2 correspond to the medial, and the features DX_1, DX_2 and DX_3 correspond to the distal. The difference between the proximal, the medial and the distal cannot be observed in Modern German, because it is syncretic all of them (Lander and Haegeman 2018: 387), see Table 6.4.

I leave the deixis features out of the discussion and the lexical entries because they are not relevant for the analysis.

[10] An alternative to this analysis is to let *wer* correspond two lexical entries of which the phonological part look as in (i).

(i)   a.   /*w*/ + CV
       b.   /*er*/ + C

Under this analysis, the final consonant has the vowel *e* in its lexical entry (as shown in (ib)), but it does not have a phonological slot for a vowel (i.e. no C). When the lexical entry is present without the lexical entry in (ia), the vowel *e* does not surface, because there is only a slot for a consonant. Only when the lexical entry combines with a lexical entry that does have a slot for a vowel (such as (i)), the vowel *e* gets to surface.

A theoretical advantage of this analysis is that there is no need to specify a *da* and a *de* and a *wa* and a *we* for the different genders in the lexicon. The vowel is part of the lexical entry that belongs to the final consonant and it gets to surface because of the vowel slot that the *w* or *d* introduces.

An empirical advantage of this analysis concerns the vowel *e*. The dative forms in all gender and numbers have the *e*, which I assigned to masculine gender. This holds for the genitive forms too, which I

I end with discussing the feature IND. I derive its presence from the fact that WH-pronouns in Modern German can only show singular verbal agreement and no plural agreement. Consider the examples in (6).

(6)   a.   Wer mach-t das?
             who do-3SG that
             'Who is/are doing that?'
       b.   *Wer mach-en das?
             who do-3PL that
             intended: 'Who are doing that?'

In (6a), the verb *macht* appears in third person singular. It agrees with the WH-pronoun *wer* 'who'. This question can be interpreted as referring to a single referent or multiple, as indicated by the translation. The sentence in (6b), in which the verb *machen* has third person plural agreement, is ungrammatical.

In sum, the morpheme *we* corresponds to the features WH, REL, IND and AN as shown in (7).

(7)
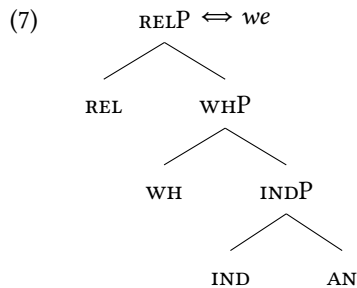
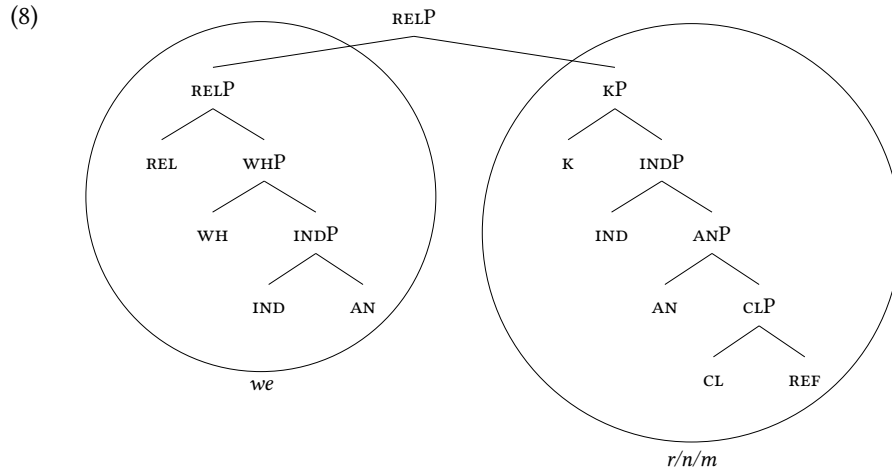At this point, I gave lexical entries for each of the morphemes that the relative pro-

---

have not given here. If *we* is not specified for gender (but maybe still for number) and the vowel belongs to the final consonant, it can be inserted for non-masculines too.

The strong masculine singular pronoun in nominative in Modern German is *er*. It seems it can be spelled out by the lexical entry in (ib) and another lexical entry that just introduces a slot for a vowel. This is not the case for the same pronoun in accusative and dative case: then the additional lexical entry seems to be a slot for a vowel that has already been filled with in /i/ (for *ihn* and *ihm*). For the nominative and accusative neuter singular pronoun, the slot is filled with an /ɛ/ (for *es*). I leave it for future research to investigate how this difference should be modeled. An observation that might be relevant in doing that is that in the paradigm of the possessives (*mein*) there are three cells that do not take an ending: the masculine singular nominative and the neuter singular nominative and accusative.

Notice also that the feminine singular and the plurals do not have a weak pronoun and they do not have a marker in forms like *diese* 'this' (see Table 6.3). This could be because their lexical entries also contain only a slot for a consonant, and their phonology only consists of vowels, so the content of the lexical entry only appears when it is combined with a morpheme that introduces a slot for a vowel.

As this matter is not relevant for the core of my analysis, I put it aside for now. For ease of exposition I simply assign a phonological exponent to each lexical entry and I do not make further distinctions in C and V slots.

noun consists of (in (5a), (5b) and (7)), and I showed what the relative pronoun as a whole looks like. I repeat it from (2) in (8).

(8)

```
                          RELP
              RELP                      KP
         REL      WHP              K        INDP
              WH      INDP              IND      ANP
                   IND     AN                 AN     CLP
                                                  CL     REF
              we                              r/n/m
```

What is still needed, is a theory for combining the morphemes into relative pronouns. This theory should determine which morphemes should be combined with each other in which order. Ultimately, the result needs to be the internal syntax in (8). Ideally, the theory that derives this is not language-specific, but the same for all languages. In what follows I show how this is accomplished in Nanosyntax. Readers who are not interested in the precise mechanics can proceed directly to Section 6.3.

6.2 Combining morphemes in Nanosyntax

The way Nanosyntax combines different morphemes is not by glueing them together directly from the lexicon. Instead, features are merged one by one using two components that drive the derivation. These two components are (1) a functional sequence, in which the features that need to be merged are specified including the order they are merged in, and (2) the Spellout Algorithm, which describes the spellout procedure. The lexical entries that are available within a language interact with the derivation in such a way that the morphemes get combined in the right way. Note that the functional sequence and the Spellout Algorithm are stable across languages. The only difference between languages lies in their lexical entries.

(9) shows the functional sequence for relative pronouns. It gives all features it contains and their hierarchical ordering.

(9)   KP
           /   \
          K   RELP
               /   \
             REL   WHP
                   /   \
                  WH   INDP
                       /   \
                     IND   ANP
                           /   \
                          AN   CLP
                               /   \
                              CL   REF
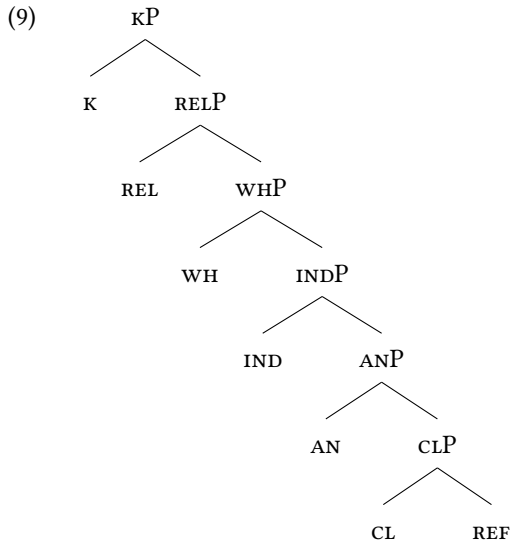
Starting from the bottom, these are pronominal feature REF, gender features CL and AN, a number feature IND, operator features WH and REL and case features K.

This order is motivated as follows. Pronominal features (REF) are the nominal part of the structure and therefore the bottom-most feature. Both Picallo (2008) and Kramer (2016) argue that number (IND) is hierarchically higher than gender (CL and AN). Case (K) is agreed to be higher than number (IND) (cf. Bittner and Hale, 1996).

For the position of the operator features (WH and REL) consider (10).

(10)   a.   of the children
         b.   of which children

The linear order in (10a) reflects the hierarchical ordering of K > D > N. *Of* is namely an instance of K, *the* is an instance of D, and *child* is an instance of N. (10b) shows that the order is the same if the definite is substituted by the WH-word *which*, suggesting that the operator features are also positioned between K and N. Notice also that the plural morpheme *-ren* appears more to the right, hence lower in the structure, than the operator features. Finally, I assume that the feature REL is hierarchy higher than WH.

Before I construct the relative pronouns, I explain how the spellout procedure in Nanosyntax works. Features (Fs) are merged one by one according to the functional sequence, starting from the bottom. After each instance of merge, the constructed phrase must be spelled out, as stated in (11).

(11)   **Cyclic phrasal spellout** (Caha, 2020a)
         Spellout must successfuly apply to the output of every Merge F operation.
         After successful spellout, the derivation may terminate, or proceed to an-
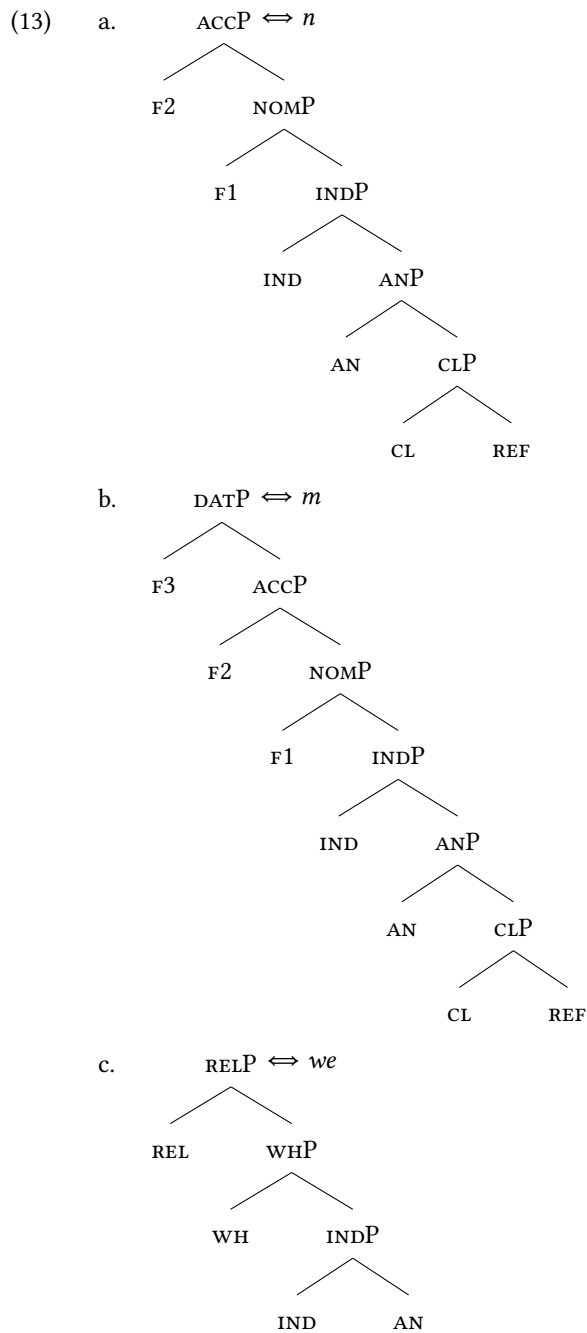
other round of Merge F.

Spellout is successful when the phrase that contains the newly merged feature forms a constituent in a lexical tree that is part of the language's lexicon. When the new feature is merged, it forms a phrase with all features merged so far. If this created phrase cannot be spelled out successfuly (i.e. when it does not form a constituent in a lexical tree), there are two movement operations possible that modify the syntactic structure in such a way that the newly merged feature becomes part of a different syntactic structure. These movements are triggered because spellout needs to successully apply. Therefore, they are called spellout-driven movements. A Spellout Algorithm specifies which movement operations apply and in which order this happens. I give it in (12).

(12) **Spellout Algorithm** (as in Caha 2020a, based on Starke 2018)

    a.   Merge F and spell out.

    b.   If (a) fails, move the Spec of the complement and spell out.

    c.   If (b) fails, move the complement of F and spell out.

I informally reformulate what is in (12), starting with the first line in (12a). This says that a feature F is merged, and we try to spell out the newly created phrase FP. When the spellout in (12a) fails (i.e. when there is no match in the lexicon), we continue to the next two lines, (12b) and (12c), which describe the two types of rescue movements that can take place then. In the discussion about Modern German, only the first line leads to successful spellout. In the next chapter in which I discuss Polish derivations, the second and third line also lead to successful spellouts. I give the full algorithm here to give the complete picture from the start.

    If these two movement operations still do not lead to a successful spellout, there are two more derivational options possible: Backtracking and Spec Formation. I return to these options later in this section, when they are relevant in the derivation of Modern German relative pronouns.

    With this background in place, I start constructing the accusative relative pronoun. I repeat the available lexical entries in (13).

(13)   a.

```
            ACCP ⟺ n
           /    \
         F2     NOMP
               /    \
             F1     INDP
                   /    \
                 IND    ANP
                       /   \
                     AN    CLP
                          /   \
                        CL    REF
```

b.

```
            DATP ⟺ m
           /    \
         F3     ACCP
               /    \
             F2     NOMP
                   /    \
                 F1     INDP
                       /    \
                     IND    ANP
                           /   \
                         AN    CLP
                              /   \
                            CL    REF
```

c.

```
            RELP ⟺ we
           /    \
         REL    WHP
               /    \
             WH     INDP
                   /    \
                 IND    AN
```

Starting from the bottom of the functional sequence, the first two features that are merged at REF and CL, creating a CLP.

(14)

```
        CLP
       /   \
     CL    REF
```
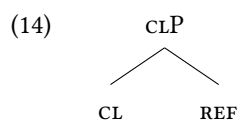
The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (13a). Therefore, the CLP is spelled out as *n*, as shown in (15).

(15)

```
        CLP
        /\
      CL   REF
```
n
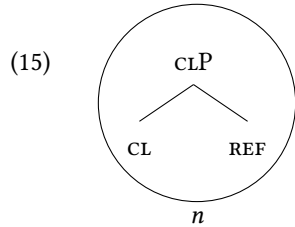
As usual, I mark this by circling the part of the structure that corresponds to the lexical entry, and placing the corresponding phonology below it. This spellout option corresponds to (12a) in the Spellout Algorithm.

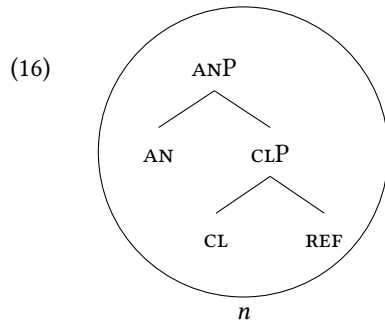There are more features in the functional sequence, so the next feature is merged. This next feature is the feature AN, and a ANP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (13a). Therefore, the ANP is spelled out as *n*, shown in (16).

(16)

```
         ANP
         /\
       AN   CLP
            /\
          CL   REF
```
n

The next feature is the feature IND, and a INDP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (13a). Therefore, the INDP is spelled out as *n*, shown in (17).

(17)

```
          INDP
          /\
        IND   ANP
              /\
            AN   CLP
                 /\
               CL   REF
```
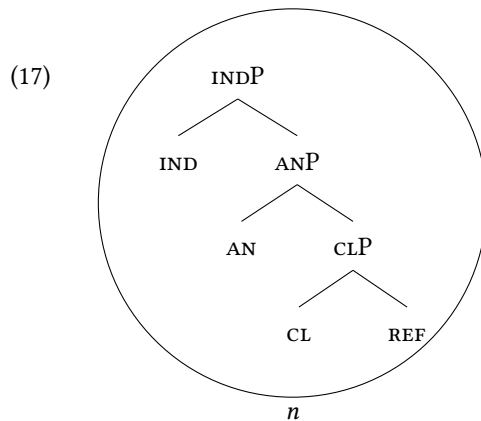*n*

The next feature in the functional sequence is the feature wh. This feature cannot be spelled out as the other ones before, which I show in what follows. The feature wh is merged, and a whP is created, as shown in (18).

(18)

```
              WHP
             /    \
           WH     INDP
                 /    \
               IND    ANP
                      /   \
                    AN    CLP
                         /   \
                       CL     REF
```
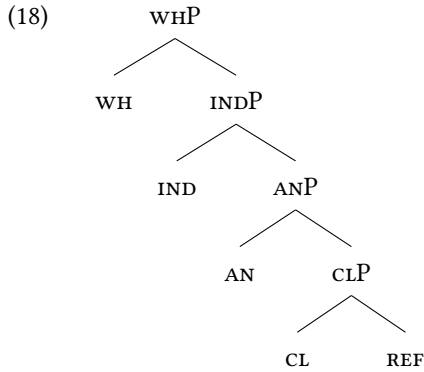
This syntactic structure does not form a constituent in the lexical tree in (13a). It namely contains the feature wh, which (5a) does not contain. There is also no other lexical tree that contains the structure in (18) as a constituent. Therefore, there is no successful spellout for the syntactic structure in the derivational step in which the structure is spelled out as a single phrase ((12a) in the Spellout Algorithm).

The first movement option in the Spellout Algorithm is moving the specifier, as described in (12b). As there is no specifier in this structure, the first movement option is irrelevant. The second movement option in the Spellout Algorithm is moving the complement, as described in (12c). In this case, the complement of wh, the indP, is moved to the specifier of indP. As this movement option does not lead to a successful match, I do not show it here. I come back to it in Chapter 7, in which it does lead to a successful match.

As I mentioned earlier, there are two more derivational options possible: Backtracking and Spec Formation. Derivationally, Backtracking comes first. However, since this does not lead to a successful spellout here I first introduce Spec Formation and I return to Backtracking later. Spec Formation is a last resort operation, when the feature cannot be spelled out by any of the preceding options. It is formalized as in (19).

(19)   **Spec Formation** (Starke, 2018):
        If Merge F has failed to spell out (even after Backtracking), try to spawn
        a new derivation providing F and merge that with the current derivation,
        projecting F to the top node.

I reformulate this informally: if none of the preceding spellout options lead to a successful spellout, a last resort operation applies. The feature that has not been spelled out yet, is merged with some other features (to which I shortly come back) in a

separate workspace. Crucially, the phrase that is created is contained in a lexical tree in the language's lexicon. Finally, the feature is spelled out successfully. The newly created phrase (the spec) is merged as a whole with the already existing structure.

Now I come back to the 'other' features that the feature is merged with to create a phrase that can be spelled out. This cannot be just any feature. What is crucial here again is the functional sequence. The newly merged feature is merged with features that precede it in this sequence.[11] This can be a single feature or multiples ones. I illustrate this with the Modern German relative pronouns.

For the feature WH it means that it is merged with the feature IND. Then, the lexicon is checked for a lexical tree that contains the phrase WHP that contains WH and IND, as shown in (20).
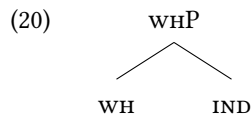
(20)   whP
         /   \
       WH   IND

This syntactic structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon. Therefore, the feature WH combines not only with the feature merged before it, but with a phrase that consists of the two features merged before it: IND and AN. I give the phrase this gives in (21).

(21)   whP
         /   \
       WH   INDP
             /   \
           IND   AN
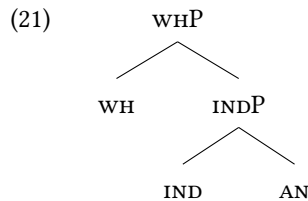
This syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (13c). Therefore, the WHP is spelled out as *we*, as shown in (22).

---

[11]There are three different proposals on Spec Formation. Caha (2019) argue that there can only be a single feature overlap between the two phrases. De Clercq and Vanden Wyngaerd (2018) argue that there cannot be any overlap at all. The features that used in the second workspace are removed from the structure in the main workspace. In this dissertation, I work with the proposal in Starke (2018), in which the the overlap between the phrase on the left and the phrase on the right can also be more than a single feature. This is the only proposal of the three that allows me to derive all the forms I encounter.

(22)

```
              WHP
             /    \
           WH     INDP
                 /    \
               IND     AN
                  we
```
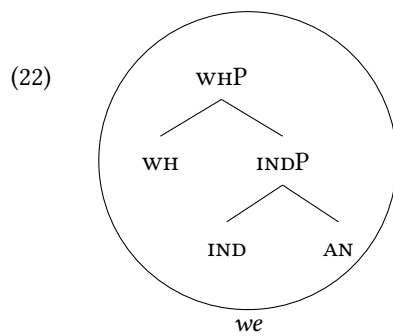
The newly created phrase is merged as a whole with the already existing structure. As specified in (19), the feature WH projects to the top node. I show the results in (23).

(23)

```
                            WHP
                           /
              WHP                        INDP
             /    \                     /    \
           WH     INDP              IND      ANP
                 /    \                     /    \
               IND     AN                 AN     CLP
                  we                            /    \
                                             CL      REF
                                                n
```
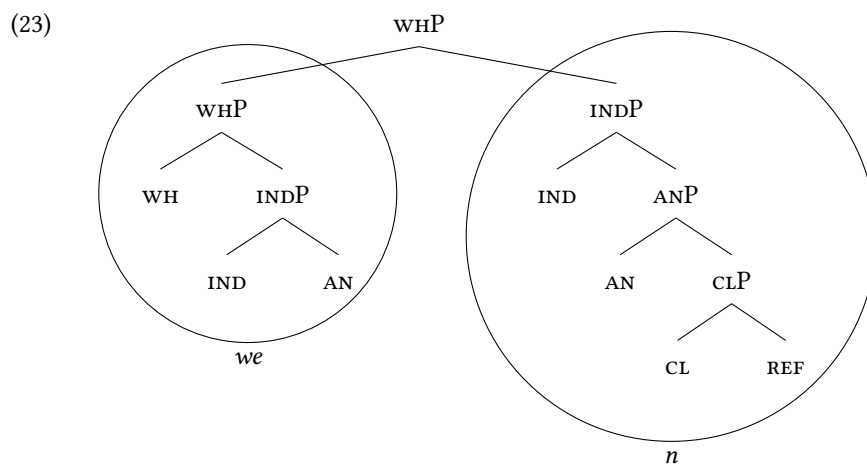
Notice here that there is an overlap of multiple features between the phrase on the right and the phrase on the left.

The next feature in the functional sequence is the feature REL. As always, it is merged to the existing syntactic structure, which is now the WHP. The result is the RELP shown in (24).

(24)
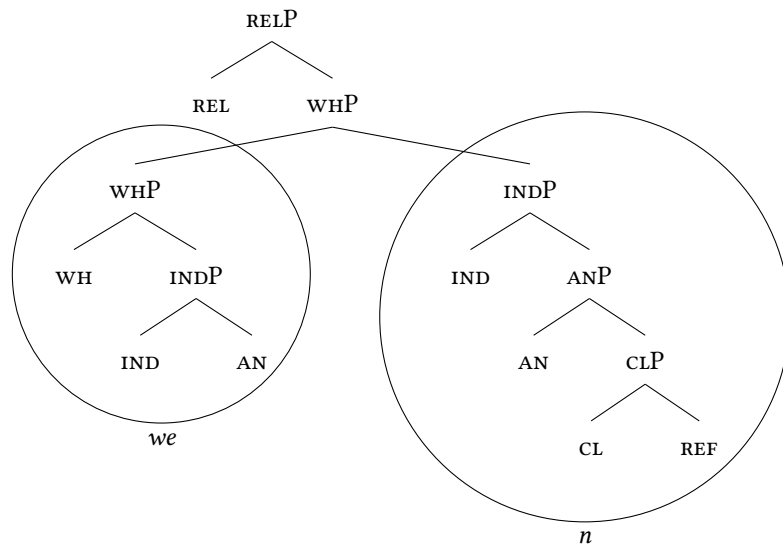
This whole structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon. Neither of the spellout driven movement operations leads to a successful spellout. This means that, once again, the derivation reaches a point at which one of the two other possible derivational options come into play. As I mentioned before, Backtracking comes first, and this is the operation that leads to a successful spellout here.

Consider the syntactic structure in (24) again. The feature REL is merged with the highest WHP. In this position it cannot be spelled out. Consider now the lexical entry in (13c). This is a lexical tree that contains REL. This means that the feature REL somehow needs to end up in the Spec that has just been merged. I follow Caha (2019) who proposes that this happens via Backtracking. He argues that the main idea of Backtracking is that a feature is merged with a different tree than the one it was merged with before, as stated in (25).[12]

(25)   **The logic of backtracking** (Caha 2019: 198)
        When spellout of F fails, go back to the previous cycle, and provide a different configuration for Merge F.

Imagine a situation in which the previous feature was spelled out with a complex specifier and the next feature reaches the derivational option Backtracking. This is exactly the situation that arises after REL is merged. Providing a different configuration means splitting up the two phrases, and then merging the feature again.

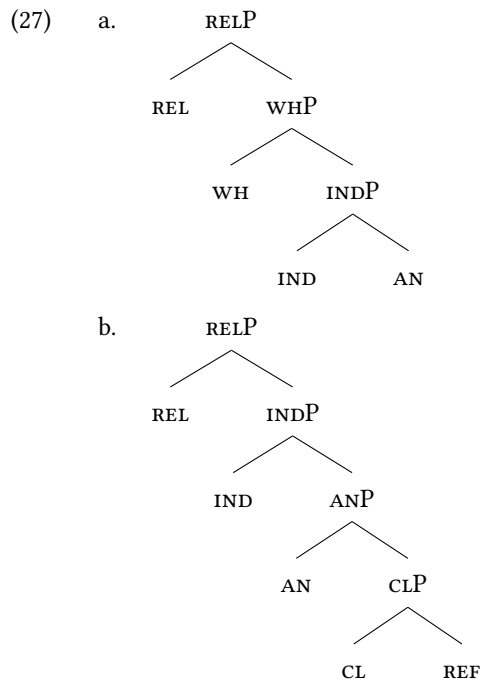[12]In this dissertation I do not discuss the effect that Backtracking 'normally' has, namely to try a different spellout option at the previous cycle. That does not mean that I assume it is not part of the derivation: I actually assume it a step that is attempted. I refrain from mentioning it, because this does not lead to a successful spellout in any of the derivations I discuss.

Specifically, I adopt the proposal in which the feature is merged in both workspaces, as stated in (26).

(26)   **Multiple Merge** (Caha 2019: 227)
         When backtracking reopens multiple workspaces, merge F in each such workspace.

For the example under discussion, the situation looks as in (27).

(27)   a.

```
              RELP
             /    \
          REL     WHP
                 /    \
               WH     INDP
                      /    \
                    IND     AN
```

        b.

```
              RELP
             /    \
          REL     INDP
                 /    \
               IND     ANP
                      /    \
                    AN      CLP
                           /    \
                         CL      REF
```

The feature REL is merged in both workspaces, so it combines with the RELP in (27a) and with the INDP in (27b). From here on, the derivation proceeds, as usual, according to the Spellout Algorithm, with the only difference that it happens in two workspaces simultaneously. Spellout has to be successful in at least one of the two workspaces.

In the case of (27), the spellout of REL is successful in the syntactic structure in (27a). This syntactic structure namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (13c), which corresponds to the *we*. As spellout has succeeded, the workspaces can be merged back together. The result is shown in (28).

(28)
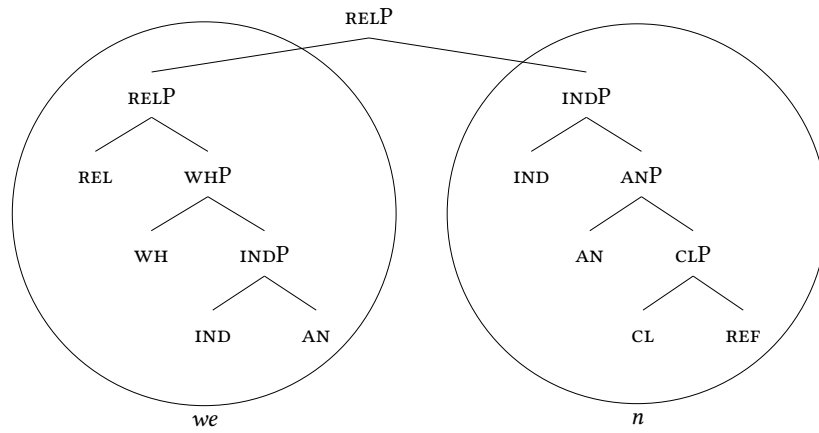
RELP

RELP

REL WHP

WH INDP

IND AN

we

INDP

IND ANP

AN CLP

CL REF

n

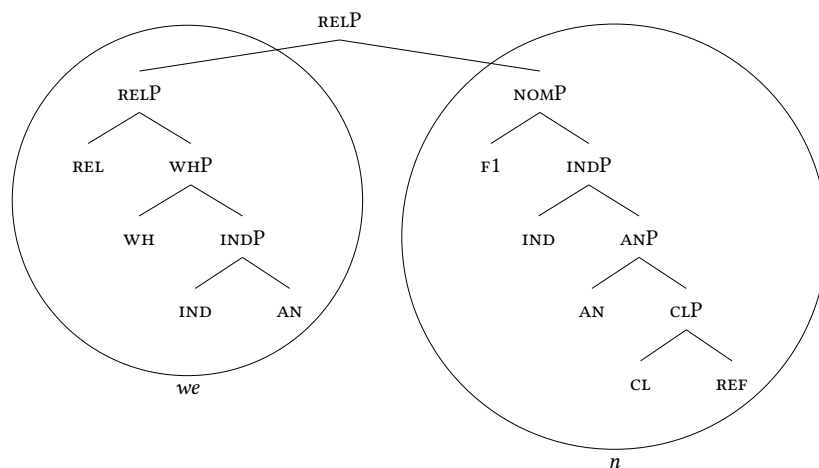The next feature in the functional sequence is F1. This feature should somehow end up merging with INDP, because it forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (13a), which corresponds to *n*. This can again be achieved via Backtracking in which phrases are split up. I go through the derivation step by step.

The feature F1 is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a NOMP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the RELP from the INDP. The feature F1 is merged in both workspaces, so with the RELP and and with the INDP. The spellout of F1 is successful when it is combined with the INDP. It namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (13a), which corresponds to the *n*. The NOMP is spelled out as *n*, and all constituents are merged back into the existing syntactic structure, as shown in (29).

(29)

RELP

RELP

REL WHP

WH INDP

IND AN

we

NOMP

F1 INDP

IND ANP

AN CLP

CL REF

n

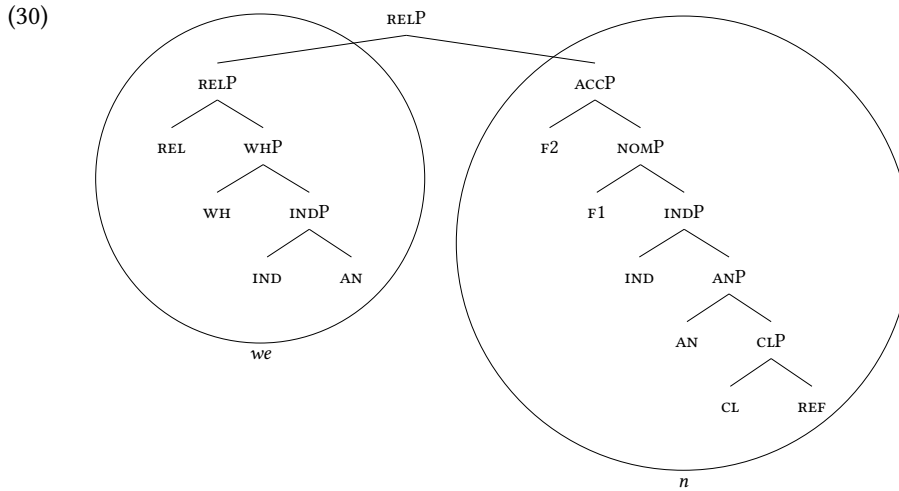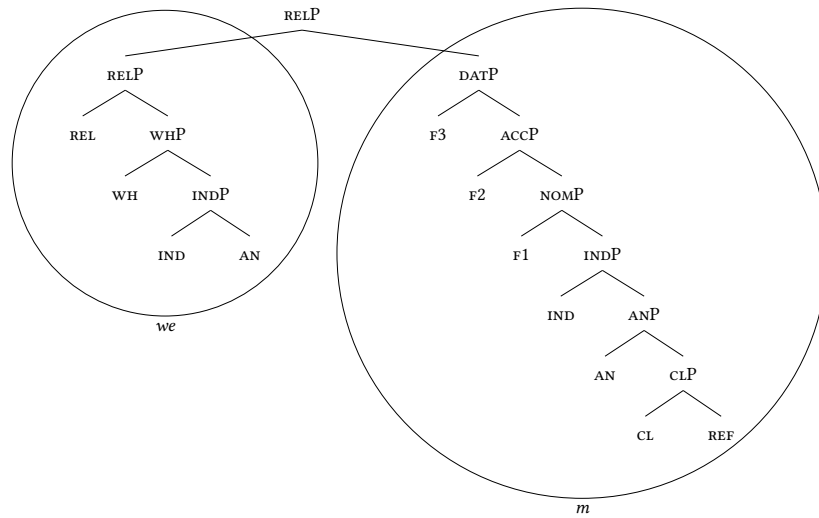For the accusative relative pronoun, the last feature is merged: the F2. The derivation for F2 resembles the derivation of F1. The feature is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a ACCP. This structure does not form a constituent in

any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the RELP from the NOMP. The feature F2 is merged in both workspaces, so with the RELP and and with the NOMP. The spellout of F2 is successful when it is combined with the NOMP. It namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (13a), which corresponds to the *n*. The ACCP is spelled out as *n*, and all constituents are merged back into the existing syntactic structure, as shown in (30).

(30)

For the dative relative pronoun, one more feature is merged: the F3. The derivation for F3 resembles the derivation of F1 and F2. The feature is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a DATP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the RELP from the ACCP. The feature F3 is merged in both workspaces, so with the RELP and and with the ACCP. The spellout of F3 is successful when it is combined with the ACCP. It namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (13b). The DATP is spelled out as *m*, and all constituents are merged back into the existing syntactic structure, as shown in (31).

(31)

RELP
RELP — DATP
REL — WHP
WH — INDP
IND — AN
we

DATP
F3 — ACCP
F2 — NOMP
F1 — INDP
IND — ANP
AN — CLP
CL — REF
m

To summarize, I decomposed the relative pronoun into the two morphemes: *we* and the final consonant (*n* and *m*). I showed which features each of the morphemes spells out and what the internal syntax looks like that they are combined into. It is this internal syntax that determines whether the light head can be deleted or not.

6.3 The Modern German (extra) light head

I have suggested that headless relatives are derived from light-headed relatives. The light head or the relative pronoun can be deleted when either of them is structurally contained in the other one. In the introduction of this chapter, I claimed that the internal syntax of light heads in Modern German looks as shown in (32).

(32)
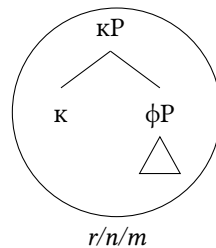
κP
κ — φP
r/n/m

In Chapter 5, I suggested that languages have two possible light heads. Headless relatives in Modern German can only be derived from light-headed relatives that are headed by the light head that consists of the two features φ and κ. In this section, I determine the exact feature content of the light head. I end up claiming that the phi and case feature portmanteau of the relative pronoun is the light head in headless relatives. I show the complete structure that I work towards in this section in (33).

(33)

```
              ᴋP
            /    \
          ᴋ       ɪɴᴅP
                 /    \
              ɪɴᴅ      ᴀɴP
                      /    \
                    ᴀɴ      ᴄʟP
                           /    \
                         ᴄʟ      ʀᴇꜰ
```

r/n/m
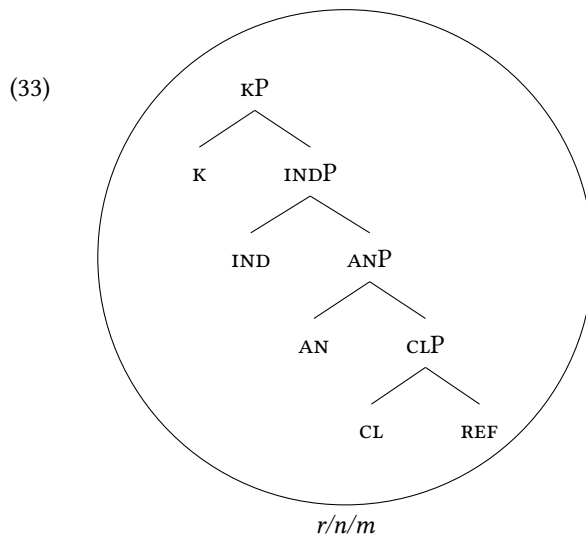
Before I dive into the feature content of the light head, I first need to identify it, as it does not surface in headless relatives. I consider two kinds of light-headed relatives as the potential source of the headless relative. The first possible scenario is that the headless relative is derived from an existing light-headed relative, in which case the deletion of the light head would have to be optional. The second possible scenario is that the headless relative is derived from a light-headed relative that does not surface in Modern German, in which case the deletion of the light head would have to be obligatory. I consider the first scenario first, and I give two arguments against it. Then, to identify the exact input structure, I take the light head from the existing light-headed relative as a point of departure, and I modify it in such a way that it is appropriate as a light head for a headless relative in Modern German.

I give an example of a Modern German light-headed relative in (34).[13]

---

[13]Modern German also has another light-headed relative, in which the relative pronoun is the ᴅ-pronoun. I give an example in (i).

(i)   Jan umarmt den   **den**   **er mag**.
       Jan hugs   ᴅ.ᴍ.ꜱɢ.ᴀᴄᴄ ʀᴘ.ᴍ.ꜱɢ.ᴀᴄᴄ he likes
       'Jan hugs the man that he likes.'

This relative pronoun generally appears in headed relatives, shown in (ii).

(ii)   Jan umarmt den   Mann **den**   **er mag**.
       Jan hugs   ᴅ.ᴍ.ꜱɢ.ᴀᴄᴄ man ʀᴘ.ᴍ.ꜱɢ.ᴀᴄᴄ he likes
       'Jan hugs the man that he likes.'

I directly exclude the possibility that Modern German headless relatives are derived from these light-headed relatives, because they appear with the incorrect relative pronoun.

(34) Jan umarmt den   **wen**   **er mag**.
      Jan hugs   DEM.M.SG.ACC RP.AN.ACC he likes
      'Jan hugs the man that he likes.'

In (34), the relative pronoun is the WH-pronoun *wen* 'RP.AN.ACC', and the light head is
the D-pronoun *den* 'DEM.M.SG.ACC'. For easy reference, I call this light-headed relative
the *den-wen* relative.

One hypothesis is that the demonstrative *den* 'DEM.M.SG.ACC' is deleted from the
light-headed relative in (34) and that the headless relative in (35) remains.[14] For easy
reference, I call this headless relative the *wen* relative.

(35) Jan umarmt **wen**   **er mag**.
      Jan hugs   RP.AN.ACC he likes
      'Jan hugs who he likes.'

I give two arguments against this hypothesis. First, in headless relatives the phrase
auch immer 'ever' can appear, as shown in (36).

(36) Jan unarmt **wen**   **auch immer er mag**.
      Jan hugs   RP.AN.ACC ever   he likes
      'Jan hugs whoever he likes.'

Light-headed relatives do not allow for this phrase to be inserted, illustrated in (37).

(37) *Jan unarmt den   **wen**   **auch immer er mag**.
      Jan hugs   DEM.M.SG.ACC RP.AN.ACC ever   he likes
      'Jan hugs him whoever he likes.'

I assume that headless relatives are not derived from an ungrammatical structure.[15]

The second argument against the *den-wen* relative being the source of the *wen*
relative comes from the interpretation differences between the two. Broadly speak-
ing, the *wen* relative has two interpretations (see Šimík 2020 for a recent elaborate
overview on the semantics of free relatives). The *den-wen* has only one of them. I
show this schematically in Table 6.6.

The first interpretation of the *wen* relative is a definite-like one. This interpreta-
tion corresponds to a definite description. Consider the context which facilitates a
definite-interpretation and the repeated *den-wen* and *wen* relative in (38a).

---

[14]This is exactly what Hanink (2018) argues for. She claims that the feature content of the demonstra-
tive *den* matches the feature content of the relative pronoun *wen*. Therefore, the light head is by default
deleted. Only if the light head carries an extra focus feature it surfaces.

[15]I am aware that such an analysis is common for sluicing.

Table 6.6: Intepretations of *wen* and *den-wen* relatives

	wen	*den-wen*
definite-like	✓	✓
universal-like	✓	*

(38) a. Context: Yesterday Jan met with two friends. He likes one of them. The
          other one he does not like so much.
      b. Jan umarmt den   **wen**   er mag.
          Jan hugs   DEM.M.SG.ACC RP.AN.ACC he likes
          'Jan hugs who he likes.'
      c. Jan umarmt **wen**   er mag.
          Jan hugs   RP.AN.ACC he likes
          'Jan hugs who he likes.'

A definite-like interpretation is one in which Jan hugs the person that he likes. The
interpretation is available for the *wen* relative and for the *den-wen* relative.

The second interpretation of the *wen* relative is a universal-like one. This inter-
pretation corresponds to a universal quantifier. Consider the context which facili-
tates a universal-interpretation and the repeated *den-wen* and *wen* relative in (39a).

(39) a. Jan has a general habit of hugging everybody that he likes.
      b. #Jan umarmt den   **wen**   er mag.
          Jan hugs   DEM.M.SG.ACC RP.AN.ACC he likes
          'Jan hugs who he likes.'
      c. Jan umarmt **wen**   er mag.
          Jan hugs   RP.AN.ACC he likes
          'Jan hugs who he likes.'

A universal-like interpretation is one in which Jan hugs everybody that he likes. This
interpretation is available for the *wen* relative, but not for the *den-wen* relative.

There are some indications that the universal-like interpretation of headless rel-
atives is the main interpretation that should be accounted for. First, informants have
reported to me that headless relatives with case mismatches become more accept-
able in the universal-like interpretation compared to the definite-like interpretation.
Second, Šimík (2020: 4) notes that some languages do not easily allow for the definite-
like interpretation of headless relatives with an *ever*-morpheme. There is no language
documented that does not allow for the universal-like interpretation, but does allow
the definite-like interpretation.

In sum, there are two arguments against the *den-wen* relative being the source of

the *wen* relative. In what follows, I show how the presence of *den* leads to having only the definite-like interpretation. I suggest that the problem lies in the feature content of the demonstrative. I point out how the feature content should be modified such that it is a suitable light head for a headless relative.

The light head in the *den-wen* relative is a demonstrative. A demonstrative refers back to a linguistic or extra-linguistic antecedent. Consider the context in (38a) again. The demonstrative *den* in the *den-wen* relative refers back to the friend of Jan that he likes, and the construction is grammatical. Now consider the context in (39a) again. In this case, there is no antecedent for the demonstrative *den* to refer back to, and the structure is infelicitous.

I decompose demonstrative *den* into different morphemes to investigate what it is about the demonstrative that forces the definite-like interpretation. The demonstrative consists (at least) of the two morphemes *de* and *n*. One of these morphemes is identical to the wh-relative pronoun: the *n*, which spells out pronominal, number, gender and case features. The other morpheme differs: the *de*, which establishes a definite reference.

So far, I established that the *den-wen* relative cannot be the source from which the headless relative is derived. Still, there must be some light-headed relative that is the source. I propose that the light head in the light-headed relative is even lighter than the head in the *den-wen* relative: it is an extra light head.

I propose that the extra light head is the element that is left once the morpheme *de* is absent. This is the morpheme that is the final consonant of the relative pronoun. I give the extra light-headed relative that the *wen*-relative is derived from in (40). The brackets around the light head indicate that it is obligatorily deleted.[16]

---

[16] The demonstrative and the extra light head I discuss resemble the strong and weak definite in Schwarz (2009), at least morphologically (although my extra light head is always obligatorily deleted). Schwarz's (2009) strong definite is anaphoric in nature, and the weak definite encodes uniqueness. I give an example of a strong definite in (i). The strong definite is *dem* that precedes *Freund* 'friend'. It refers back to the linguistic antecedent *einen Freund* 'a friend'.

(i)   Hans hat heute einen Freund zum   Essen mit nach Hause gebracht. Er hat uns vorher
        Hans has today a   friend to the dinner with to   home brought he has us beforehand

        ein Foto   von dem   Freund gezeigt.
        a   photo of the_{STRONG} friend shown

        'Hans brought a friend home for dinner today. He had shown us a photo of the friend beforehand.'

Weak definites are used when situational uniqueness is involved. This uniqueness can be global or within a restricted domain. I give two examples in (ii). In (iia), the dog is unique in this specific situation of the break-in. In (iib), the moon is unique for us people on the planet.

(ii)   a.   Der Einbrecher ist zum Glück vom   Hund verjagt   worden.
           the burglar   is luckily   by the_{WEAK} dog chased away been

           'Luckily, the burglar was chased away by the dog.'

(40)   Jan umarmt [n]   **wen   er mag**.
        Jan hugs   ELH.AN.ACC RP.AN.ACC he likes
        'Jan hugs who he likes.'

A question that remains open is why the extra light head in (40) cannot surface and
needs to be deleted. I assume this is because of two independent restrictions. The
first one is that headless relatives are always restrictive relative clauses and cannot
be used non-restrictively (cf. (Emonds 1979: 232), (Kayne 1994: 114)).

The second restriction is that restrictive relative clauses cannot surface with a
head that is not definite. Consider the sentence in (41).

(41)   *Fritz ist jetzt im   Haus, das er   sich letztes Jahr gebaut hat.
        Fritz is now in the house that the REFL last   year built   has
        'Fritz is now in the house that he built last year.'
                        (Modern German, Schwarz 2009: 22 after Hartmann 1978: 77)

The head of the relative clause is *m Haus*, and the sentence is ungrammatical. Now
consider the sentence in (42).

(42)   Fritz ist jetzt in dem Haus, das er   sich letztes Jahr gebaut hat.
        Fritz is now in the   house that the REFL last   year built   has
        'Fritz is now in the house that he built last year.'
                        (Modern German, Schwarz 2009: 22 after Hartmann 1978: 77)

Here the head of the relative clause is *dem Haus* and the sentence has become gram-
matical. There seems to be a parallel between the examples in (41) and (42) and the
extra light head (see also footnote 16). The morpheme *m* in *m Haus* could be the
same *m* as the extra light head, only lacking the overt noun. Just as *m Haus*, *m* can-
not surface as the head of the relative clause. However, unlike *m Haus*, *m* is deleted.

In the remainder of this section, I discuss the two extra light heads that I compare
the internal syntax of in Section 6.4. These are the accusative animate and the dative
animate, shown in (43).[17]

_____

        b.   Armstrong flog als erster   zum   Mond.
              Armstrong flew as first one to the_WEAK moon

              'Armstrong was the first one to fly to the moon.'   (Modern German, Schwarz 2009: 40)

The meaning of Schwarz's (2009) strong definite seems similar to the meaning of the demonstrative in
the *den-wen* relative. I do not see right away how the extra light head in headless relatives could encode
uniqueness. One possibility is that the feature content of his and my form differs slightly after all. Another
possibility is that the fact that his form combines with a preposition and an overt nouns leads to a change
in interpretation.

    [17]Again, for reasons of space, I do not discuss the nominative form. I assume its analysis is identical
to the one I propose for the accusative and the dative.

(43)   a.   n
            ELH.AN.ACC

       b.   m
            ELH.AN.DAT

As I noted before, these forms do not surface as light heads in a light-headed relative. They do surface as pronouns in the language.

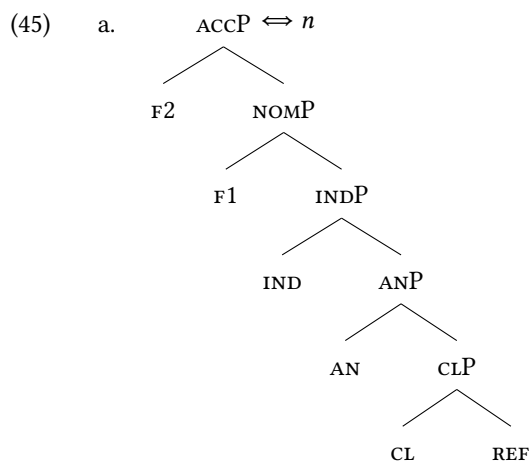In Chapter 5, I suggested that the relative pronoun contains at least one feature more than the extra light head. In my proposal, it is actually two features, namely WH and REL. This leaves the functional sequence for the extra light head as shown in (44).

(44)

```
              KP
             /  \
            K    INDP
                /   \
              IND    ANP
                    /   \
                  AN    CLP
                       /   \
                     CL     REF
```
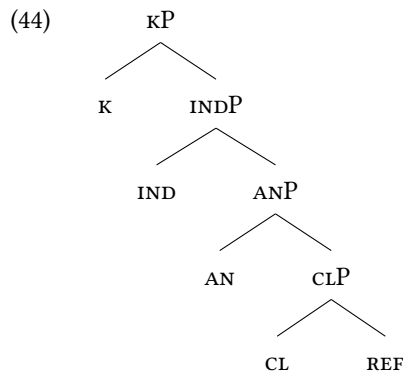
It contains the pronominal feature REF, the gender features CL and AN, the number feature IND and case features K.

I introduced the lexical entries that are required to spell out these features in Section 6.1. I repeat them in (45).

(45)   a.

```
        ACCP  ⟺  n
       /    \
     F2     NOMP
           /    \
          F1    INDP
               /    \
             IND    ANP
                   /   \
                 AN    CLP
                      /   \
                    CL    REF
```

b.   DATP ⟺ *m*
         ╱ ╲
      F3   ACCP
            ╱ ╲
         F2   NOMP
               ╱ ╲
            F1   INDP
                  ╱ ╲
               IND   ANP
                      ╱ ╲
                   AN   CLP
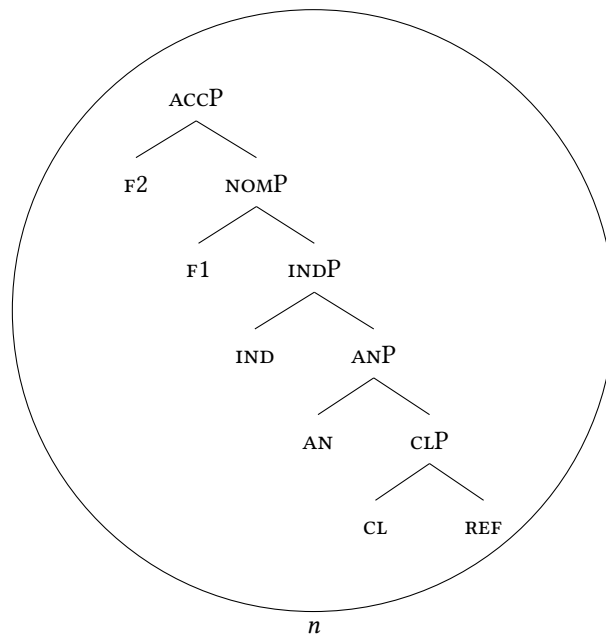   ╱ ╲
                      CL   REF
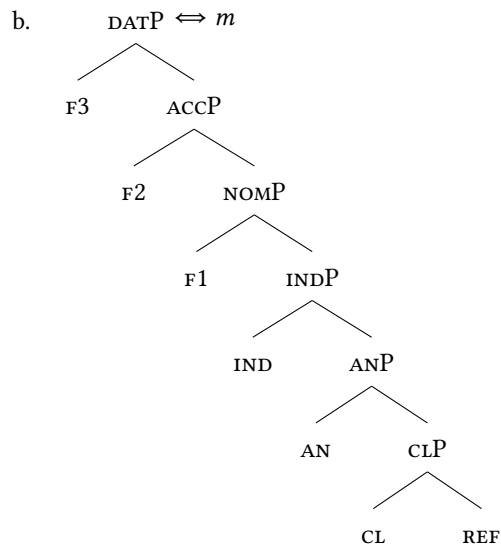
The derivations of the extra light heads are straight-forward ones. The features are merged one by one, and after each new phrase is created, it is spelled out as a whole. I still go through them step by step.

First, the features REF and CL are merged, and the CLP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (45a). Therefore, the CLP is spelled out as *n*. Exactly the same happens for the features AN, IND and F1. They are merged, they form a constituent in the lexical tree in (45a), and they are spelled out as *n*.
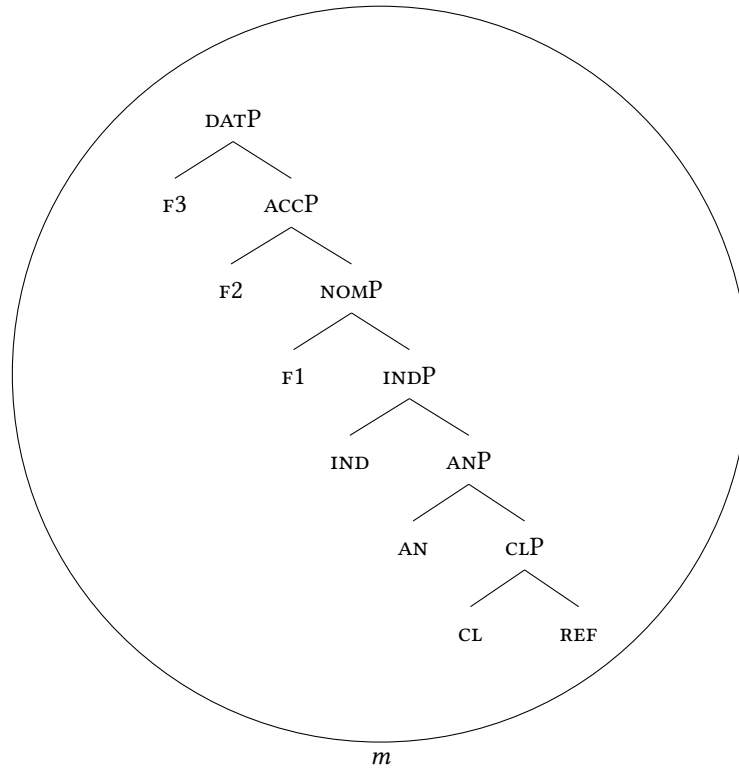
The last feature that is merged for the accusative extra light head is the F2. It is merged, and the ACCP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (45a). Therefore, the ACCP is spelled out as *n*, as shown in (46).

(46)

```
              ACCP
             /    \
           F2     NOMP
                 /    \
               F1     INDP
                     /    \
                  IND     ANP
                         /    \
                       AN     CLP
                             /    \
                           CL     REF
```

n

For the dative extra light head another feature is merged: the F3. The feature F3 is merged, and the DATP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (45b). Therefore, the DATP is spelled out as *m*, as shown in (47).

(47)

```
               DATP
              /    \
            F3     ACCP
                  /    \
                F2     NOMP
                      /    \
                    F1     INDP
                          /    \
                       IND     ANP
                              /    \
                            AN     CLP
                                  /    \
                                CL     REF
```

m

In sum, Modern German headless relatives are derived from a light-headed relative with an extra light head. This extra light head is spelled out by a single phi and case feature portmanteau. The lexical entries used to spell this light head out are also used to spell out part of the internal syntax of the relative pronoun.

6.4   Comparing light heads and relative pronouns

In this section, I compare the internal syntax of extra light heads to the internal syntax of relative pronouns in Modern German. This is the worked out version of the comparisons in Section 5.2.1. What is different here is that I show the comparison for Modern German specifically, and that the content of the internal syntax that is being compared is motivated earlier in this chapter.

I give three examples, in which the internal and external case vary. I start with an example with matching cases, in which the internal and the external case are both accusative. Then I give an example in which the internal dative case is more complex than the external accusative case. I end with an example in which the external dative case is more complex than the internal accusative case. I show that the first two examples are grammatical and the last one is not. I derive this by showing that only in the first two situations the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun, and that it can therefore then be deleted. In the last example, neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally contained in the other element. I do not discuss formal containment in this chapter, because it never leads to a successful deletion when structural containment does not.

I start with the situation in which the cases match. Consider the example in (48), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case. The relative clause is marked in bold. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *mögen* 'to like' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *wen* 'REL.AN.ACC' appears in the accusative case. This is the element that surfaces. The external case is accusative as well, as the predicate *einladen* 'to invite' also takes accusative objects. The extra light head *n* 'ELH.AN.ACC' appears in the accusative case. It is placed between square brackets because it does not surface.

(48)   Ich   lade ein   [n],   **wen   auch**
        1SG.NOM invite.PRES.1SG$_{[Acc]}$ ELH.AN.ACC RP.AN.ACC Maria.NOM

        Maria   mag.
        like.PRES.3SG$_{[Acc]}$
        'I invite who Maria also likes.'

                                       (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 344)

In Figure 6.3, I give the syntactic structure of the extra light head at the top and the

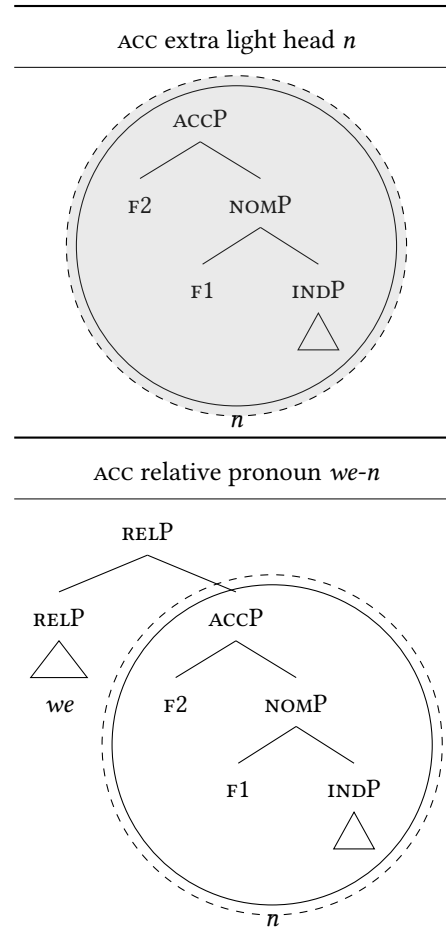syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

ACC extra light head *n*

ACC relative pronoun *we-n*

Figure 6.3: Modern German EXT_{ACC} VS. INT_{ACC} $\longrightarrow$ *wen*

The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: *n*. The relative pronoun consists of two morphemes: *we* and *n*. As usual, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is structurally contained in both the extra light head and the relative pronoun.

The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: the ACCP. This ACCP is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the extra light head can be deleted. I signal the deletion of the extra light head by marking the content of its circle gray. The surface pronoun is the relative pronoun that bears the internal case: *wen*.

For reasons of space I do not show the comparisons of the other matching situations. These are situations in which both the internal and external case are nomina-

tive or both the internal and external case are dative. The same logic as I showed in Figure 6.3 works for these situations too.

I continue with the situation in which the internal case is the more complex one. Consider the example in (49), in which the internal dative case competes against the external accusative case. The relative clause is marked in bold. The internal case is dative, as the predicate *vertrauen* 'to trust' takes dative objects. The relative pronoun *wem* 'REL.AN.DAT' appears in the dative case. This is the element that surfaces. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *einladen* 'to invite' takes accusative objects. The extra light head *n* 'ELH.AN.ACC' appears in the accusative case. It is placed between square brackets because it does not surface.

(49)   Ich   lade ein   [n],   **wem   auch Maria**
       1SG.NOM invite.PRES.1SG[ACC] ELH.AN.DAT RP.AN.DAT also   Maria.NOM

       vertraut.
       trust.PRES.3SG[DAT]
       'I invite whoever Maria also trusts.'
   (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 344)

In Figure 6.4, I give the syntactic structure of the extra light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: *n*. The relative pronoun consists of two morphemes: *we* and *m*. Again, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is structurally a constituent in both the extra light head and the relative pronoun.

The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: the ACCP. This ACCP is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the extra light can be deleted. I signal the deletion of the extra light head by marking the content of its circle gray. The surface pronoun is the relative pronoun that bears the internal case: *wem*.

For reasons of space I do not show the comparisons of the other situations in which the internal case is more complex. These are situations in which the internal case is dative and the external case is nominative and in which the internal case is accusative and the external case is nominative. The same logic as I showed in Figure 6.4 works for these situations too.

I end with the situation in which the external case is the more complex one. Consider the examples in (50), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external dative case. The relative clauses are marked in bold. It is not possible to make a grammatical headless relative in this situation. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *mögen* 'to like' takes accusative objects. The relative
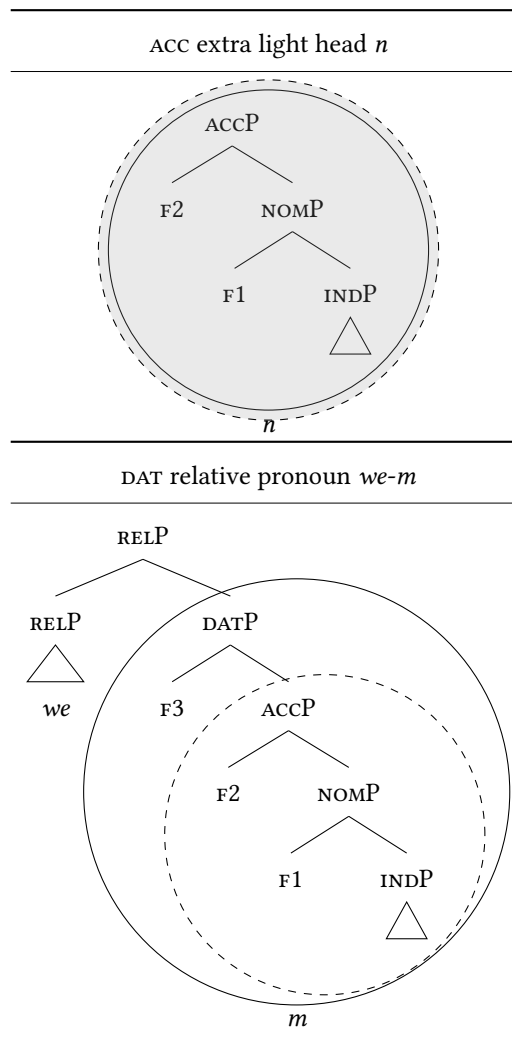
Figure 6.4: Modern German EXT_ACC vs. INT_DAT $\longrightarrow$ *wem*

pronoun *wen* 'REL.AN.ACC' appears in the accusative case. The external case is dative, as the predicate *vertrauen* 'to trust' takes dative objects. The extra light head *m* 'ELH.AN.DAT' appears in the dative case. (50a) is the variant of the sentence in which the extra light head is absent (indicated by the square brackets) and the relative pronoun surfaces, which is ungrammatical. (50b) is the variant of the sentence in which the relative pronoun is absent (indicated by the square brackets) and the extra light head surfaces, which is ungrammatical too.

(50) a. *Ich   vertraue   [m],   **wen**   **auch Maria**
          1SG.NOM trust.PRES.1SG_[DAT] ELH.AN.DAT RP.AN.ACC also   Maria.NOM

mag.

like.PRES.3SG[ACC]

'I trust whoever Maria also likes.'

(Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 345)

b. *Ich   vertraue   m,   [**wen**]   **auch Maria**

1SG.NOM trust.PRES.1SG[DAT] ELH.AN.DAT RP.AN.ACC also   Maria.NOM

mag.

like.PRES.3SG[ACC]

'I trust whoever Maria also likes.'

(Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 345)

In Figure 6.5, I give the syntactic structure of the extra light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: *m*. The relative pronoun consists of two morphemes: *we* and *n*. Again, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is structurally a constituent in both the extra light head and the relative pronoun.

In this case, the light head is not structurally contained in the relative pronoun. The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: the DATP. The relative pronoun only contains the ACCP, and it lacks the F3 that makes a DATP. Since the weaker feature containment requirement is not met, the stronger constituent containment requirement cannot be met either.

The relative pronoun is not structurally contained in the light head. It namely lacks the complete constituent and RELP. Therefore, the extra light cannot be deleted, and the relative pronoun cannot be deleted either. As a result, there is no grammatical headless relative possible.

For reasons of space I do not show the comparisons of the other situations in which the external case is more complex. These are situations in which the internal case is nominative and the external case is accusative and in which the internal case is nominative and the external case is dative. The same logic as I showed in Figure 6.5 works for these situations too.[18]

---

[18]This is true for the headless relatives with animates that I gave examples of in Chapter 3. It does not hold for headless relatives with inanimates, which I already briefly mentioned in Chapter 5. I repeat the relevant example in (i), including the extra light head which I assume to be there.

(i)   Ich   erzähle   [s]   **was**   **immer mir**   **gefällt**.

1SG.NOM tell.PRES.1SG[ACC] ELH.INAN.ACC RP.INAN.NOM ever   1SG.DAT pleases.PRES.3SG[NOM]

'I tell whatever pleases me.'   (Modern German, adapted from Vogel 2001: 344)
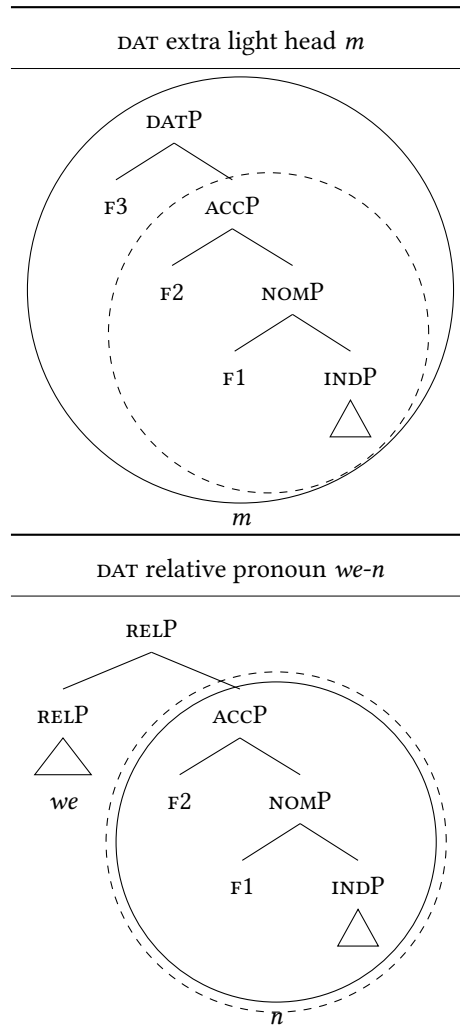
Figure 6.5: Modern German EXT$_\text{DAT}$ vs. INT$_\text{ACC}$ $\nrightarrow$ *m*/*wen*

In (i), the internal nominative case competes against the external accusative case. The relative clause is marked in bold. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *gefallen* 'to please' takes nominative objects. The relative pronoun *was* 'REL.INAN.NOM' appears in the nominative case. This is the element that surfaces The external case is accusative, as the predicate *erzählen* 'to tell' takes accusative objects. The extra light head *s* 'ELH.INAN.ACC' appears in the accusative case. It is placed between square brackets because it does not surface. For inanimates, there is a syncretism between nominative and accusative. In these cases, the extra light head can be deleted via formal containment. In what follows, I briefly describe the comparison.

The inanimate accusative extra light head consists of a single morpheme (*s*). The inanimate nominative relative pronoun consists of two morphemes (*wa* and *s*) (see footnote 10). The extra light head (the ACCP realized by *s*) is formally contained in the relative pronoun (the RELP realized by *wa-s*). Therefore, the extra light head can be deleted, and the surface pronoun is the relative pronoun that bears the external case: *was*.

6.5   Summary

Modern German is an example of an internal-only type of language. This means that headless relatives are grammatical in the language, as long as the internal and external case match or the internal case is the more complex one.

I derive this from the internal syntax of light heads and relative pronouns in Modern German. The features of the light head are spelled out by a single lexical entry, which spells out phi and case features. The features of the relative pronoun are spelled out by the same lexical entry plus one which amongst other spells out a relative feature. The internal syntax of the Modern German light head and relative pronoun are shown in Figure 6.6.
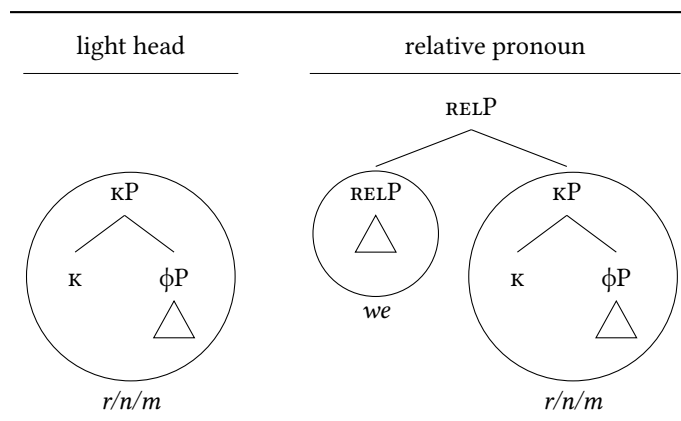

Figure 6.6: ELH and RP in Modern German (repeated)

A crucial characteristic of internal-only languages such as Modern German is that they have a portmanteau for phi and case features. Therefore, the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun when the internal and the external case match and when the internal case is the more complex one. As a result, the light head can be deleted, and the relative pronoun can surface, bearing the internal case.

When the internal case is the more complex one, neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally contained in the other element. None of the elements can be deleted, and there is no grammatical headless relative possible.

Chapter 7

Deriving the matching type

In Chapter 5, I suggested that languages of the matching type have a lexical entry that spells out phi features and another one that spells out case features. This is the crucial difference with internal-only languages such as Modern German, that have a portmanteau for phi and case features. It means that the internal syntax of light heads and relative pronouns looks as shown in Figure 7.1.
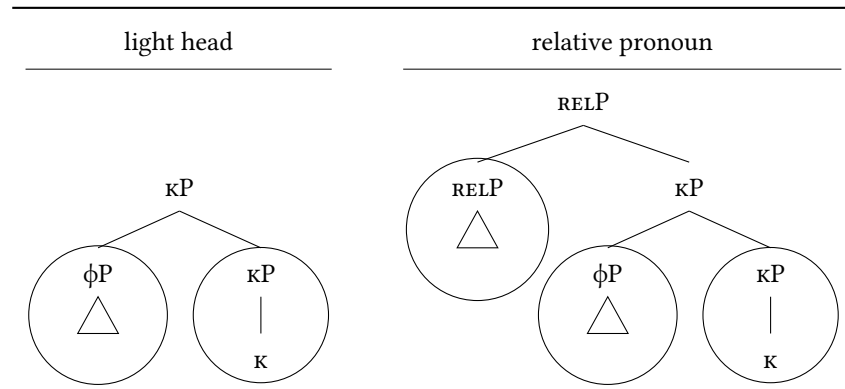
Figure 7.1: LH and RP in the matching type

These lexical entries lead to the grammaticality pattern shown in Table 7.1.

Table 7.1: Grammaticality in the matching type

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	LH	RP			
$\kappa_{INT} = \kappa_{EXT}$	$[\kappa_1], [\phi]$	$[REL], [\kappa_1], [\phi]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$\kappa_{INT} > \kappa_{EXT}$	$[\kappa_1], [\phi]$	$[REL], [\kappa_2[\kappa_1]], [\phi]$	no	none	*
$\kappa_{INT} < \kappa_{EXT}$	$[\kappa_2[\kappa_1]], [\phi]$	$[REL], [\kappa_1], [\phi]$	no	none	*

Consider first the situation in which the internal and the external case match. The light head consists of a phi feature morpheme and a case feature morpheme. The relative pronoun consists of the same two morphemes plus an additional morpheme that spells out the feature REL. The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the light head can be deleted, and the relative pronoun surfaces, bearing the internal case. In this situation, whether there is a phi and case feature portmanteau (as in internal-only languages) or two separate morphemes for the features (as in matching languages) does not make a difference for whether or not the light head can be deleted. It can in both cases.

Consider now the situation in the internal case wins the case competition. The light head consists of a phi feature morpheme and a case feature morpheme. The relative pronoun consists of the same phi feature morpheme, a case morpheme that that contains at least one more case feature than the light head (κ_2 in Figure 7.1) plus an additional morpheme that spells out the feature REL. The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally contained in the other element. Therefore, none of the elements can be deleted, and there is no headless relative construction possible. In this situation, whether there is a phi and case feature portmanteau (as in internal-only languages) or two separate morphemes for the features (as in matching languages) makes crucial difference for whether or not the light head can be deleted. It can when there is a phi and case feature portmanteau and it cannot when there are two separate morphemes for the features.

Finally, consider the situation in which the external case wins the case competition. The relative pronoun consists of a phi feature morpheme, a case feature morpheme and an additional morpheme that spells out the feature REL. Compared to the relative pronoun, the light head lacks the morpheme that spells out REL, and it contains at least one more case feature (κ_2 in Figure 7.1). The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally contained in the other element. Therefore, none of the elements can be deleted, and there is no headless relative construction possible. In this situation, whether there is a phi and case feature portmanteau (as in internal-only languages) or two separate morphemes for the features (as in matching languages) does not make a difference for whether or not the light head or the relative pronoun can be deleted. It cannot in both cases.

In Chapter 3, I showed that Polish is a language of the matching type. In this chapter, I show that Polish light heads and relative pronouns have the type of internal syntax described in Figure 7.1. I give a compact version of the internal syntax of Polish light heads and relative pronouns in Figure 7.2.

Consider the light head in Figure 7.2. Light heads (i.e. the phi and case features) in
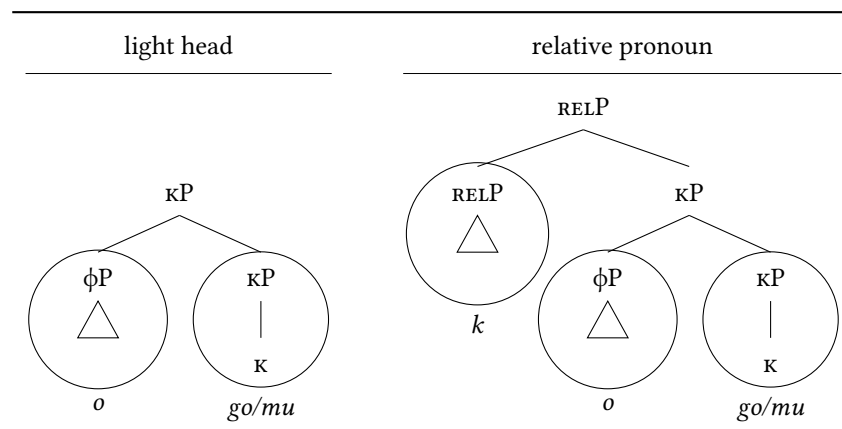
light head	relative pronoun

Figure 7.2: LH and RP in Polish

Polish are spelled out by two morphemes, which are both circled. The phi features are spelled out as *o* and the case features are spelled out as *go* or *mu*, depending on which case they realize. Consider the relative pronoun in Figure 7.2. Relative pronouns in Polish consist of three morphemes: the constituent that forms the light head (i.e. phi and case feature morphemes) and the RELP, again indicated by the circles. The constituent that forms the light head has the same spellout as in the light head (*o* and *go* or *mu*), and the RELP is spelled out as *k*. Throughout this chapter, I discuss the exact feature content of relative pronouns and light heads, I give lexical entries for them, and I show how these lexical entries lead to the internal syntax shown in Figure 7.2.

The chapter is structured as follows. First, I discuss the relative pronoun. I decompose it into the three morphemes I showed in Figure 7.2. Then I show which features each of the morphemes corresponds to. Then I discuss the light head. I argue that Polish headless relatives are, just as Modern German headless relatives, derived from a type of light-headed relative clause that does not surface in the language. I show that the light head corresponds to one of the morphemes of the relative pronoun (the κP in Figure 7.2). Importantly, the features that form the Polish light head and relative pronoun are the same ones that form the Modern German light head and relative pronoun. The only difference between the two languages is how the features are spelled out. Finally, I compare the internal syntax of the light head and the relative pronoun. I show that the light head can only be deleted when the internal case matches the external case. When the internal and external case differ, none of the elements can be deleted.

7.1 The Polish relative pronoun

In the introduction of this chapter, I suggested that the internal syntax of relative pronouns in Polish looks as shown in (1).
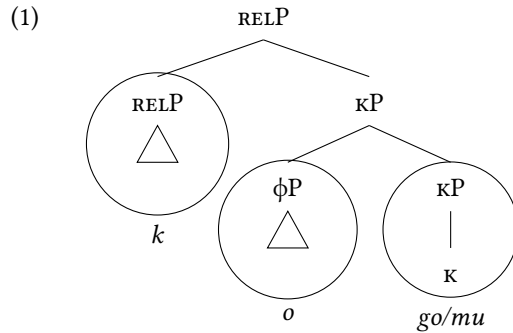
(1)

In Chapter 5, I suggested that relative pronouns consist of at least three features: REL, ϕ and κ. I showed that Modern German relative pronouns contain more features than that in Chapter 6. In this section, I show that Polish relative pronouns consist of the same features. Still, the crucial claim I made in Chapter 5 remains unchanged: matching languages (of which Polish is an example) have a separate morpheme for phi features, one for case features and one for the features the light head does not contain. Actually, the morpheme for case features contains a number feature and the phi feature morpheme does not contain one, but this does not influence the point here. I show the complete structure that I work towards in this section in (2).
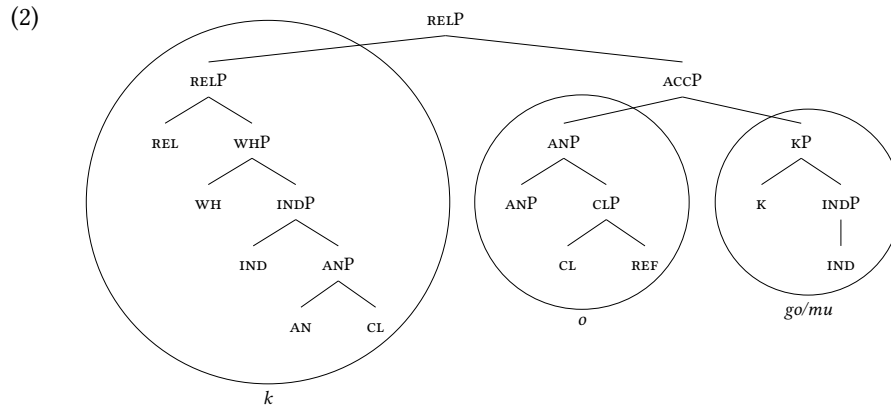
(2)

I discuss two relative pronouns: the animate accusative and the animate dative. These are the two forms that I compare the internal syntax of in Section 7.3. I show them in (3).

(3) a. k-o-go
         RP.AN.ACC

b. k-o-mu
   RP.AN.DAT

I decompose the relative pronouns into three morphemes: *k*, *o* and the suffix (*go* or *mu*). For each morpheme, I discuss which features they spell out, I give their lexical entries, and I show how I construct the relative pronouns by combining the separate morphemes.

I start with the suffixes *go* and *mu*. These two morphemes correspond to what I called the case feature morpheme in Chapter 5 and the introduction to this chapter. In addition, the morphemes spell out a number feature.

To determine their exact feature content, I first focus on *mu*. Then, I extend the analysis to *go*. The morpheme *mu* (and also the *go*) do not only appear in relative pronouns. They also show up as nominal endings, adjectival endings and in other pronominal forms. Interestingly, forms containing *mu* are often syncretic between masculine dative and neuter dative. Consider Table 7.2.

Table 7.2: Syncretic N/M dative forms (Swan, 2002)

	M.DAT	N.DAT
je-pronoun	je-mu	je-mu
ni-pronoun	nie-mu	nie-mu
DEM	te-mu	te-mu

The table shows three forms in which there is a syncretism between the neuter and the masculine in the dative case. The complete pronouns are syncretic. I set up a system that can derive the syncretism between the two genders. Doing this allows me to establish which features the morpheme *mu* spells out.

I discussed in Chapter 2 that syncretisms can be derived in Nanosyntax via the Superset Principle. The lexicon contains a lexical entry that is specified for the form that corresponds to the most features. To illustrate this, I repeat the lexical entry for the Dutch *jullie* 'you' in (4).

(4)   DATP ⟺ *jullie*
```
              DATP ⟺ jullie
             /    \
           F3     ACCP
                 /    \
               F2     NOMP
                     /    \
                   F1     2PLP
                           △
```
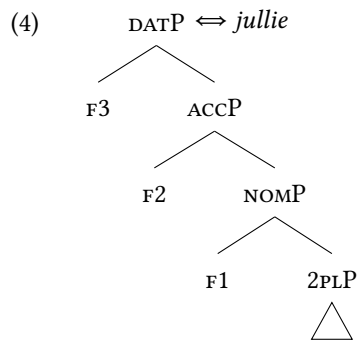
Jullie is syncretic between nominative, accusative and dative. It is specified for dative in the lexicon, it is the most complex case of the three. The nominative, the accusative and the dative second person plural in Dutch are spelled out as *jullie*, because the DATP, the ACCP and the NOMP are all contained in the lexical tree in (4) (Superset Principle), and there is no more specific lexical entry available in Dutch (Elsewhere Condition). Importantly, the potentially unused features (so the F3 or F3 and the F2) are at the top, so that the constituent that needs to be spelled out is still contained in the lexical tree.

In what follows, I show how I can derive the syncretisms for the forms in Table 7.2. I propose that *jemu*, *niemu* and *temu* spell out the syntactic structure in (5).

(5)
```
              DATP
             /    \
           F3     ACCP
                 /    \
               F2     NOMP
                     /    \
                   F1     INDP
                         /    \
                       IND    ANP
                             /    \
                           AN     CLP
                                 /    \
                               CL     XP
                                       △
```
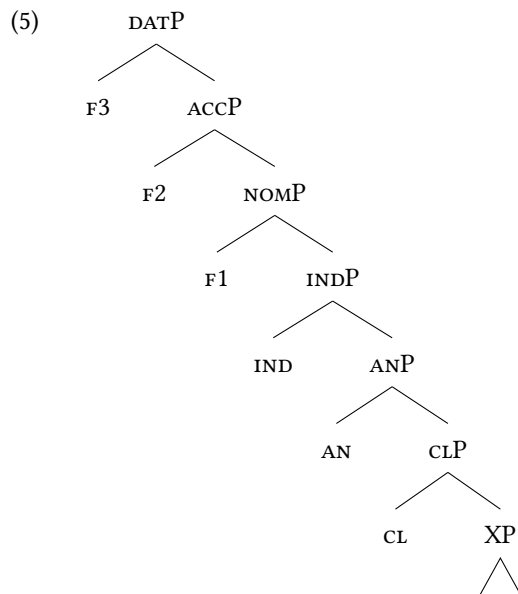
I do not discuss the feature content that distinguishes *jemu*, *niemu* and *temu*, but I call them XP. Following the functional sequence I suggested in Chapter 6, all forms

contain the feature CL for inanimate/neuter gender, AN for animate/masculine gender and IND for singular number and case features up to the dative.

The forms *jemu*, *niemu* and *temu* are syncretic between the masculine and the neuter. This can be captured if the highest feature in the lexical tree is the feature that distinguishes masculine and neuter gender. This distinguishing feature is the feature AN (Harley and Ritter, 2002), which is not the the highest feature in (5). Fortunately, different from *jullie*, *jemu*, *niemu* and *temu* are bimorphemic: they contain morphemes *je*, *nie* or *te* and the morpheme *mu*. The highest feature of one of the two morphemes needs to be the feature AN. I suggest that this is the case for *je*, *nie* and *te* is AN, as shown in (6).

(6)

ANP ⟺ *je/nie/te*

AN   CLP

CL   XP
△
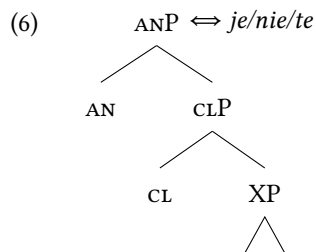
Since the feature AN can be either present or absent, the forms can easily spell both the structure with or without the feature AN.

In (7), I give the syntactic structure of a masculine form.
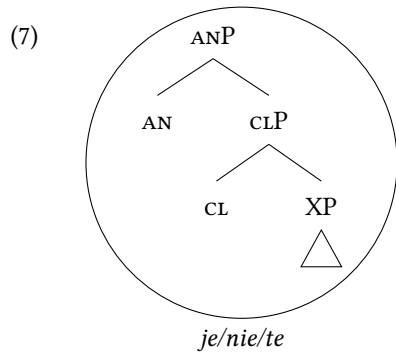
(7)

ANP

AN   CLP

CL   XP
△

je/nie/te

The syntactic structure forms a constituent within the lexical tree in (6), and the structure can be spelled out as *je/nie/te*.

In (8), I give the syntactic structure of a neuter form.

(8)

je/nie/te

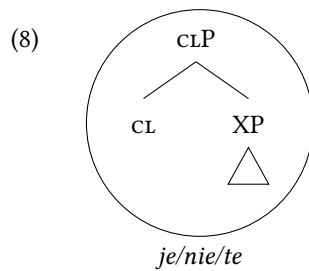Again, the syntactic structure forms a constituent within the lexical tree in (6), and the structure can be spelled out as *je/nie/te*.

This means that the lexical tree for the suffix *mu* should contain all features in (5) that are not spelled out by *je/nie/te* so far. These are the feature IND and all case features up to the dative. I give the lexical entry for *mu* in (9).

(9)   DATP ⟺ *mu*
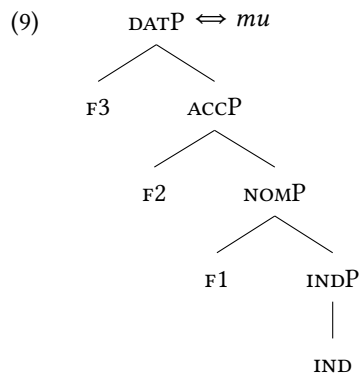
Notice here that *mu* has a unary bottom, just as the morpheme *e:l* in Khanty (see Chapter 2 and Chapter 5). Therefore, it can be inserted as the result of movement. It also means that the inserted phonology form follows the already present phonology and is spelled out as a suffix. This is how the correct order of *je/nie/te* and *mu* comes about. I illustrate the movement operation and how it is a step of the Spellout Algorithm later on in this section.

The morpheme *go* is identical to the morpheme *mu*, except for that it expresses accusative case instead of dative case. Therefore, the morpheme *go* differs from *mu* in that it lacks the feature F3 in its lexical entry, as shown in (10).

(10)   ACCP $\Longleftrightarrow$ *go*

             F2   NOMP

                     F1   INDP

                              IND
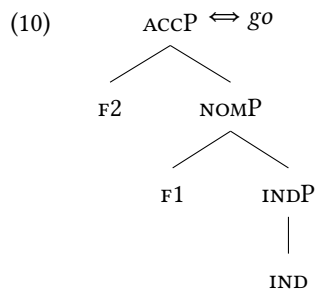
In sum, the morphemes *go* and *mu* spell out case features and a number feature.

This leaves the two morphemes *k* and *o*. First I discuss the *o*. This morpheme corresponds to what I called the phi feature morpheme in Chapter 5 and the introduction to this chapter. I show that this morpheme corresponds to pronominal features and gender features.

First I show that the *o* does not only appear in animate relative pronouns, but also in the inanimate relative pronoun and even in other pronouns. I go through this rather long reasoning to show that *o* is present in enviroments, even though it does not surface. Consider the relative pronouns in Table 7.3.

Table 7.3: Polish (in)animate relative pronouns (Swan 2002: 160)

	AN	INAN
NOM	kto	c-o
ACC	k-o-go	c-o
GEN	k-o-go	cz-e-go
DAT	k-o-mu	cz-e-mu
INS	k-i-m	cz-y-m

I ignore the nominative and accusative for now and come back to them later in this section. From the genitive on, the final suffixes in the animate and the inanimate paradigm are the same.[1] The forms differ in their initial consonant and the vowel. The animates have a *k* and an *o* or *i*, and the inanimates have a *cz* and a *e* or *y*.

There are several ways to analyze this. The first possibility is to not decompose the portion before the suffix. Under this analysis, Polish has the morphemes *ko*,

---

[1]I include genitive and the instrumental in the paradigms to show that the patterns observed in the dative are not standing on themselves. Instead, they are more generally attested in Polish, and they deserve an explanation. In Polish, the genitive comes between the accusative and the dative, i.e. it is more complex than the accusative and less complex than the dative. However, I do not incorporate them in the syntactic structures. This does not change anything about the main point about case I want to make: the dative is more complex than the accusative.

ki, *cze* and *czy*. The point that is missed is that the animates always have a *k* and inanimates always have a *cz*.

A second possibility that captures this observation is an analysis in which Polish has the morphemes *k*, *o*, *i* and *cz*, *e* and *y*.[2] What is not captured now is that numerous wh-elements in Polish start with a *k*. I give some examples in (11).[3]

(11) a. k-tóry
          which

      b. k-iedy
          when

      c. g-dzie
          where

                                                                (Polish, Swan 2002: 180,183-184)

Moreover, *cz* is not a primary consonant in Polish but a derived one (Swan 2002: 23). The consonants *cz* and *c* are derived from *k*.

I propose that the *k* is underlyingly present in the inanimate relative pronouns. They appear as a consequence of being combined with an *i*.[4] I show the proposed decomposition in Table 7.4.

Table 7.4: Polish (in)animate relative pronouns (underlying forms) (Swan 2002: 160)

	AN	INAM
NOM	kto	k-i-o
ACC	k-o-go	k-i-o
GEN	k-o-go	k-i-o-go
DAT	k-o-mu	k-i-o-mu
INS	k-i-m	k-i-i-m

Under this analysis, Polish only has the morphemes *k*, *o* and *i* that can be observed in the animate plus an *i* that is present throughout the whole paradigm in the inanimate.[5] I put the underlying forms and the surface form side by side in Table 7.5.

---

[2]This is more or less what Wiland (2019) proposes.

[3]The *k* in (11c) gets voiced into *g* because it is followed by *d*.

[4]In this dissertation I do not discuss the exact feature content that corresponds to *i*. I assume it spells out features that have to do with being strong pronouns. For why the morpheme is not inserted in animate relative pronouns, see footnote 9 of this chapter.

[5]As first sight, there seems to be a contradiction here: the inanimate is featurally speaking less complex than the animate (cf. Harley and Ritter, 2002), but morphologically the inanimate is more complex than the animate: it contains the additional morpheme *i*. I return to this point in footnote 9 of this chapter

Table 7.5: Polish inanimate relative pronouns (underlying + surface forms) (Swan 2002: 160)

	underlying	surface
NOM	k-i-o	c-o
ACC	k-i-o	c-o
GEN	k-i-o-go	cz-e-go
DAT	k-i-o-mu	cz-e-mu
INS	k-i-i-m	cz-y-m

The sequence *k-i-i* becomes *czy* in the instrumental, and the sequence *k-i-o* becomes *cze* in the genitive and dative.[6] To get from the underlying form to the surface form, several phonological processes are taking place, which are all independently observed within Polish. I start with *k* becoming *c* when it precedes *i*, as shown in (12).

(12)   /k/ → /c/ / ____/i/

Consider the paradigm for the singular of *lampa* 'light' and the singular of *córka* 'daugther' in Table 7.6.

Table 7.6: Polish nouns (Swan 2002: 47,57)

	light.SG	daughter.SG
NOM	lamp-a	córk-a
ACC	lamp-ę	córk-ę
GEN	lamp-y	córk-i
DAT	lamp-i-e	córc-e
INS	lamp-ą	córk-ą

The stem and the suffixes are identical in both paradigms, except for in the dative.[7] There, the stem of *córka* does no longer end with a *k*, but with a *c*. Also, part of the suffix, namely the *i* has disappeared. Analyzing *córc-e* as *córk-i-e* brings back regularity in the paradigm.

---

to show how this apparent contradiction can be resolved. hoi

[6]Under this analysis, the WH-element *czyj* 'whose' is underlyingly *k-i-i-j*.

[7]There is also the change from /i/ to /y/ in the genitive of *lampa*.

Consider the forms after this first phonological change and the surface forms in Table 7.7.

Table 7.7: Polish inanimate relative pronouns (after change 1 + surface forms) (Swan 2002: 160)

	after change 1	surface
NOM	c-i-o	c-o
ACC	c-i-o	c-o
GEN	c-i-o-go	cz-e-go
DAT	c-i-o-mu	cz-e-mu
INS	c-i-i-m	cz-y-m

I continue with the combination of *c*, *i* and *i* becoming *czy*, as shown in (13).

(13)   a.   /c/ + /i/ + /i/ → /czy/

Assuming that the two *i*s merge into one, this change can be independently observed in (14).

(14)   walc-ik: walczyk
        waltz-DIM waltz.DIM

(Swan 2002: 26)

The noun *walc* 'waltz' combines with the diminutive marker *ik*. The sequence *c-ik* changes to *czyk*.

Consider the forms after this second phonological change and the surface forms in Table 7.8.

Table 7.8: Polish inanimate relative pronouns (after change 2 + surface forms) (Swan 2002: 160)

	after change 2	surface
NOM	c-i-o	c-o
ACC	c-i-o	c-o
GEN	c-i-o-go	cz-e-go
DAT	c-i-o-mu	cz-e-mu
INS	cz-y-m	cz-y-m

The last phonological change is the combination of *c*, *i* and *o* becoming *cze* in the genitive and dative.[8]

(15)   a.   /c/ + /i/ + /o/ → /cze/

I am not aware of an example that independently shows this change as a whole. However, there are examples that show the change step by step. That is, I have an example in which the combination of *i* and *o* becomes *e*, and I have an example in which *c* and *e* become *cze*. I give them in (16).

(16)   a.   /i/ + /o/ → /e/
        b.   /c/ + /e/ → /cze/

Consider the paradigm for the singular of *biurko* 'desk' and the singular of *słońce* 'sun' in Table 7.9.

Table 7.9: Polish nouns (Swan 2002: 116,117)

	desk.SG	sun.SG
NOM	biurk-o	słońc-e
ACC	biurk-o	słońc-e
GEN	biurk-a	słońc-a
DAT	biurk-u	słońc-u

The stem and the suffixes are identical in both paradigms, except for in the nominative and the accusative. There, the suffix is *o* on the stem *biurk*, and the suffix is *e* on the stem *słońc*. Analyzing *słońc-e* as *słońc-i-o* brings back regularity in the paradigm.

I give the example in which the combination of *c* and *e* results in *cze* in (17).

(17)   ojc-e: ojcze
        father-VOC father.VOC

(Swan 2002: 26)

---

[8]Note, however, that the *co* in the nominative and the accusative does not become *cze*. I assume that the *o* in the nominative and accusative resists the process in (15). This is because the *o* in the nominative and accusative is morphologically and phonologically a 'different' *o* than the *o* in the genitive and dative. Morphologically, the *o* in the genitive and dative spells out different features than the *o* in *co*, such as nominative and accusative case, which in the case of the genitive and dative are realized by *go* and *mu*. Phonologically, this difference can be modeled by analyzing the *o* in *co* as an *o* without a slot for a vowel and the *o* in the genitive and dative as an *o* plus a slot for a vowel. That is why in the case of *co*, the *i* has its influence on the *k* (as described in (12)), and in the case of the *o* in the genitive and dative, the *i* has its influence on *k* but also on the *o*.

The noun *ojc* 'father' combines with the vocative marker *e*. The sequence *c-e* changes to *cze*.

The conclusion I draw from this rather long reasoning is that the morpheme *o* in *kogo* and *komu* is not specific to animate relative pronouns, but it also appears elsewhere, for instance in inanimate relative pronouns, demonstratives and in the *ni-* and *je*-pronouns, as shown in Table 7.10.

Table 7.10: Polish dative pronouns (underlying and surface)

	underlying	surface
DEM	t-i-o-mu	t-e-mu
nie-pronoun	ni(-i)-o-mu	n-i-e-mu
je-pronoun	j(-i)-o-mu	j-e-mu

What these elements all have in common is that they are pronouns. Moreover, they can all appear in both animate and inanimate gender. Therefore, I assume that the *o* spells out pronominal features and gender features. I give the lexical entry in (18).

(18)   ANP ⟺ *o*

```
        ANP ⟺ o
        /    \
      AN      CLP
             /   \
           CL     REF
```
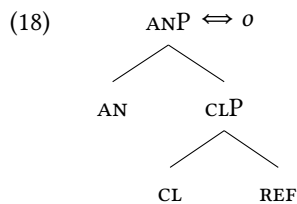
Finally, I discuss morpheme *k*. This morpheme corresponds to what I called the REL-feature in Chapter 5 and in the introduction to this chapter. I argue that this morpheme actually spells out the operator features WH and REL and number and gender features.

I start with the operator features WH and REL. The Polish relative pronouns are WH-pronouns, and they are also used as interrogatives. Therefore, just as the Modern German *we*, the Polish *k* spells out the features WH and REL.

Finally, since the relative pronouns do not have a morphological plural, I assume that *k* contains the feature IND. Lastly, I assume that *k* also contains the features AN and CL. For this I do not have any independent support. I make this assumption to make room for the *i* to be inserted in the inanimate.[9]

In sum, the morpheme *k* realizes the features WH, REL, IND, AN and CL.

---

[9] To be able to derive the inanimate relative pronoun, I also assume that there is a pointer in the lexical entry for *k*, as shown in (i).

(19)   RELP ⟺ *k*

```
        REL        WHP
                WH      INDP
                    IND      ANP
                           AN      CL
```
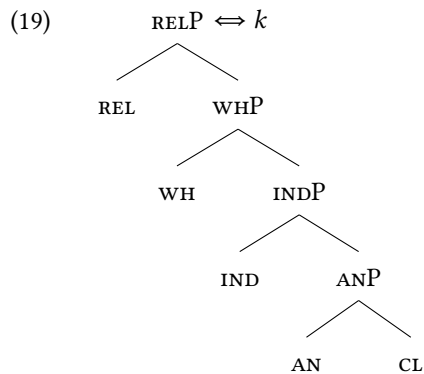
In what follows, I show how the Polish relative pronouns are constructed. I follow the same functional sequence as I did for Modern German. Also, of course, the spellout procedure is identical. The outcome is different because of the different lexical entries Polish has. I repeat the available lexical entries in (20).

(20)   a.   ANP ⟺ *o*

```
        AN      CLP
             CL      REF
```

    b.   ACCP ⟺ *go*

```
        F2      NOMP
             F1      INDP
                        IND
```

(i)   RELP ⟺ *k*

```
      REL        WHP
              WH      INDP
                   IND      ANP
                          AN      CL
```
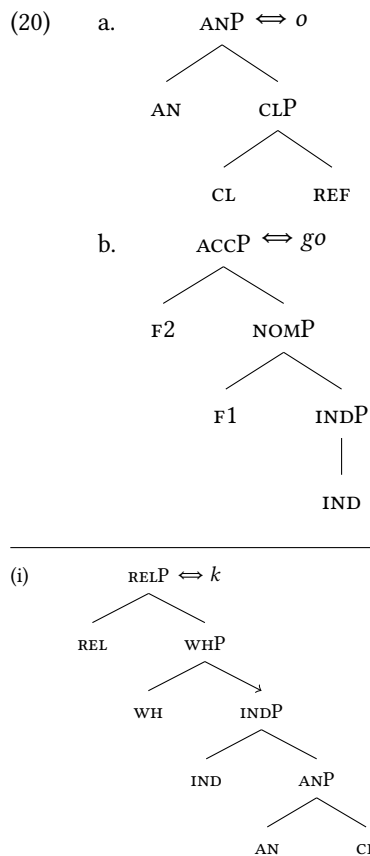
The pointer is situated above the INDP. That means that if there is no animate feature in the structure, the IND can also not be spelled out with *k*. Then there is another morpheme necessary that contributes the feature IND. I propose that this is *i*, which causes the phonological processes described in this section.
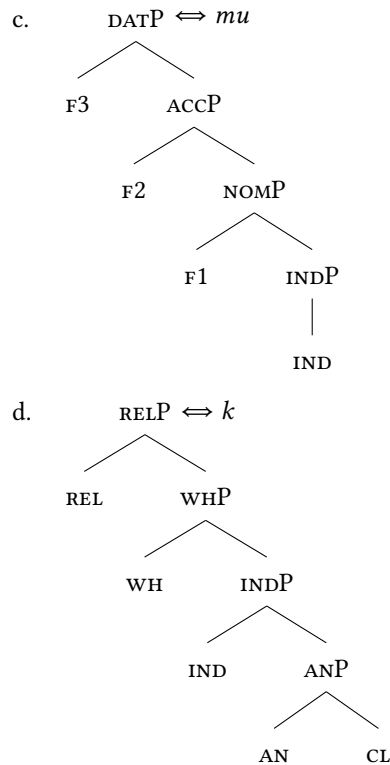
c.
```
        DATP ⟺ mu
         ╱╲
       F3   ACCP
             ╱╲
           F2  NOMP
                ╱╲
              F1  INDP
                   │
                  IND
```

d.
```
        RELP ⟺ k
         ╱╲
       REL  WHP
             ╱╲
           WH  INDP
                ╱╲
              IND  ANP
                    ╱╲
                  AN   CL
```

Starting from the bottom, the first two features that are merged are REF and CL, creating a CLP. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (20a), which corresponds to *o*. Therefore, the CLP is spelled out as *o*, which I do not show here. Then, the feature AN is merged, and a ANP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (20a). Therefore, the ANP is spelled out as *o*, shown in (21).
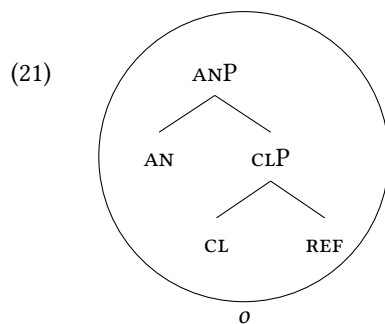
(21)
```
        ┌─────────────┐
       ╱     ANP       ╲
      │      ╱╲         │
      │    AN   CLP     │
      │         ╱╲      │
       ╲      CL  REF  ╱
        └──────┬──────┘
               o
```

The next feature in the functional sequence is the feature IND. It is merged, and an INDP is created. This syntactic structure does not form a constituent in the lexical tree in (20a). There is no other lexical tree that contains the syntactic structure as a constituent. Therefore, there is no succesfull spellout for the syntactic structure in

the derivational step in which the structure is spelled out as a single phrase ((22a) in the Spellout Algorithm, repeated from Chapter 6).

(22) **Spellout Algorithm** (as in Caha 2020a, based on Starke 2018)

    a.   Merge F and spell out.

    b.   If (a) fails, move the Spec of the complement and spell out.

    c.   If (b) fails, move the complement of F and spell out.

The first movement option in the Spellout Algorithm is moving the specifier, as described in (22b). As there is no specifier in this structure, the first movement option irrelevant. The second movement option in the Spellout Algorithm is moving the complement, as described in (22c). In this case, the complement of IND, the ANP, is moved to the specifier of INDP. I show this movement in (23).[10]

(23)
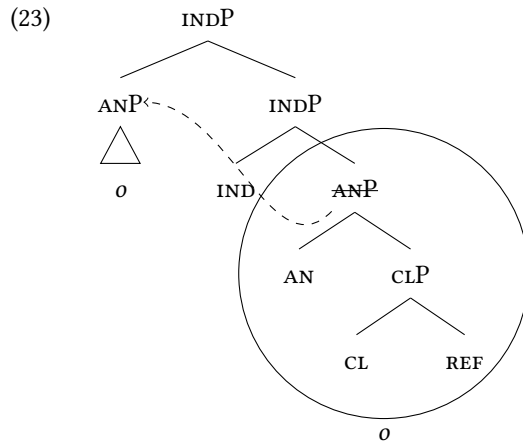
The INDP has a different internal syntax now. It still contains the feature IND, but the ANP is no longer a sister of IND. Now the ANP is moved away, the INDP forms a constituent in the lexical tree of (20b). Therefore, the INDP is spelled out as *go*, as shown in (24).

(24)

---
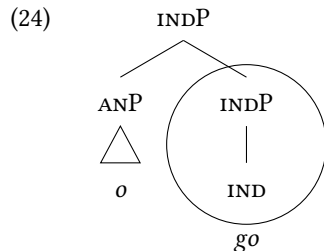
[10]In its landing position the internal structure of the ANP is no longer shown (to save some space), and its phonological form is placed under the triangle. The strikethrough of the lower ANP indicates that the complement of IND disappears.

Next, the feature wh is merged. The derivation for this feature resembles the derivation of wh in Modern German. The feature is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a whP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Therefore, in a second workspace, the feature wh is merged with the feature IND (the previous syntactic feature on the functional sequence) into a whP. This syntactic structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon. Therefore, the feature wh combines not only with the feature merged before it, but with a phrase that consists of the two features merged before it: IND and AN. Also this syntactic structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon. Therefore, the feature wh combines with a phrase that consists of the three features merged before it: IND, AN and CL. This syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (20d), which corresponds to the *k*. Therefore, the whP is spelled out as *k*. The newly created phrase is merged as a whole with the already existing structure, and projects to the top node, as shown in (25).

(25)

The next feature in the functional sequence is the feature REL. The derivation for this feature resembles the derivation of REL in Modern German. The feature is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a RELP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the whP from the INDP. The feature REL is merged in both workspaces, so with whP and and with INDP. The spellout of REL is successful when it is combined with the whP. It namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (20d), which corresponds to the *k*. The RELP is spelled out as *k*, and it is merged back to the existing syntactic structure.

The next feature on the functional sequence is F1. This feature should somehow end up merging with INDP, because it forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (20b),

which corresponds to the *go*. This is achieved via Backtracking in which phrases are split up and going through the Spellout Algorithm. I go through the derivation step by step. The feature F1 is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a NOMP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the RELP from the INDP. The feature F1 is merged in both workspaces, so with the RELP and and with the INDP. None of these phrases form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon. The first movement option in the Spellout Algorithm is moving the specifier. In the RELP there is no specifier, so this movement option is irrelevant. In the INDP, however, there is a specifier, which is moved to the specifier of NOMP. This syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (20b), which corresponds to the *go*. The NOMP is spelled out as *go*, and the NOMP is merged back to the existing syntactic structure.

For the accusative relative pronoun, the last feature on the functional sequence is the feature F2. Its derivation proceeds the same as the one for the feature F1. The feature F2 is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a ACCP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the RELP from the NOMP. The feature F2 is merged in both workspaces, so with the RELP and and with the NOMP. None of these phrases form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon. The first movement option in the Spellout Algorithm is moving the specifier. In the RELP there is no specifier, so this movement option is irrelevant. In the NOMP, however, there is a specifier, which is moved to the specifier of ACCP. This syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (20b), which corresponds to the *go*. The ACCP is spelled out as *go*, and the ACCP is merged back to the existing syntactic structure, as shown in (26).

(26)

For the dative relative pronoun, the last feature on the functional sequence is the
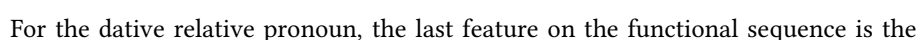
feature F3. Its derivation proceeds the same as the one for the feature F2. The feature F3 is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a DATP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the RELP from the ACCP. The feature F3 is merged in both workspaces, so with the RELP and and with the ACCP. None of these phrases form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon. The first movement option in the Spellout Algorithm is moving the specifier. In the RELP there is no specifier, so this movement option is irrelevant. In the ACCP, however, there is a specifier, which is moved to the specifier of DATP. This syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (20c), which corresponds to the *mu*. The DATP is spelled out as *mu*, and the DATP is merged back to the existing syntactic structure, as shown in (27).

(27)
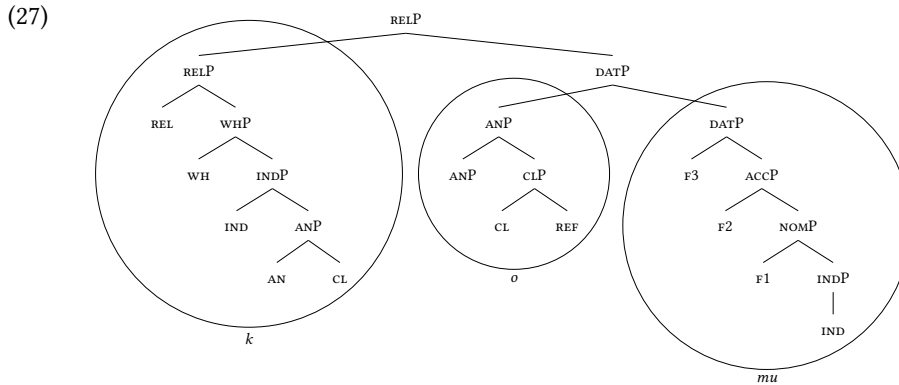
To summarize, I decomposed the relative pronoun into three morphemes: *k*, *o* and the suffix (*go* and *mu*). I showed which features each of the morphemes spells out and what the internal syntax looks like that they are combined into. It is this internal syntax that determines whether the light head can be deleted or not.

7.2 The Polish extra light head

I have suggested that headless relatives are derived from light-headed relatives. The light head or the relative pronoun can be deleted when either of them is structurally contained in the other one. In the introduction of this chapter, I claimed that the internal syntax of light heads in Polish looks as shown in (28).
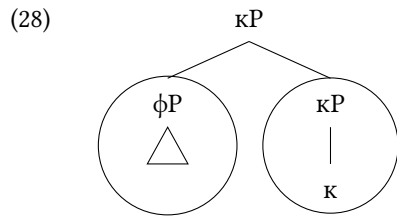
(28)

```
           κP
          /  \
        φP    κP
        △      |
               κ
```

In Chapter 5, I suggested that languages have two possible light heads. Headless relatives in Modern German can only be derived from light-headed relatives that are headed by the light head that consists of the two features φ and κ. In this section, I determine the exact feature content of the light head. As I suggested in Chapter 6 for Modern German, I end up claiming that the phi and case features morpheme of the relative pronoun is the light head in headless relatives. I show the complete structure that I work towards in this section in (29).

(29)

```
                   κP
              /           \
          ANP              κP
         /   \            /   \
       AN     CLP        K    INDP
             /   \              |
           CL     REF          IND
            o                 go/mu
```
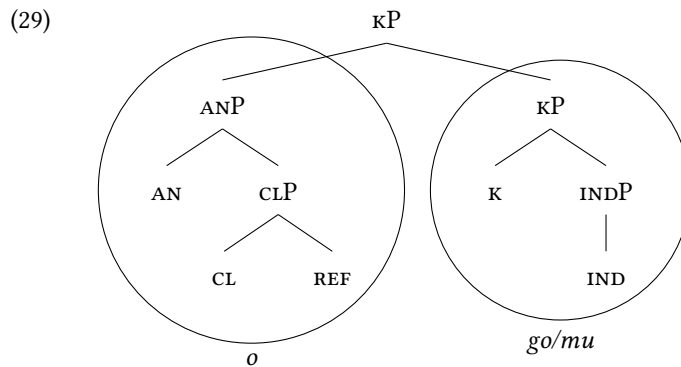
For Modern German, I considered two kinds of headless relatives as the potential source of the headless relative. The first possible scenario would be that the headless relative is derived from an existing light-headed relative, in which case the deletion of the light head would have to be optional. The second possible scenario would be that the headless relative is derived from a light-headed relative that does not surface, in which case the deletion of the light head would have to be obligatory. I consider the first scenario first, and I give two arguments against it. For Modern German I concluded it was the second, and I determined which features this extra light head should consist of. I do the same investigation for Polish, and I reach the same conclusion as I did for Modern German.

Consider the existing Polish light-headed relative in (30).

(30) Jan śpiewa to,   co   Maria śpiewa.
      Jan sings   DEM.M.SG.ACC RP.AN.ACC Maria sings
      'John sings what Mary sings.'   (Polish, Citko 2004: 103)

This light-headed relative, in which the demonstrative is the light head, could poten-

tially be the source of headless relatives.

For Modern German, I gave two arguments for not taking this existing light-headed relative as source of the headless relative. In what follows, I show that these arguments hold for Polish in the same way as they did for Modern German.

First, in headless relatives the morpheme *kolwiek* 'ever' can appear, as shown in (31).

(31) Jan śpiewa co   -kolwiek Maria śpiewa.
      Jan sings RP.AN.ACC ever   Maria sings
      'Jan sings everything Maria sings.'   (Polish, Citko 2004: 116)

Light-headed relatives do not allow this morpheme to be inserted, illustrated in (32).

(32) *Jan śpiewa to,   co   -kolwiek Maria śpiewa.
      Jan sings   DEM.M.SG.ACC RP.AN.ACC ever   Maria sings
      'John sings what Mary sings.'   (Polish, Citko 2004: 116)

Just as for Modern German, I assume that the headless relative is not derived from an ungrammatical structure.[11]

The second argument against the existing light-headed relatives being the source of headless relatives comes from their interpretation. Headless relatives have two possible interpretations, and light-headed relatives have only one of these. just as in Modern German, Polish headless relatives can be analyzed as either universal or definite (Citko 2004: 103). Light-headed relatives, such as the one in (30), only have the definite interpretation.

In the remainder of this section, I discuss the two extra light heads that I compare the internal syntax of in Section 7.3. These are the accusative animate and the dative animate, shown in (33).

---

[11]Citko (2004) takes the complementary distribution of *kolwiek* 'ever' and the demonstrative to mean that they share the same syntactic position. I have nothing to say about the exact syntactic position of *ever*, but in my account it cannot be the head of the relative clause, as this position is reserved for the extra light head. My reason for the incompatibility of *ever* and the demonstrative is that they are semantically incompatible.

For concreteness, I assume *ever* to be situated within the relative clause. Placing it in the main clause generates a different meaning, illustrated by the contrast in meaning between (ia) and (ib) in Czech.

(i)   a. Sním, co -koliv mi   uvaříš.
          eat.1sg what ever I.DAT cook.2SG
          'I will eat whatever you will cook for me.'
      b. Sním co -koliv, co mi   uvaříš.
          eat.1sg what ever   what I.DAT cook.2SG
          'I will eat anything that you will cook for me.'   (Czech, Šimík 2016: 115)

(33) a. o-go
          ELH.AN.ACC

      b. o-mu
          ELH.AN.DAT

As I noted before, these forms do not surface as light heads in a light-headed relative. They do also not surface anywhere else in the language.

In Chapter 6, I showed that the relative pronoun contains two features more than the extra light head, namely WH and REL. This means that the functional sequence for the extra light head is as shown in (34).
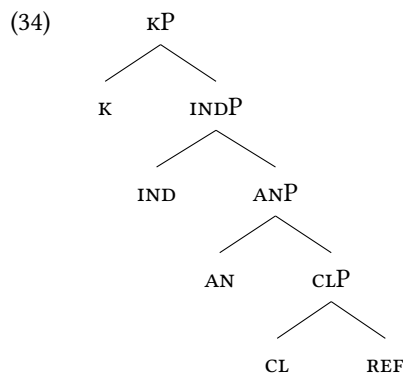
(34)

```
          KP
         /  \
        K    INDP
            /   \
          IND    ANP
                /   \
              AN     CLP
                    /   \
                  CL     REF
```

The functional sequence contains the pronominal feature REF, the gender features CL and AN, the number feature IND and case features K.

I introduced the lexical entries that are required to spell out these features in Section 7.1. I repeat them in (35).

(35) a.

```
        ANP ⟺ o
       /   \
      AN    CLP
           /   \
         CL     REF
```

      b.

```
          ACCP ⟺ go
         /    \
       F2      NOMP
              /    \
            F1      INDP
                     |
                    IND
```

c.   DATP ⟺ *mu*

```
              DATP ⟺ mu
             /    \
           F3     ACCP
                 /    \
               F2    NOMP
                    /    \
                  F1    INDP
                          |
                         IND
```
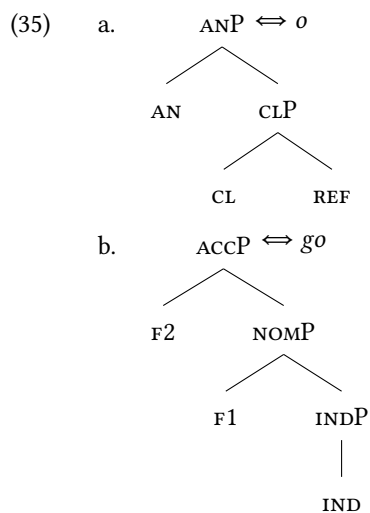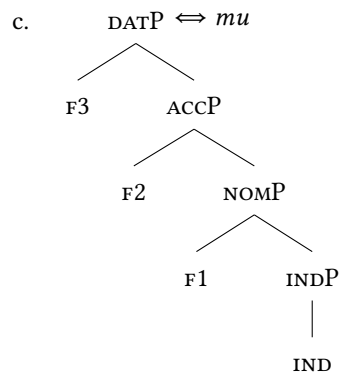
In what follows, I construct the Polish extra light heads. Until the feature IND, the derivation is identical to the one of the relative pronoun. I give the syntactic structure at that point in (36).

(36)

```
                          INDP
                         /  \
             ANP              INDP
            /   \              |
          AN    CLP           IND
               /   \           go
             CL    REF
              o
```
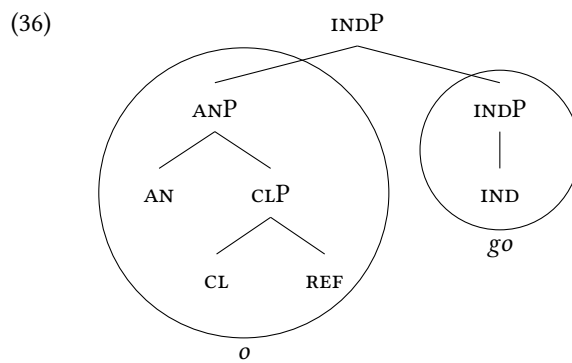
Then, the feature F1 is merged. The feature F1 is merged with the INDP, forming an NOMP. This phrase is not contained in any of the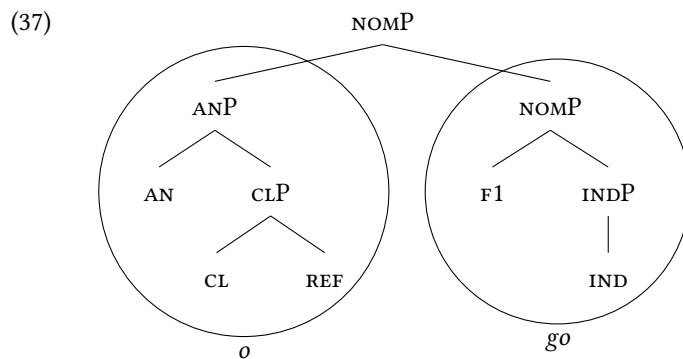 Polish lexical entries. The first movement is tried, and the specifier of the INDP, the ANP, is moved to the specifier of NOMP. This phrase is contained in the lexical tree in (35b), so it is spelled out as *go*, as shown in (37).

(37)

```
                          NOMP
                         /   \
            ANP               NOMP
           /   \             /   \
         AN    CLP         F1    INDP
              /   \                |
            CL    REF             IND
             o                     go
```

For the accusative extra light head, the last feature is merged: the F2. The feature is

merged with the NOMP, forming an ACCP. This phrase is not contained in any of the lexical entries. The first movement is tried, and the specifier of the NOMP, the ANP, is moved to the specifier of ACCP. This phrase is contained in the lexical tree in (35b), so it is spelled out as *go*, as shown in (38).

(38)
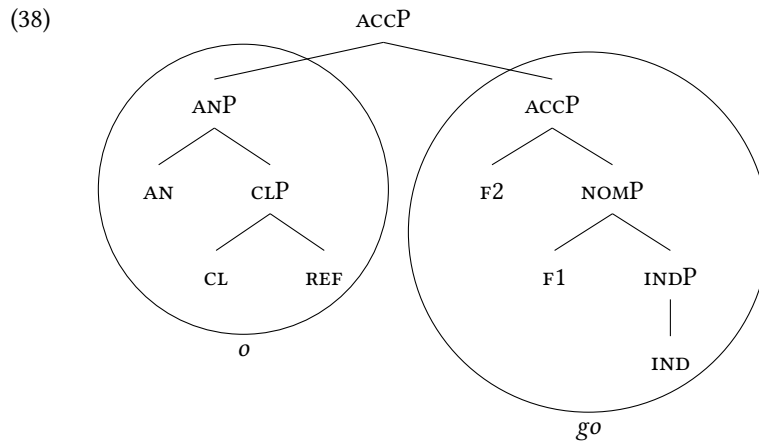
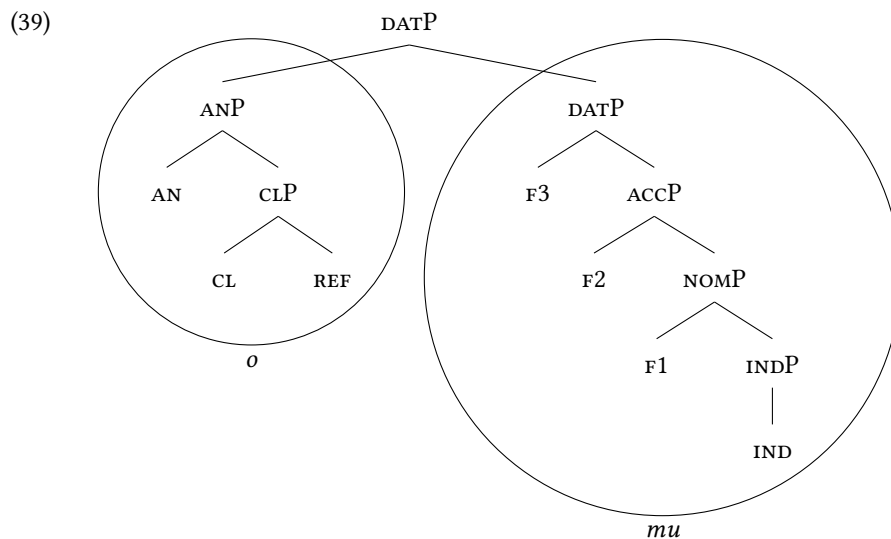For the dative relative pronoun, one more feature is merged: the F3. The feature is merged with the ACCP, forming an DATP. This phrase is not contained in any of the lexical entries. The first movement is tried, and the specifier of the ACCP, the ANP, is moved to the specifier of DATP. This phrase is contained in the lexical tree in (35c), so it is spelled out as *mu*, as shown in (39).

(39)

In sum, Polish headless relatives are derived from a light-headed relative with an extra light head, just as they are in Modern German. The extra light head is spelled out a lexical entry that spells out phi features and another one that spells out case

features. The lexical entries used to spell this light head out are also used to spell out part of the internal syntax of the relative pronoun.

7.3   Comparing light heads and relative pronouns

In this section, I compare the internal syntax of extra light heads to the internal syntax of relative pronouns in Polish. This is the worked out version of the comparisons in Section 5.2.2. What is different here is that I show the comparison for Polish specifically, and that the content of the internal syntax that is being compared is motivated earlier in this chapter.

I give three examples, in which the internal and external case vary. I start with an example with matching cases, in which the internal and the external case are both accusative. Then I give an example in which the internal dative case is more complex than the external accusative case. I end with an example in which the external dative case is more complex than the internal accusative case. I show that the first example is grammatical and that the last two are not. I derive this by showing that only in the first situation the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun, and that it can therefore then be deleted. In the other two examples, neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally contained in the other element. I do not discuss formal containment in this chapter, because it never leads to a successful deletion when structural containment does not.

I start with the matching cases. Consider the example in (40), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external accusative case. The relative clause is marked in bold. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *lubić* 'to like' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *kogo* 'RP.AN.ACC' appears in the accusative case. This is the element that surfaces. The external case is accusative as well, as the predicate *lubić* 'to like' also takes accusative objects. The extra light head *ogo* 'ELH.AN.ACC' appears in the accusative case. It is placed between square brackets because it does not surface.

(40)   Jan lubi   [ogo]   **kogo   -kolkwiek Maria lubi**.
       Jan like.3sg$_{[Acc]}$ ELH.ACC.AN.SG RP.ACC.AN ever   Maria like.3sg$_{[Acc]}$
       'Jan likes whoever Maria likes.'
                       (Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

In Figure 7.3, I give the syntactic structure of the extra light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

The extra light head consists of two morphemes: *o* and *go*. The relative pronoun consists of three morphemes: *k*, *o* and *go*. As usual, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dashed circle around the
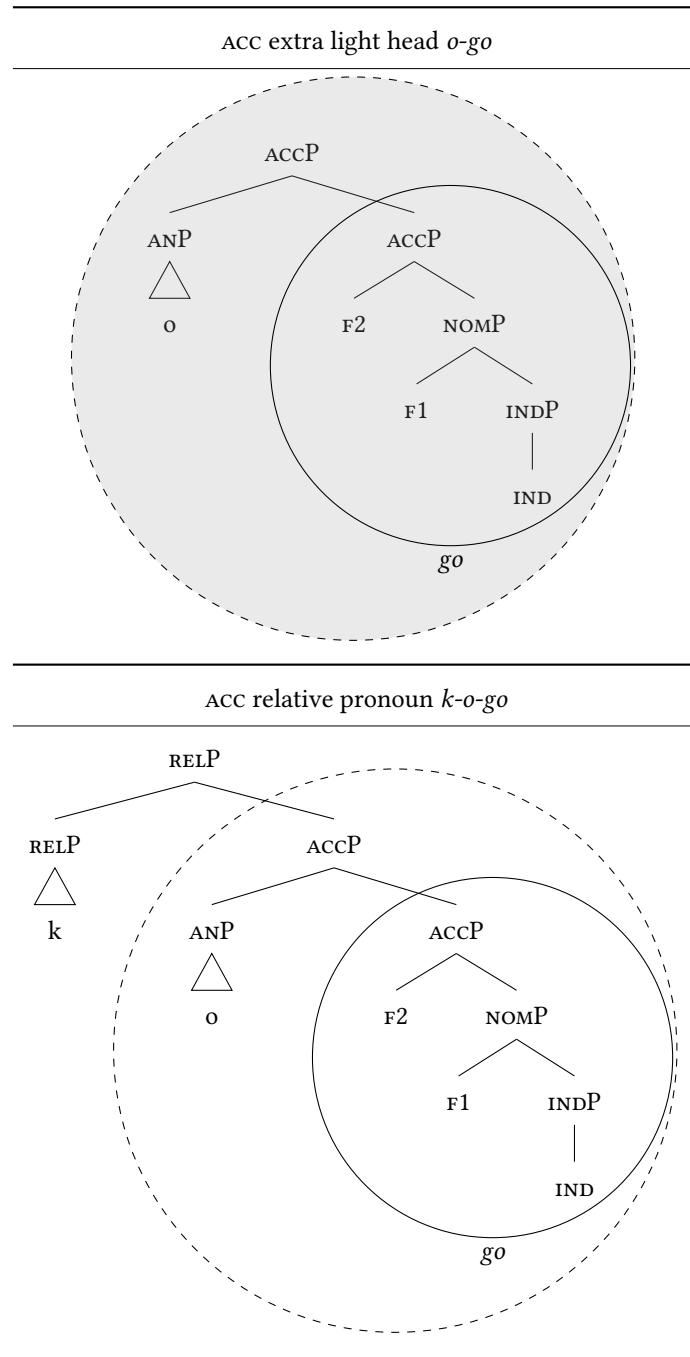
Figure 7.3: Polish EXT_ACC vs. INT_ACC → *kogo*

biggest possible element that is structurally a constituent in both the extra light head
and the relative pronoun.

The extra light head consists of two constituents: the ᴀɴP and the (lower) ᴀᴄᴄP.
Together they form the (higher) ᴀᴄᴄP. This (higher) ᴀᴄᴄP is structurally contained
in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the extra light head can be deleted. I signal the
deletion of the extra light head by marking the content of its circle gray. The surface
pronoun is the relative pronoun that bears the internal case: *kogo*.

I continue with the example in which the internal case is more complex than
the external case. Consider the examples in (41), in which the internal dative case
competes against the external accusative case. The relative clauses are marked in
bold. It is not possible to make a grammatical headless relative in this situation. The
internal case is dative, as the predicate *dokuczać* 'to tease' takes dative objects. The
relative pronoun *komu* 'ʀᴘ.ᴀɴ.ᴅᴀᴛ' appears in the dative case. The external case is
accusative, as the predicate *lubić* 'to like' takes accusative objects. The extra light
head *ogo* 'ᴇʟʜ.ᴀɴ.ᴀᴄᴄ' appears in the accusative case. (41a) is the variant of the
sentence in which the extra light head is absent (indicated by the square brackets)
and the relative pronoun surfaces, which is ungrammatical. (41b) is the variant of the
sentence in which the relative pronoun is absent (indicated by the square brackets)
and the extra light head surfaces, which is ungrammatical too.

(41)   a.   *Jan lubi   [ogo]   **komu   -kolkwiek dokucza**.
             Jan like.3sɢ[ᴀᴄᴄ] ᴇʟʜ.ᴀᴄᴄ.ᴀɴ ʀᴘ.ᴅᴀᴛ.ᴀɴ.sɢ ever   tease.3sɢ[ᴅᴀᴛ]
             'Jan likes whoever he teases.'
                         (Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)
       b.   *Jan lubi   ogo   **[komu]   -kolkwiek dokucza**.
             Jan like.3sɢ[ᴀᴄᴄ] ᴇʟʜ.ᴀᴄᴄ.ᴀɴ ʀᴘ.ᴅᴀᴛ.ᴀɴ.sɢ ever   tease.3sɢ[ᴅᴀᴛ]
             'Jan likes whoever he teases.'
                         (Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

In Figure 7.4, I give the syntactic structure of the extra light head at the top and the
syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

The light head consists of two morphemes: *o* and *go*. The relative pronoun con-
sists of three morphemes: *k*, *o* and *mu*. Again, I circle the part of the structure
that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle,
and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dashed circle around the
biggest possible element that is structurally a constituent in both the extra light head
and the relative pronoun.

In this case, the light head is not a constituent that is structurally contained in the
relative pronoun. The extra light head consists of two constituents: the ᴀɴP and the
(lower) ᴀᴄᴄP. Together they form the (higher) ᴀᴄᴄP. Both of these constituents are
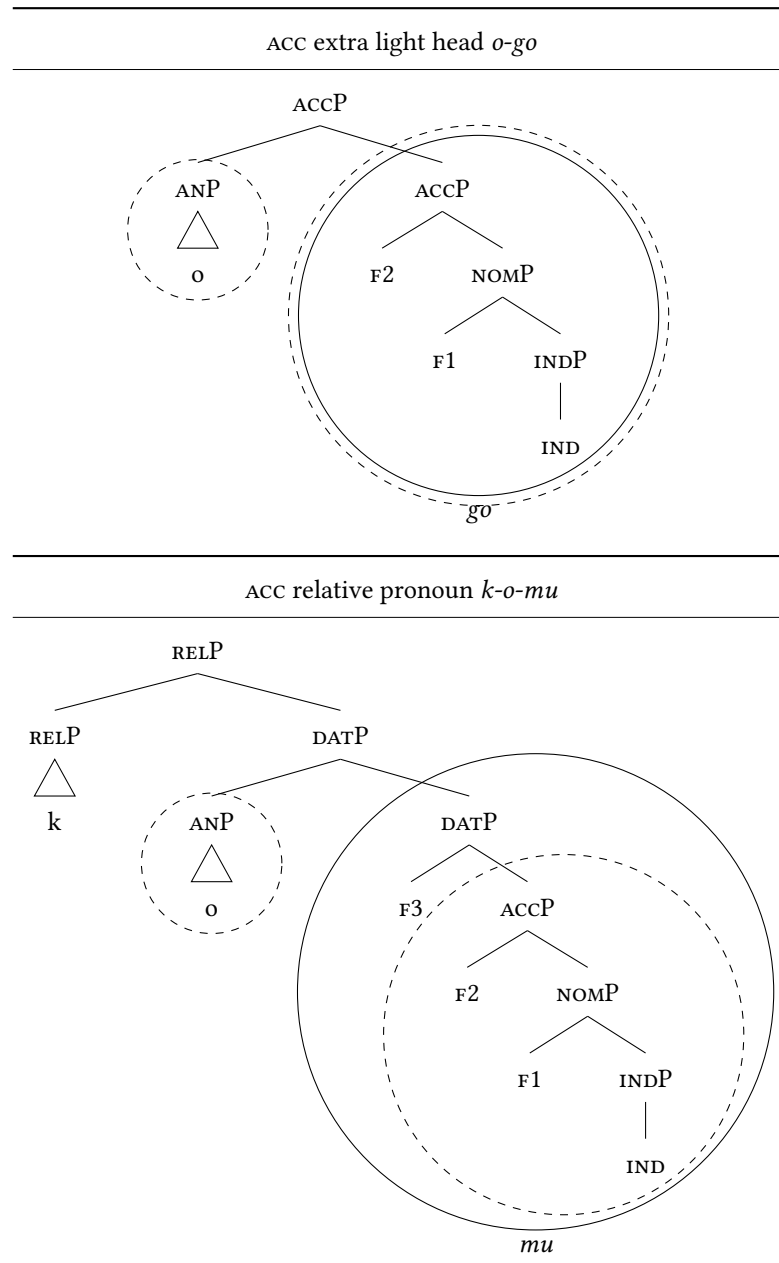
Figure 7.4: Polish EXT_ACC vs. INT_DAT $\nrightarrow$ *ogo/komu*

also constituents that are structurally contained in the relative pronoun. However, the (higher) ᴀᴄᴄP is not a constituent that is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. The constituent in which the ᴀᴄᴄP is contained namely also contains the feature ꜰ3 that makes it a ᴅᴀᴛP. In other words, each feature and even each sub-constituent of the extra light head is contained in the relative pronoun. However, they do not form a single constituent that is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the extra light head cannot be deleted.

Recall from Section 6.4 that this is the crucial example in which Modern German and Polish differ. The contrast lies in that the extra light head in Modern German corresponds to a single lexical entry and in Polish it corresponds to two lexical entries. In Modern German, extra light heads in a less complex case form a constituent that is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. In Polish, they do not. Relative pronouns in a complex case still contain all features of the extra light head in a less complex case, but the extra light head does not form a single constituent that is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. That is, the weaker feature containment requirement is met, but the stronger constituent containment requirement is not. This shows the necessity of formulating the proposal in terms of containment as a single constituent.

The relative pronoun is not a constituent that is structurally or formally contained in the light head. It namely lacks the complete constituent and ʀᴇʟP. Therefore, the extra light cannot be deleted, and the relative pronoun cannot be deleted either. As a result, there is no grammatical headless relative possible.

I end with the example in which the external case is more complex than the internal case. Consider the examples in (42), in which the internal dative case competes against the external accusative case. The relative clauses are marked in bold. It is not possible to make a grammatical headless relative in this situation. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *wpuścić* 'to let' takes accusative objects. The relative pronoun *kogo* 'ʀP.ᴀɴ.ᴀᴄᴄ' appears in the accusative case. The external case is dative, as the predicate *ufać* 'to trust' takes dative objects. The extra light head *omu* 'ᴇʟʜ.ᴀɴ.ᴅᴀᴛ' appears in the dative case. (42a) is the variant of the sentence in which the extra light head is absent (indicated by the square brackets) and the relative pronoun surfaces, which is ungrammatical. (42b) is the variant of the sentence in which the relative pronoun is absent (indicated by the square brackets) and the extra light head surfaces, which is ungrammatical too.

(42) a. *Jan ufa   [omu]   **kogo   -kolkwiek wpuścil   do**
          Jan trust.3sɢ$_{[DAT]}$ ᴇʟʜ.ᴅᴀᴛ.ᴀɴ ʀP.ᴀᴄᴄ.ᴀɴ ever   let.3sɢ$_{[ACC]}$ to

          domu.
          home
          'Jan trusts whoever he let into the house.'

(Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

b. *Jan ufa omu [**kogo**] **-kolkwiek wpuścil do**

Jan trust.3sg[DAT] ELH.DAT.AN RP.ACC.AN ever let.3sg[ACC] to

domu.

home

'Jan trusts whoever he let into the house.'

(Polish, adapted from Citko 2013 after Himmelreich 2017: 17)

In Figure 7.5, I give the syntactic structure of the extra light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

The light head consists of two morphemes: *o* and *mu*. The relative pronoun consists of three morphemes: *k*, *o* and *go*. Again, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is structurally a constituent in both the extra light head and the relative pronoun.

In this case, the light head is not a constituent that is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. The light head consists of two morphemes: *o* and *mu*. The relative pronoun only contains the ACCP, and it lacks the F3 that makes a DATP. Since the weaker feature containment requirement is not met, the stronger constituent containment requirement cannot be met either.

The relative pronoun is not a constituent that is structurally contained in the light head. It namely lacks the complete constituent RELP. Therefore, the extra light cannot be deleted, and the relative pronoun cannot be deleted either. As a result, there is no grammatical headless relative possible.

7.4 Summary and discussion

Polish is an example of a matching type of language. This means that headless relatives are grammatical in the language only when the internal and external case match.

I derive this from the internal syntax of light heads and relative pronouns in Polish. The features of the light head are spelled out by two lexical entries, which respectively spell out phi and case features. The features of the relative pronoun are spelled out by the same lexical entries plus one that amongst others spells out the relative feature. The internal syntax of the Polish light head and relative pronoun are shown in Figure 7.6.

A crucial characteristic of matching languages such as Polish is that they have separate morphemes for phi and case features. Therefore, the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun when the internal and the external case
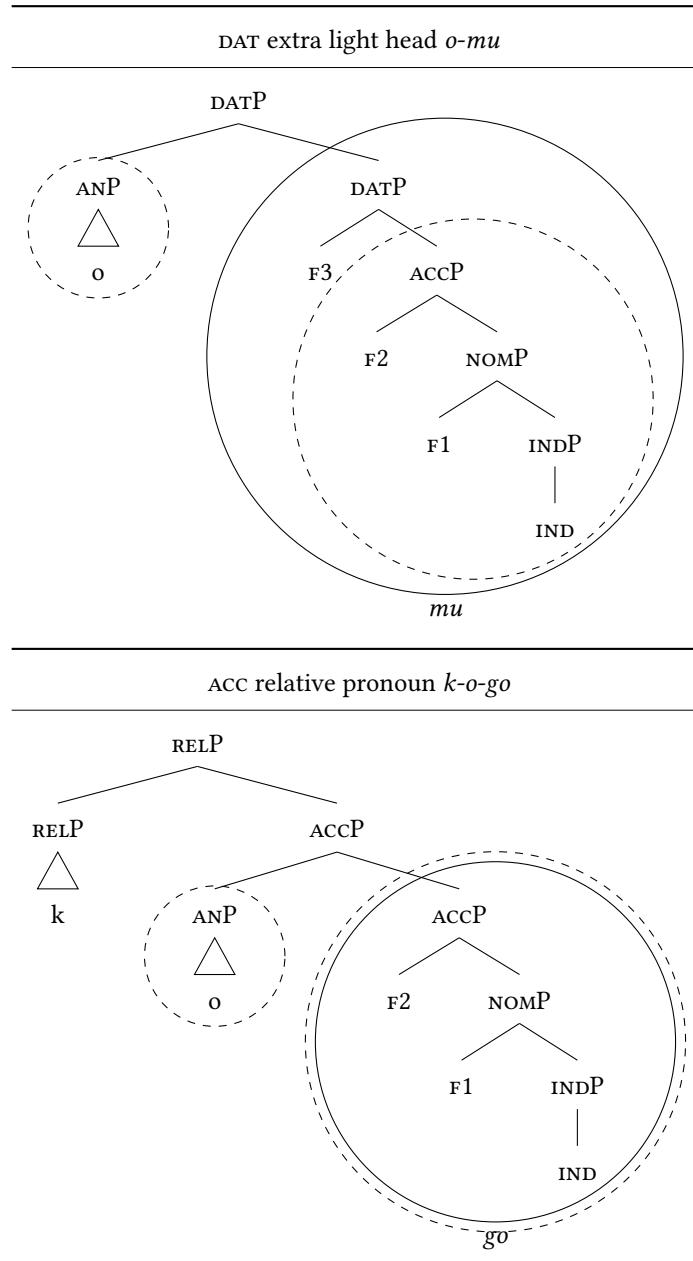
Figure 7.5: Polish EXT_{DAT} vs. INT_{ACC} ↛ *omu*/*kogo*
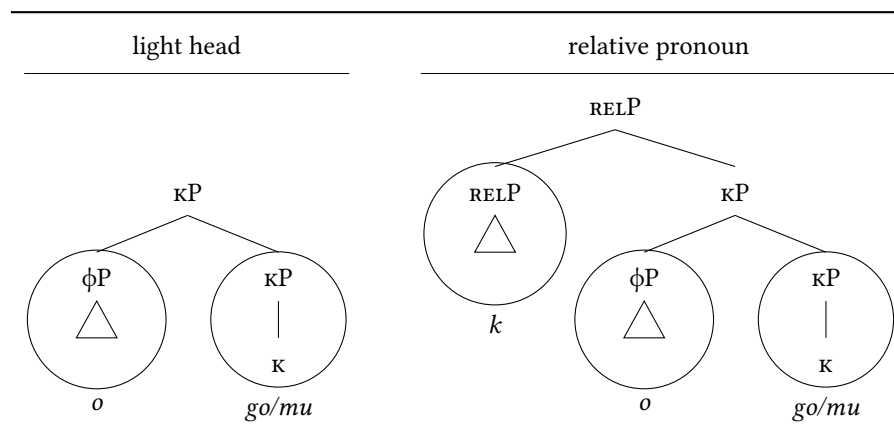
Figure 7.6: LH and RP in Polish (repeat ed)

match. As a result, the light head can be deleted, and the relative pronoun can surface, bearing the internal case. When the internal and external case differ, neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally contained in the other element. None of the elements can be deleted, and there is no grammatical headless relative possible.

In other words, the crucial difference between Modern German and Polish that leads them to be of different language types is that I analyze Modern German extra light heads as monomorphemic (e.g. *n*) and Polish extra light heads as bimorphemic (e.g. *o-go*). This raises the question of whether Polish extra light heads could not be monomorphemic too. A possible hypothesis would be that the morpheme *go* is the extra light head and not *o-go*. A parallel between the Polish *go* (and *mu*) and the Modern German *n* (and *m*) would be that they both surface as pronouns in their respective languages. However, there is a difference between the Polish *go* and Modern German *n*. The Polish *go* is analyzed as a clitic Swan, 2002, whereas the Modern German *n* is analyzed as a weak pronoun (see footnote 6) assume that the weak pronoun in Polish is *o-go* (which combines with the *i* I introduced in Section 7.1 to become a strong pronoun). A question that remains unanswered is why *o-go* does not surface as a weak pronoun.

Chapter 8

Deriving the unrestricted type

In Chapter 5, I suggested that languages of the unrestricted type have two possible light heads. Headless relatives can be derived from light-headed relatives headed by either of the two light heads. The different light heads are part of the derivation under different circumstances. The light-headed relative headed by the first possible light head derives the pattern correctly for the situation in which the internal and external case match and for the situation in which the internal case is more complex than the external case. The light-headed relative headed by the second possible light head derives the pattern correctly for the situation in which the internal and external case match and for the situation in which the external case is more complex than the internal case.

The first possible light head has the same internal syntax as the extra light head in internal-only languages, such as Modern German. It is spelled out by a portmanteau for phi and case features. The relative pronoun is spelled out by that same portmanteau plus a separate lexical entry that spells out the feature REL. This means that the internal syntax of the first possible light head and the relative pronoun looks as shown in Figure 8.1.

These lexical entries lead to the grammaticality pattern shown in Table 8.1.

Table 8.1: Grammaticality in the unrestricted type (part 1)

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	LH-1	RP			
$\kappa_{\text{INT}} = \kappa_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\kappa_1[\phi]]$	$[\text{REL}], [\kappa_1[\phi]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$\kappa_{\text{INT}} > \kappa_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\kappa_1[\phi]]$	$[\text{REL}], [\kappa_2[\kappa_1[\phi]]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$\kappa_{\text{INT}} < \kappa_{\text{EXT}}$	$[\text{REL}], [\kappa_1[\phi]]$	$[\kappa_2[\kappa_1[\phi]]]$	no	none	*

Consider first the situation in which the internal and the external case match. The
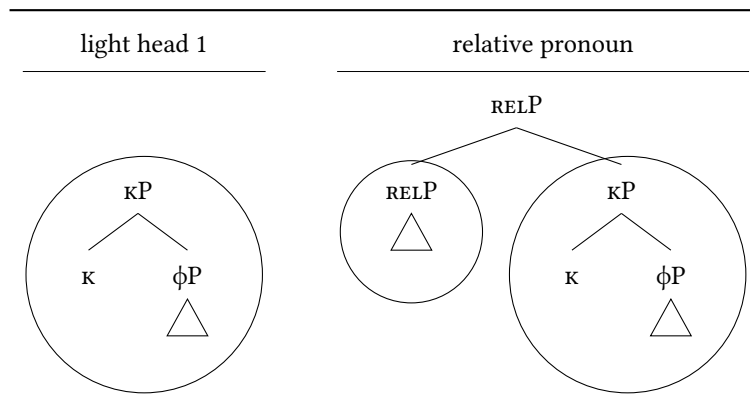
Figure 8.1: LH-1 and RP in the unrestricted type

situation here is identical to the one in the internal-only type of language. The light head consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau. The relative pronoun consists of the same morpheme plus an additional morpheme that spells out the feature REL. The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the light head can be deleted, and the relative pronoun surfaces, bearing the internal case.

Consider now the situation in the internal case wins the case competition. Here the situation is identical to the one in the internal-only type of language too. The light head consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau. The relative pronoun consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau that contains at least one more case feature than the light head (κ_2 in Figure 8.1) plus an additional morpheme that spells out the feature REL. The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that the light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the light head can be deleted, and the relative pronoun surfaces, bearing the internal case.

Consider now the situation in the external case wins the case competition. Also here the situation is identical to the one in the internal-only type of language. The relative pronoun consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau and an additional morpheme that spells out the feature REL. Compared to the relative pronoun, the light head lacks the morpheme that spells out REL, and it contains at least one more case feature (κ_2 in Figure 8.1). The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally contained in the other element. Therefore, none of the elements can be deleted, and there is no headless relative construction possible.

However, in Chapter 3, I showed that Old High German is a language of the unrestricted type. In this chapter, I show that Old High German has light heads and relative pronouns with the type of internal syntax described in Figure 8.1. I give a compact version of the structures in Figure 8.2.

light head 1	relative pronoun

RELP

RELP   κP

△   κ   φP

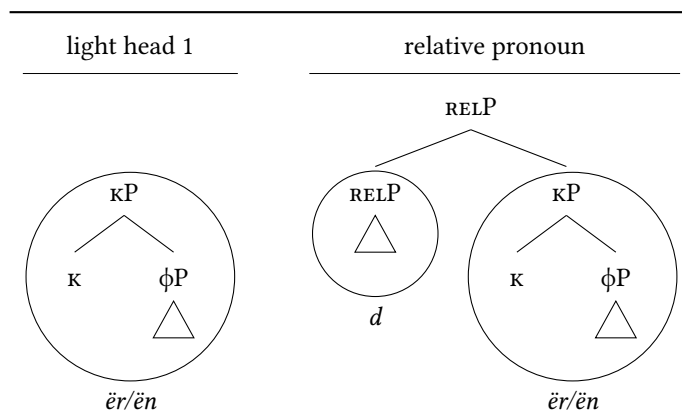*d*   △

κP

κ   φP

△

ër/ën   *ër/ën*

Figure 8.2: LH-1 and RP in Old High German

Consider the first possible light head in Figure 8.2. This light head (i.e. phi and case features) in Old High German is spelled out by a single morpheme, indicated by the circle around the structure. It is spelled out as *ër* or *ën*, depending on which case it realizes. Consider the relative pronoun in Figure 8.2. The relative pronoun in Old High German consists of two morphemes: the constituent that forms the light head (i.e. phi and case features) and the RELP, again indicated by the circles. The constituent that forms the light head has the same spellout as in the light head (*ën* or *m*), and the RELP is spelled out as *d*. Throughout this chapter, I discuss the exact feature content of the first possible light head and the relative pronoun, I give lexical entries for them, and I show how these lexical entries lead to the internal syntax shown in Figure 8.2.

The second possible light head differs from the first possible head in that it contains a feature more than the relative pronoun instead of a feature less. I call the additional feature X. The phi and case features are still spelled out by the phi and case portmanteau. The XP that contains the feature X and the feature REL is spelled out by its own lexical entry. The relative pronoun is spelled out by that same phi and case portmanteau plus a separate lexical entry that spells out the feature REL. Crucially, the morpheme that spells out the XP has the same spellout as the morpheme that spells out the feature REL (here *X*). This means that the internal syntax of the second possible light head and the relative pronoun looks as shown in Figure 8.1.

These lexical entries lead to the grammaticality pattern shown in Table 8.2.

Consider first the situation in which the internal and the external case match. The light head consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau plus a morpheme that spells out REL and X, which corresponds to phonological form X. The relative pronoun consists of the same phi and case feature morpheme and a morpheme that spells out the feature REL, which corresponds to the phonological form X too. The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that the light head and the relative pronoun
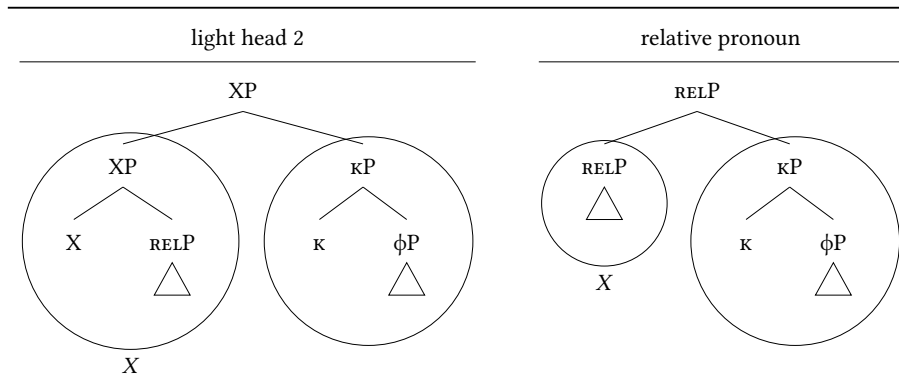
Figure 8.3: LH-2 and RP in the unrestricted type

Table 8.2: Grammaticality in the unrestricted type (part 2)

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	LH-2	RP			
$\kappa_{INT} = \kappa_{EXT}$	/X/, /Y/	/X/, /Y/	form	RP	LH_{EXT}
$\kappa_{INT} > \kappa_{EXT}$	/X/, /Y/	/X/, /Z/	no	none	*
$\kappa_{INT} < \kappa_{EXT}$	/X/, /Y/	/X/, /Y/	form	RP	LH_{EXT}

are syncretic, so the relative pronoun is formally contained in the light head. Therefore, the relative pronoun can be deleted, and the light head surfaces, bearing the external case.[1]

Consider now the situation in which the internal case wins the case competition. The light head consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau plus a morpheme that spells out REL and X, which corresponds to phonological form X. The relative pronoun consists of a phi and case feature portmanteau that contains at least one more case feature than the light head (κ_2 in Figure 8.2) plus a morpheme that spells out the feature REL, which corresponds to the phonological form X too. The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally or formally contained in the other element. Therefore, none of the elements can be deleted, and there is no headless relative construction possible.

Finally, consider the situation in which the external case wins the case competition. The relative pronoun consists of the same phi and case feature morpheme and a morpheme that spells out the feature REL, which corresponds to the phonological

---

[1]The same holds the other way around: the light head is also formally contained in the relative pronoun, so the light head can be deleted too. Later in this section I come back to why it is the relative pronoun that is deleted here and not the light head.

form *X*. Compared to the relative pronoun, the light head has in addition the feature X, which is spelled out as *X*, and it contains at least one more case feature (κ_2 in Figure 6.1). The lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that neither the light head nor the relative pronoun is structurally or formally contained in the other element. Therefore, none of the elements can be deleted, and there is no headless relative construction possible. However, the derivation in which the external case is more complex than the internal one goes through a stage in which the internal and the external case match. Therefore, at that stage, these lexical entries create a syntactic structure such that the light head and the relative pronoun are syncretic, so the relative pronoun is formally contained in the light head. Therefore, the relative pronoun can be deleted, and the light head remains, bearing external case. Then, the remaining case features are merged to the light head, and the light head surfaces, bearing the more complex external case.

In Chapter 3, I showed that Old High German is a language of the unrestricted type. In this chapter, I show that Old High German has light heads and relative pronouns with the type of internal syntax described in Figure 8.3. I give a compact version of the structures in Figure 8.4.
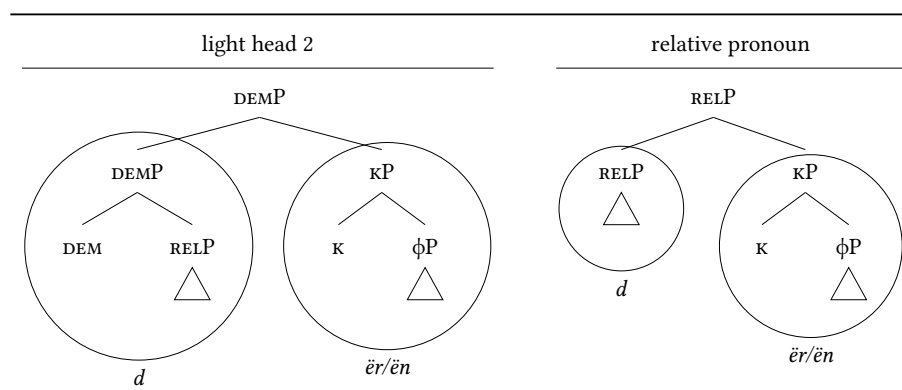
Figure 8.4: LH-2 and RP in Old High German

The phrase I so far called XP is replaced here by DEMP. I come back to this in Section 8.2.2. Consider the second possible light head in Figure 8.4. The light head (i.e. the phi and case features and DEMP) is spelled out by two morphemes, which are both circled. The DEMP is spelled out as *d* and the phi and case features are spelled out as *ër* or *ën*, depending on which case they realize. Consider the relative pronoun in Figure 8.4. The relative pronoun in Old High German consists of two morphemes: the constituent that spells out phi and case features and the constituent that spells out the feature REL, again indicated by the circles. The constituent that spells out phi and case features has the same spellout as in the light head (*ër* or *ën*), and the RELP is spelled out as *d*. Throughout this chapter, I discuss, just as I do for the first

possible light head, the exact feature content of light heads and relative pronouns, I give lexical entries for them, and I show how these lexical entries lead to the internal syntax shown in Figure 8.4.

The chapter is structured as follows. First, I discuss the relative pronoun. I decompose it into the two morphemes I showed in Figure 8.2 and Figure 8.4. Then I show which features each of the morphemes corresponds to. Next, I discuss the two possible light heads. I argue that Old High German headless relatives can, unlike Modern German and Polish headless relatives, be derived from two different light-headed relatives. One of these light-headed relatives does not surface in the language, and the other one does. The light head in the light-headed relative that does not surface is the extra light head. The features that form the Old High German extra light head and relative pronoun are the same ones that form the Modern German and Polish extra light head and relative pronoun. I show that the Old High German extra light head has the same internal syntax as the Modern German extra light head: it corresponds to one of the morphemes of the relative pronoun (the кP in Figure 8.2).

The second light-headed relative that headless relatives can be derived from is one headed by a demonstrative. Remember that Modern German and Polish also have this light-headed relative in their language, but headless relatives cannot be derived from them. Crucially, headless relatives in Old High German can be derived from light-headed relatives headed by a demonstrative because the demonstrative and the relative pronoun are syncretic in the language. Both of them start with a *d*, followed by a phi and case feature morpheme. This syncretism leads Old High German to be an unrestricted type of language.

Next, I compare the internal syntax of the extra light head and the demonstrative to that of the relative pronoun. I show that the extra light head can be deleted via structural containment when the internal case and external case match and when the internal case is more complex than the external case. The relative pronoun can be deleted via formal containment when the internal case and external case match and when the internal case is more complex than the external case via formal containment. In order to account for the more complex external case surfacing, I show the larger syntactic structure of light-headed and headless relatives. Finally, I reflect on the assumption that two different light-headed relatives can be the source of Old High German headless relatives. I investigate whether there is support for this assumption coming from their interpretation and the larger syntactic structure.

8.1   The Old High German German relative pronoun

In the introduction of this chapter, I suggested that the internal syntax of relative pronouns in Old High German looks as shown in (1).

(1)

RELP

RELP
△
d

κP

κ φP
△

ër/ën
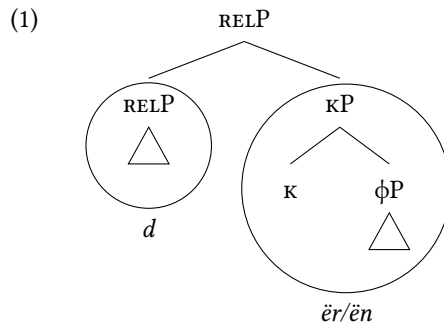
As I also showed in Chapter 6 for Modern German and in Chapter 7 for Polish, relative pronouns contain more features than only REL, φ and κ. In this section, I show that Old High German relative pronouns consist of the same features. The crucial claim I made in Chapter 5 remains unchanged: unrestricted languages (of which Old High German is an example) have a portmanteau for the features that correspond to phi and case features and a morpheme that spells out the features that the first light head does not contain. I show the complete structure that I work towards in this section in (2).

(2)

RELP

RELP

REL WHP

WH IND
d

κP

κ INDP

IND ANP

AN CLP

CL REF

ër/ën
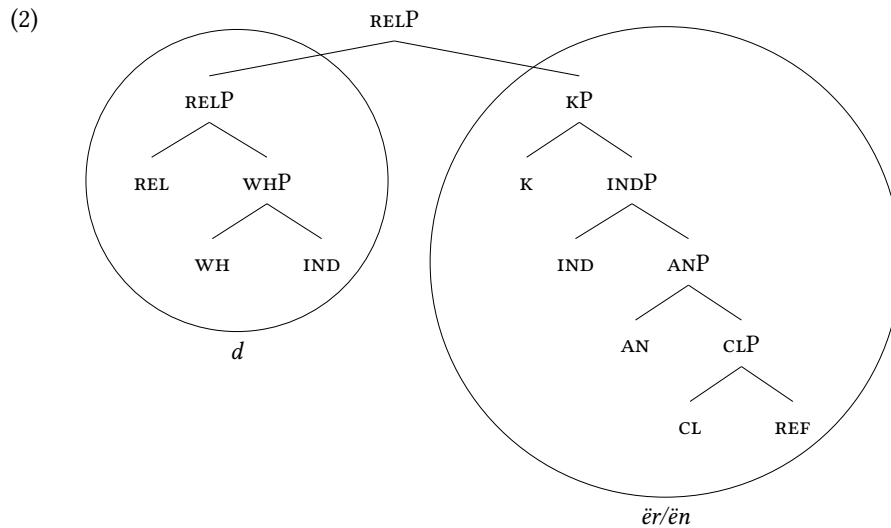
I discuss two relative pronouns: the masculine singular nominative and the masculine singular accusative. These are the two forms that I compare the internal syntax of in Section 8.3.[2] I show them in (3).

---

[2]For reasons of space, I do not discuss the animate dative *dëmu/dëmo* 'RP.M.SG.DAT'. I assume its analysis is identical to the one I propose for *dër* and *dën*, except that *dëmu/dëmo* spells out more case features. I work out the proposal for *dër* and *dën*, because I have not found an example in which the internal dative case wins over the external accusative case.

(3)   a.   d-ër
           'RP.M.SG.NOM'

      b.   d-ën
           'RP.M.SG.ACC'

I decompose the relative pronouns into two morphemes: the *d* and the suffix (*ër* or
ën). For each morpheme, I discuss which features they spell out, I give their lexical
entries, and I show how I construct the relative pronouns by combining the separate
morphemes.

I start with the suffixes: *ër* and *ën*. These two morphemes correspond to what
I called the phi and case feature portmanteau in Chapter 5 and the introduction to
this chapter. I argue that the phi features actually correspond to gender features,
number features and pronominal features. Adding this all up, I claim that the suf-
fixes correspond to number features, gender features, pronominal features and case
features. Consider Table 8.3, which shows Old High German relative pronouns in
two numbers, three genders and three cases.[3]

Table 8.3: Relative pronouns in Old High German (Braune 2018: 339)

	N.SG	M.SG	F.SG
NOM	d-aẓ	d-ër	d-iu
ACC	d-aẓ	d-ën	d-ea/d-ia
DAT	d-ëmu/d-ëmo	d-ëmu/d-ëmo	d-ëru/d-ëro
	N.PL	**M.PL**	**F.PL**
NOM	d-iu	d-ē/d-ea/d-ia/d-ie	d-eo/-io
ACC	d-iu	d-ē/d-ea/d-ia/d-ie	d-eo/-io
DAT	d-ēm/d-ēn	d-ēm/d-ēn	d-ēm/d-ēn

The suffixes in Table 8.3 change depending on number, gender and case. These
different suffixes can be observed in several contexts besides relative pronouns. Table
8.4 gives an overview of the adjective *jung* 'young' in Old High German.

For some forms, the table gives two different forms, the first one being nomi-
nal inflection and the second one being pronominal inflection (Braune, 2018). The
pronominal endings are the same as can be observed in the Table 8.3. Note here that
the situation in Old High German is slightly from the one in Modern German, in
which only the final consonant expresses gender, number and case features.

---

[3]*d* can also be written as *dh* and *th*, *ë* and *ē* can also be *e* and *é* (Braune 2018: 339).

Table 8.4: Adjectives on *-a-/-ō-* in Old High German Braune 2018: 300

	N.SG	M.SG	F.SG
NOM	jung, jung-az̧	jung, jung-ēr	jung, jung-iu
ACC	jung, jung-az̧	jung-an	jung-a
DAT	jung-emu/jung-emo	jung-emu/jung-emo	jung-eru/jung-ero
	N.PL	M.PL	F.PL
NOM	jung-iu	jung-e	jung-o
ACC	jung-iu	jung-e	jung-o
DAT	jung-ēm/jung-ēn	jung-ēm/jung-ēn	jung-ēm/jung-ēn

Besides gender, number and case features, I assume that the suffix also contains pronominal features. I do not only do so because the suffix is called pronominal inflection (*Pronominalflexion*) in the literature (Braune 2018: 338), but also because it appears in other pronominal forms too, such as possessives (Braune 2018: 337-338), demonstratives with the *dës*-stem (Braune 2018: 342) and interrogatives (Braune 2018: 345).

I give the lexical entries for *ër* and *ën* in (4a) and (4b). The *ër* is the nominative masculine singular, so it spells out the features REF, CL, AN, IND and F1. The *ën* is the accusative masculine singular, so it spells out the features that the *ër* spells out plus F2.

(4) a.   NOMP ⟺ *ër*

b.　　ACCP ⟺ *ën*

```
          ACCP ⟺ ën
          /    \
        F2      NOMP
               /    \
             F1      INDP
                    /    \
                 IND      ANP
                         /    \
                       AN      CLP
                              /    \
                            CL      REF
```
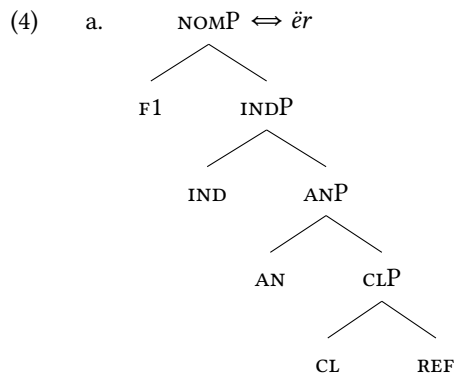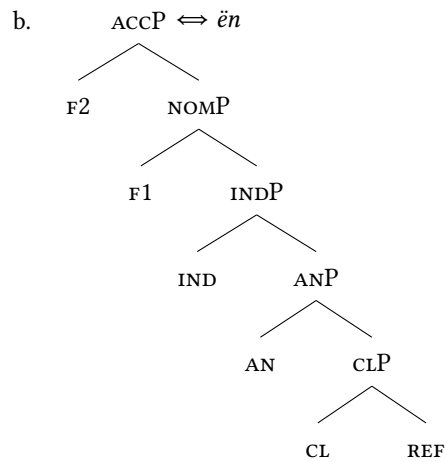
I continue with the morpheme *d*. This morpheme corresponds to what I called the REL-feature in Chapter 5 and in the introduction to this chapter. I argue that this morpheme actually spells out the feature REL, the feature WH and a number feature.

Relative and demonstrative pronouns are syncretic in Old High German (Braune 2018: 338). They contain the morpheme *d*, which is responsible for establishing a definite reference. The feature REL is present to establish a relation. I assume that *d* also spells out the feature IND. This is a theory-internal assumption that is required by the spellout algorithm. The feature IND is copied from the first workspace when I build a complex specifier.

In sum, the morpheme *d* corresponds to the features REL, WH and IND as shown in (5).

(5)　　RELP ⟺ *d*

```
        RELP ⟺ d
        /    \
      REL     WHP
             /    \
           WH      IND
```
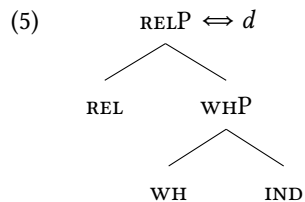
In what follows, I show how the Old High German relative pronouns are constructed. I follow the same functional sequence as I did for Modern German and Polish. I give the functional sequence in (6).

(6)

```
              кP
            /    \
           K     RELP
                /    \
              REL    WHP
                    /    \
                  WH     INDP
                        /    \
                      IND    ANP
                            /    \
                          AN     CLP
                                /    \
                              CL     REF
```
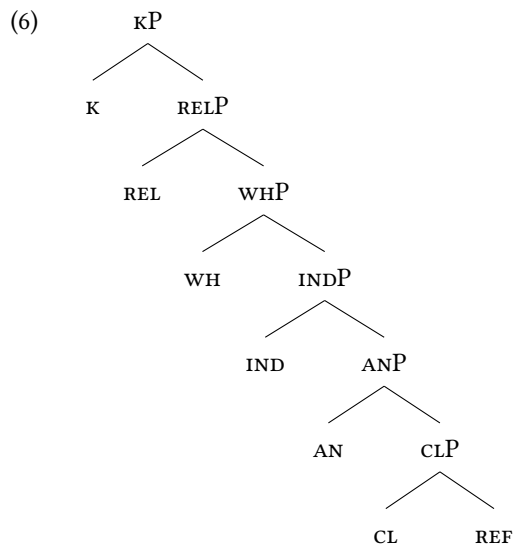
Of course, the spellout procedure remains the same. The outcome is different because of the different lexical entries Old High German has. I repeat the available lexical entries in (7).
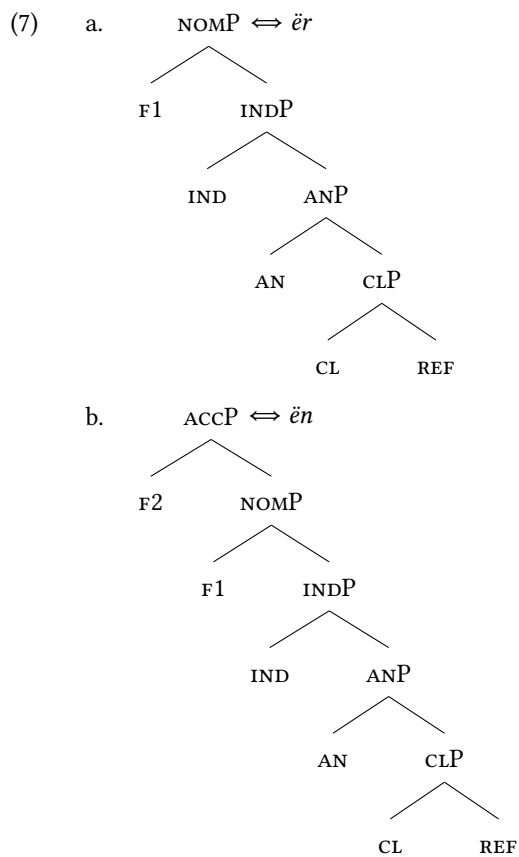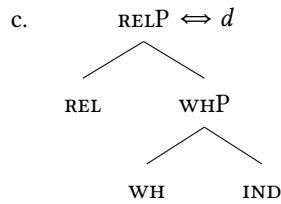
(7)   a.

```
        NOMP  ⟺  ër
       /    \
      F1    INDP
           /    \
         IND    ANP
               /    \
             AN     CLP
                   /    \
                 CL     REF
```

b.

```
          ACCP  ⟺  ën
         /    \
        F2    NOMP
             /    \
            F1    INDP
                 /    \
               IND    ANP
                     /    \
                   AN     CLP
                         /    \
                       CL     REF
```

c.   RELP ⟺ *d*

             REL   WHP

                  WH   IND

Starting from the bottom, the first two features that are merged are REF and CL, creating a CLP. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (7a), which corresponds to *ër*. Therefore, the CLP is spelled out as *ër*, which I do not show here. Then, the feature AN is merged, and a ANP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (7a). Therefore, the ANP is spelled out as *ër*, which I do not show here either. Then, the feature IND is merged, and a INDP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (7a). Therefore, the INDP is spelled out as *ër*, which I show in (8).
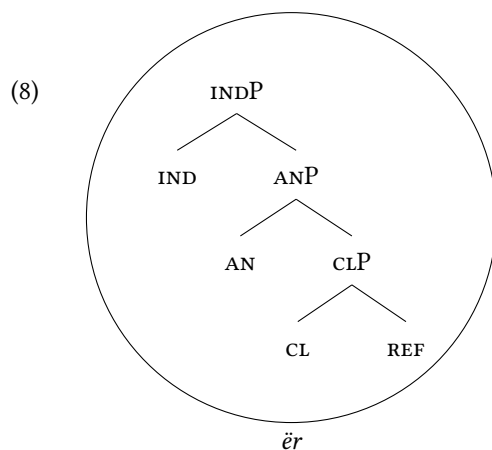
(8)

                    INDP

               IND   ANP

                     AN   CLP

                          CL   REF

                          ër

Next, the feature WH is merged. The derivation for this feature resembles the derivation of WH in Modern German and Polish. The feature is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a WHP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Therefore, in a second workspace, the feature WH is merged with the feature IND (the previous syntactic feature on the functional sequence) into a WHP. This syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (7c), which corresponds to the *d*. Therefore, the WHP is spelled out as *d*. The newly created phrase is merged as a whole with the already existing structure, and projects to the top node, as shown in (9).

(9)

```
                              wHP
                  ╱───────────────╲─────╲
              wHP                    INDP
             ╱  ╲                   ╱    ╲
          WH      IND            IND      ANP
                                        ╱    ╲
              d                       AN      CLP
                                            ╱    ╲
                                          CL      REF

                                              ër
```
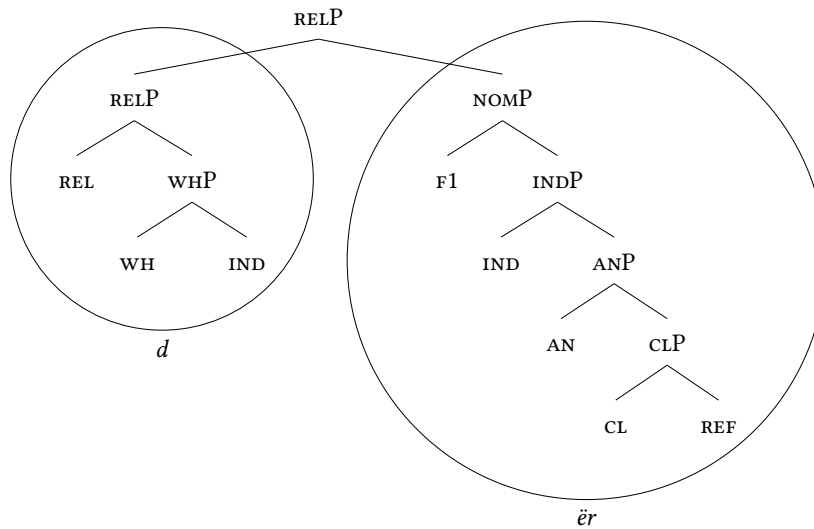
The next feature in the functional sequence is the feature REL. The derivation for this feature resembles the derivation of REL in Modern German and Polish. The feature is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a RELP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the wHP from the INDP. The feature REL is merged in both workspaces, so with wHP and and with INDP. The spellout of REL is successful when it is combined with the wHP. It namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (7c), which corresponds to the *d*. The RELP is spelled out as *d*, and it is merged back to the existing syntactic structure.

For the nominative relative pronoun, the last feature is merged: the F1. This feature should somehow end up merging with INDP, because it forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (7a), which corresponds to the *ër*. This is achieved via Backtracking in which phrases are split up and going through the Spellout Algorithm. I go through the derivation step by step. The feature F1 is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a NOMP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the RELP from the INDP. The feature F1 is merged in both workspaces, so with the RELP and and with the INDP. The spellout of F1 is successful when it is combined with the INDP. It namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (7a), which corresponds to the *ër*. The NOMP is spelled out as *ër*, and all constituents are merged back into the existing syntactic structure, as shown in (10).

(10)

RELP

RELP
REL   WHP
WH   IND
d

NOMP
F1   INDP
IND   ANP
AN   CLP
CL   REF
ër

For the accusative relative pronoun, the last feature is merged: the F2. The derivation for F2 resembles the derivation of F1. The feature is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a ACCP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the RELP from the NOMP. The feature F2 is merged in both workspaces, so with the RELP and and with the NOMP. The spellout of F2 is successful when it is combined with the NOMP. It namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (7b), which corresponds to the *ën*. The ACCP is spelled out as *ën*, and all constituents are merged back into the existing syntactic structure, as shown in (11).

(11)

RELP

RELP
REL   WHP
WH   IND
d

ACCP
F2   NOMP
F1   INDP
IND   ANP
AN   CLP
CL   REF
ën
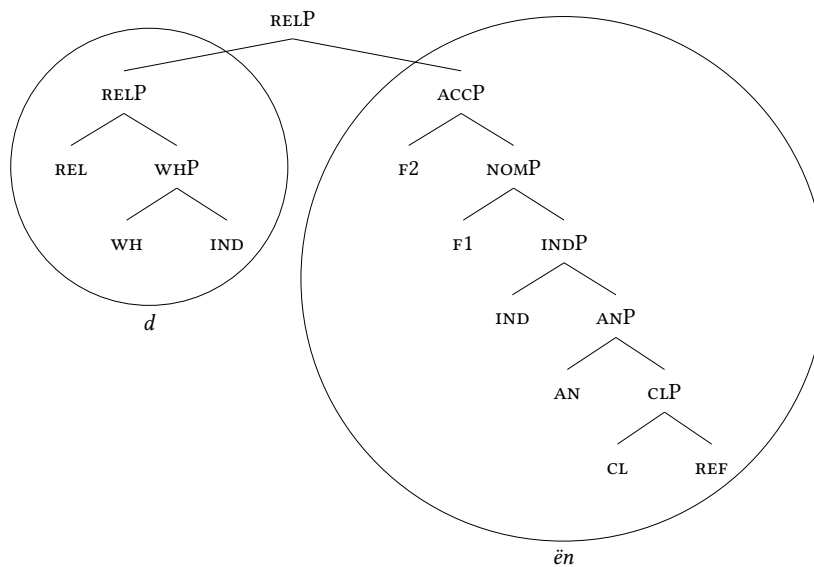
To summarize, I decomposed the relative pronoun into the two morphemes: *d* and the suffix (*ër* and *ën*). I showed which features each of the morphemes spells out and what the internal syntax looks like that they are combined into. It is this internal syntax that determines whether the light head or the relative pronoun can be deleted or not.

8.2 The Old High German light heads

I have suggested that headless relatives are derived from light-headed relatives. The light head or the relative pronoun can be deleted when either of them is contained in the other one. In Chapter 5 and in the introduction of this chapter, I suggested that Old High German has two possible light heads: the extra light head and the demonstrative. That means that there are also two different light-headed relatives that can be the source of the headless relative.

For Modern German and Polish, I considered two kinds of light-headed relatives as the potential source of the headless relative. The first possible scenario would be that the headless relative is derived from an existing light-headed relative, in which case the deletion of the light head would have to be optional. The second possible scenario would be that the headless relative is derived from a light-headed relative that does not surface, in which case the deletion of the light head would have to be obligatory. I concluded for Modern German and Polish that the second scenario is the one that is attested in the languages. For Old High German I assume that headless relatives can be derived from both kinds of light-headed relatives.

In Section 8.2.1, I introduce the extra light head that does not surface in the language in a light-headed relative as the first possible light head. In Section 8.2.2, I introduce the demonstrative that does surface in the language in a light-headed relative as the second possible light head.

8.2.1 The extra light head

As I mentioned in the introduction of this section, headless relatives in Old High German can be derived from two different light-headed relatives: one that does not surface in the language and one that does surface in the language. In this section I discuss the first one, the light-headed relative that does not surface in the language. This light-headed relative is headed by the extra light head, just as the ones that are attested in Modern German and Polish.[4]

---

[4]In the sections on extra light heads in Modern German and Polish I discussed the possible interpretations of headless relatives in these languages. In this section I do not do so for Old High German. I come back to this in Section 8.4.

In the introduction of this chapter, I suggested that the extra light head (or the first possible light head as I called it there) in the unrestricted type of language consists of two features: ϕ and κ. I claimed that the internal syntax of the extra light head is as shown in (12).

(12)

```
        κP
       /  \
      κ    φP
            △
           ─────
           ër/ën
```
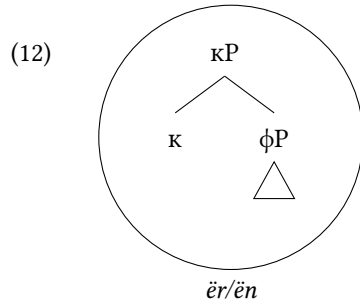
In this section, I determine the exact feature content of the extra light head. I end up claiming that the extra light head corresponds to the phi and case feature morpheme of the relative pronoun, just as it does in Modern German and Polish. I show the complete structure that I work towards in this section in (13).

(13)

```
          κP
         /  \
        κ   INDP
            /  \
          IND  ANP
               /  \
              AN  CLP
                  /  \
                 CL  REF
               ─────────
                 ër/ën
```
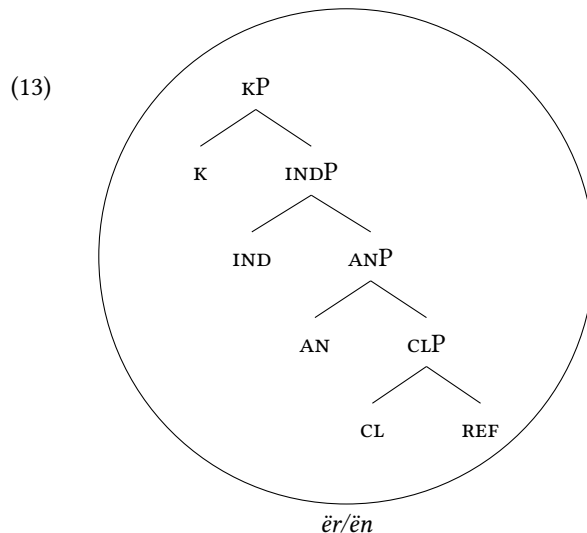
The internal syntax of the Old High German extra light head is identical to the internal syntax of the Modern German extra light head. They both form a single phi and case feature portmanteau.

In the remainder of this section, I discuss the two extra light heads that I compare the internal syntax of in Section 8.3. As I noted before, these forms do not surface as light heads in a light-headed relative. They do also not surface anywhere else in the language. The are the nominative masculine singular and the accusative masculine

singular, shown in (14).[5]

(14) a. ër
          ELH.M.SG.NOM

      b. ën
          ELH.M.SG.ACC

Just as in Modern German and Polish, the functional sequence for the extra light head is as shown in (15).
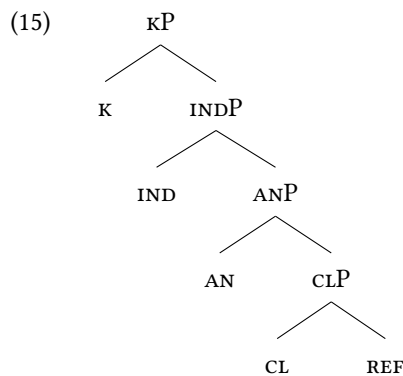
(15)

```
            κP
          /    \
        κ       INDP
               /    \
             IND     ANP
                   /    \
                 AN      CLP
                       /    \
                     CL      REF
```

The functional sequence contains the pronominal feature REF, the gender features CL and AN, the number feature IND and case features κ.

I introduced the lexical entries that are required to spell out these features in Section 8.1. I repeat them in (16).
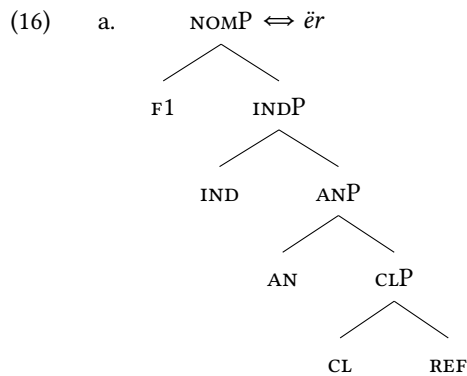
(16) a.

```
          NOMP ⟺ ër
          /    \
        F1      INDP
               /    \
             IND     ANP
                   /    \
                 AN      CLP
                       /    \
                     CL      REF
```

---

[5] Again, for reasons of space, I do not discuss the dative form. I assume its analysis is identical to the one I propose for the accusative and the dative.

b.   ACCP ⟺ *ën*

```
          ACCP
         /    \
        F2    NOMP
             /    \
           F1    INDP
                /    \
              IND    ANP
                    /    \
                  AN     CLP
                        /    \
                      CL     REF
```

In what follows, I construct the Old High German extra light heads. Until the feature IND, the derivation is identical to the one of the relative pronoun. I give the syntactic structure at that point in (17).

(17)

```
          INDP
         /    \
       IND    ANP
             /    \
           AN     CLP
                 /    \
               CL     REF
```

ër
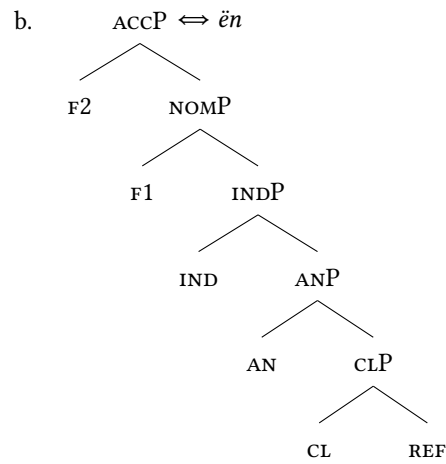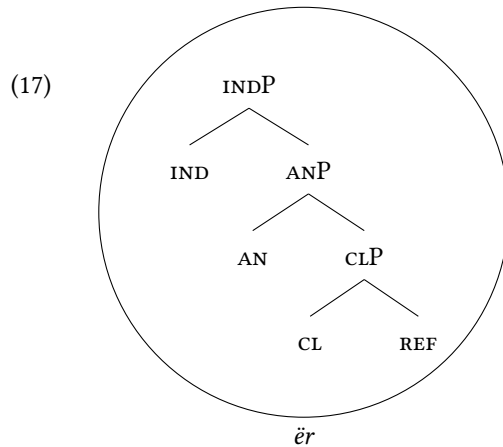
The last feature that is merged for the nominative extra light head is the F1. It is merged, and the NOMP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (16a). Therefore, the NOMP is spelled out as *ër*, as shown in (18).

(18)

```
        NOMP
       /    \
      F1    INDP
           /    \
         IND    ANP
               /    \
             AN     CLP
                   /    \
                 CL     REF
```

ër
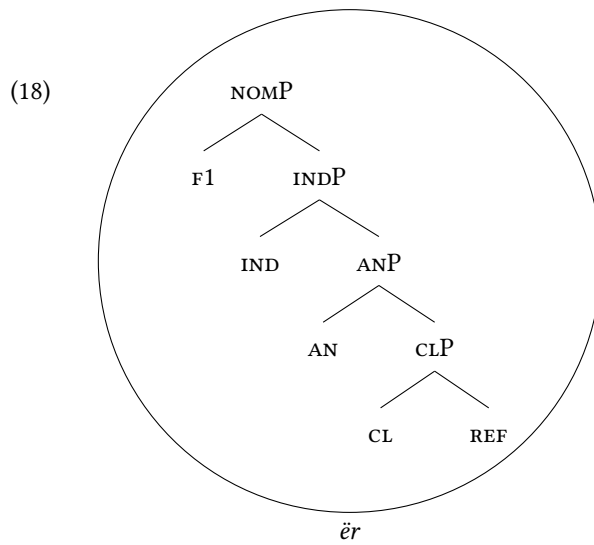
For the accusative extra light head, one more feature is merged: the F2. It is merged, and the ACCP is created. The syntactic structure forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (16b). Therefore, the ACCP is spelled out as *ën*, as shown in (19).
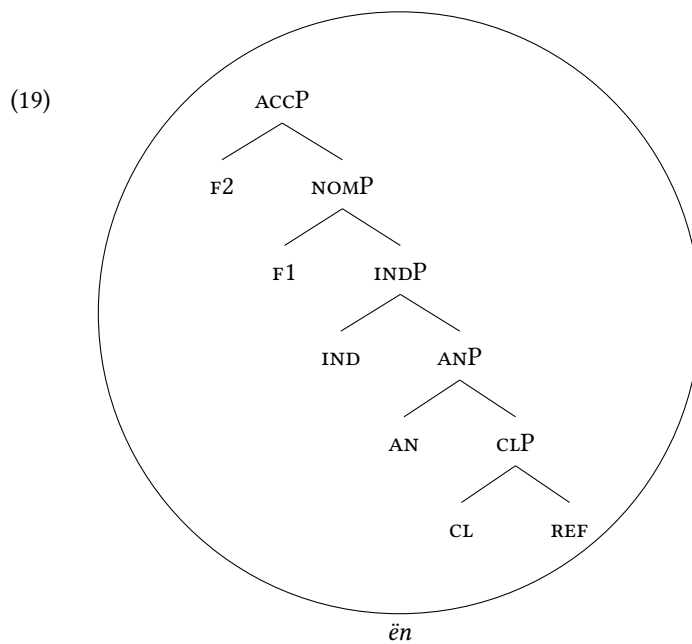
(19)

```
         ACCP
        /    \
      F2    NOMP
           /    \
          F1    INDP
               /    \
             IND    ANP
                   /    \
                 AN     CLP
                       /    \
                     CL     REF
```

ën

In sum, Old High German headless relatives can be derived from a light-headed relative headed by an extra light head, just as in Modern German and Polish. This extra light head is spelled out by a single phi and case feature portmanteau, just as in Modern German. The lexical entries used to spell out this extra light head are also used to spell out a morpheme of the internal syntax of the relative pronoun.

8.2.2 The demonstrative

As I mentioned in the introduction of this section, headless relatives in Old High
German can be derived from two different light-headed relatives: one that does not
surface in the language and one that does surface in the language. In this section I
discuss the second one, the light-headed relative that also surfaces in the language.
This light-headed relative is headed by a demonstrative. It cannot be the source of a
headless relative in Modern German or Polish, but it can Old High German. In Old
High German, the demonstrative is namely syncretic with the relative pronoun.

   In the introduction of this chapter, I suggested that the internal syntax of the
demonstrative is as shown in (20).

(20)
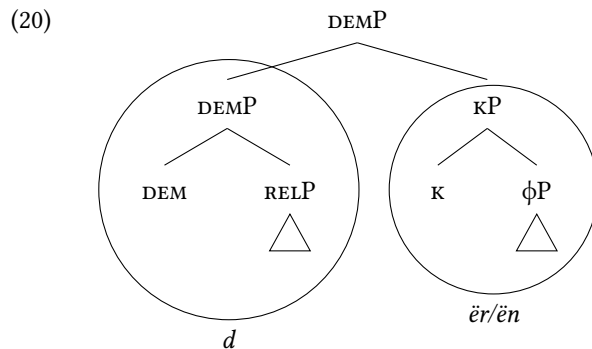
Also in the introduction of this chapter, I suggested that the demonstrative in the
unrestricted type of language consist of four features: DEM, REL, φ and κ. The demon-
strative is spelled out by the same lexical entries as the relative pronoun. This raises
the question of how the features DEM and REL are connected. This is what I discuss
in this section. I show the complete structure that I work towards in this section in
(21).

(21)
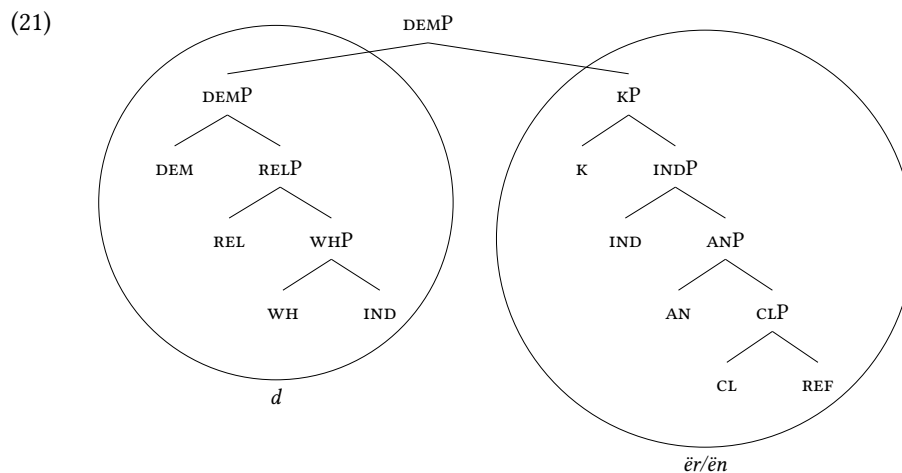
I give an example of a light-headed relative headed by a demonstrative in (22). The *ther* 'DEM.SG.M.NOM' not marked in bold is the demonstrative that is the head of the relative clause. The *Ther* 'RP.SG.M.NOM' marked in bold is the relative pronoun in the relative clause.[6]

(22) Crist, uuer   ist   ther   **ther**   **dih**   **slehit**?
      Christ who.AN.NOM be.3SG DEM.SG.M.NOM RP.SG.M.NOM 2SG.ACC hit.3SG
   'Christ, who is the one that hit you?'   (Old High German, Tatian 192:2)

As (22) shows and as I mentioned earlier in this chapter, relative pronouns and demonstrative pronouns are syncretic in Old High German. Both of them start with a *d*, followed by a phi and case feature portmanteau. I already discussed the phi and case feature morpheme in Section 8.1. In what follows, I discuss how the two *d*s are related.

As I mentioned, both relative pronouns and demonstratives start with a *d*. As I discussed throughout this dissertation (especially in Chapter 2), a syncretism can be described by letting the two forms correspond to the same lexical entry.[7] The lexical entry for *d* I gave so far is the one in (23).

(23)   RELP ⟺ *d*

         REL   WHP

                WH   IND
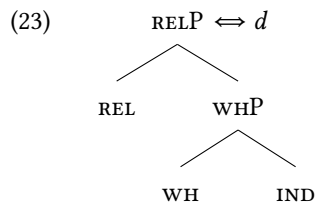
Logically speaking, the syncretism can be derived by either placing the DEM feature above the feature REL or below it in the functional sequence. I show the two options in (24).

---

[6]I assume that whether both the light head and the relative pronoun or only one of them surfaces is determined by information structure. In (22), it seems plausible that the one that hit Christ is emphasized, and that therefore no deletion takes place.

[7]It is also possible to argue that they are accidentally syncretic. As the syncretism between relative pronouns and demonstratives is attested in multiple (albeit mostly Germanic) languages (Baunaz and Lander, 2018), I do not discuss that option.

(24)   a.   DEMP ⟺ *d*

```
              DEM        RELP

                     REL        WHP

                            WH        IND
```

       b.   RELP ⟺ *d*

```
              REL        DEMP

                     DEM        WHP

                            WH        IND
```
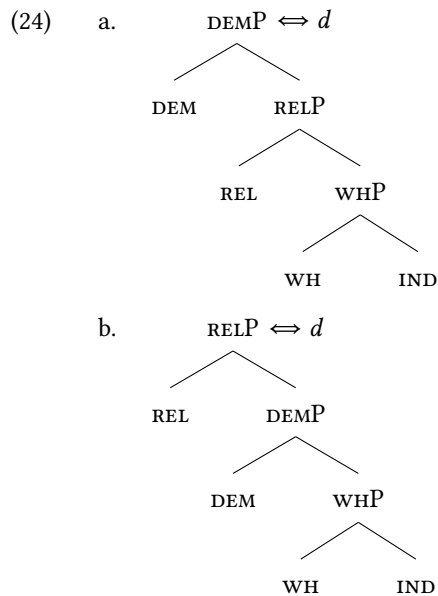
With both lexical entries, the *d* is inserted for the RELP and the DEMP (because of the Superset Principle). The feature DEM could not be placed below WH, as Old High German uses pronouns starting with *(h)w* for interrogatives. If the feature DEM was below WH, it would be the *(h)w* that would be inserted and not the *d* (because of the Elsewhere Condition).

   If you also consider the syncretisms in Modern German and in Polish, then only the ordering in (24a) can derive the patterns. These languages namely have a syncretism between the interrogative and the relative pronoun to the exclusion of the demonstrative. I give an overview of the syncretism patterns in the different languages I discussed in Table 8.5.

Table 8.5: Syncretisms between DEM, REL and WH

language	DEM	REL	WH
Old High German	d	d	(h)w
Modern German	d	w	w
Polish	t	k	k

   I give the lexical entries for Modern German and Polish that derive this pattern in (25).[8]

---

   [8] As I also noted in Chapter 6, Modern German actually has two relative pronouns: one starting with *de* and one starting with *we*. To capture that, I assume that the REL-head should actually consist of two heads, say REL₁ and REL₂. Up to REL₁, the structure is spelled out as *we* and from REL₂ on the structure is

(25)   a.

$$\text{RELP} \Longleftrightarrow \textit{we/k}$$

REL   WHP

b.

$$\text{DEMP} \Longleftrightarrow \textit{de/t}$$

DEM   RELP

REL   WHP
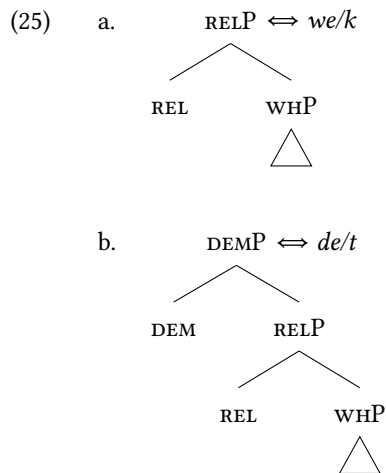
The functional sequence in (24a) has also been proposed by Baunaz and Lander (2018), who in addition include a complementizer and an indefinite (which is not what I call the extra light head). They provide evidence from crosslinguistic patterns of syncretism and morphological containment.[9]

In the remainder of this section, I discuss the two demonstratives that I compare the internal syntax of in Section 8.3. These are the nominative masculine singular and the accusative masculine singular, shown in (26).[10]

---

spelled out as *de*. I give the lexical entries that derive this result in (i).

(i)   a.

$$\text{REL}_1\text{P} \Longleftrightarrow \textit{we}$$

REL$_1$ WHP

b.

$$\text{DEMP} \Longleftrightarrow \textit{de}$$

DEM   REL$_2$P

REL$_2$ REL$_1$P

REL$_1$ WHP
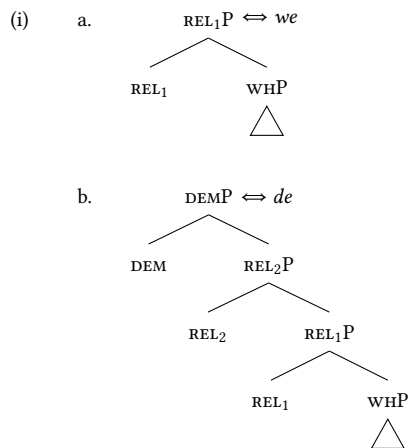
Splitting up the REL head in two heads does not make a difference for Old High German and Polish. Old High German only lets *h(w)* spell out the WHP, and Polish lets *k* spell out the WHP and both RELPs.

[9]Semantically, this functional sequence can be interpreted as follows: WH introduces a set of alternatives, REL establishes a relation, and DEM picks an individual out of the set of alternatives.

[10]Again, for reasons of space, I do not discuss the dative form. I assume its analysis is identical to the

(26)   a.   d-ër
              DEM.M.SG.NOM

        b.   d-ën
              DEM.M.SG.ACC

The functional sequence for the light head is as shown in (27).
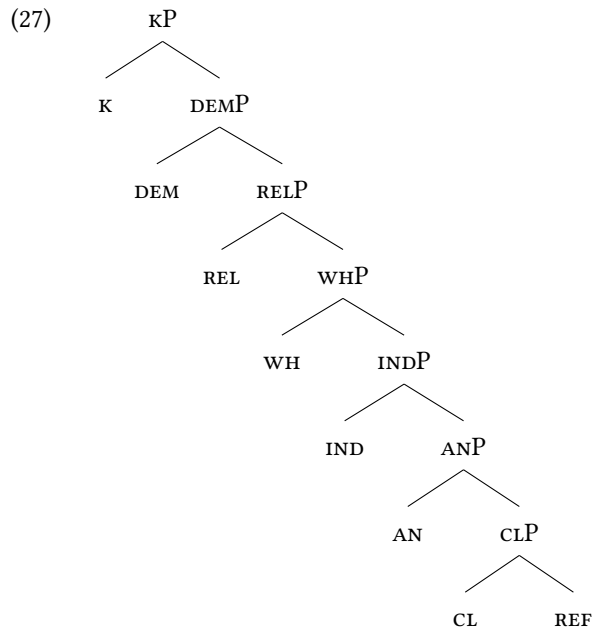
(27)

```
              KP
            /    \
           K     DEMP
                /    \
             DEM     RELP
                    /    \
                  REL    WHP
                        /    \
                      WH     INDP
                            /    \
                          IND    ANP
                                /    \
                              AN     CLP
                                    /    \
                                  CL     REF
```

The functional sequence contains the pronominal feature REF, the gender features CL and AN, the number feature IND, the operator features WH, REL and DEM and case features K.

I introduced the lexical entries that are required to spell out these features in Section 8.1 and earlier in this section. I repeat them in (28).
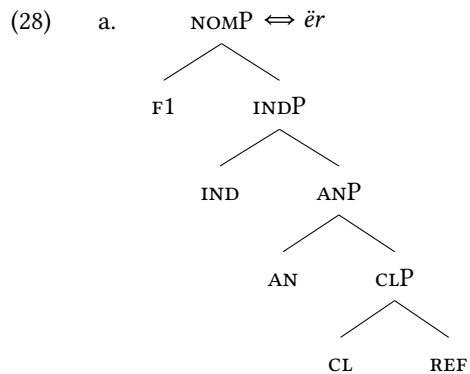
(28)   a.

```
           NOMP  ⟺ ër
          /    \
        F1     INDP
              /    \
            IND    ANP
                  /    \
                AN     CLP
                      /    \
                    CL     REF
```

---

one I propose for the accusative and the dative.

b.
```
        ACCP ⟺ ën
        /    \
       F2    NOMP
             /   \
            F1   INDP
                 /   \
               IND   ANP
                     /  \
                    AN  CLP
                        /  \
                       CL  REF
```

c.
```
        DEMP ⟺ d
        /    \
      DEM   RELP
            /   \
          REL   WHP
                /  \
               WH  IND
```
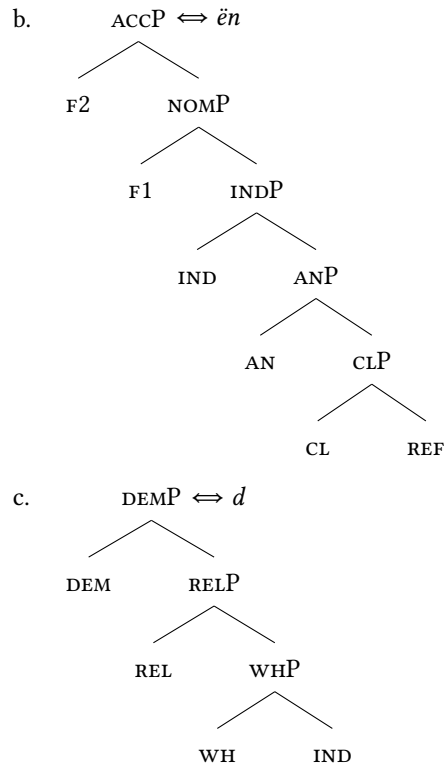
In what follows, I construct the Old High German demonstratives. Until the feature REL, the derivation is identical to the one of the relative pronoun. I give the syntactic structure at that point in (29).

(29)
```
                           RELP
              RELP                    INDP
             /    \                  /    \
           REL    WHP              IND    ANP
                  /  \                    /  \
                 WH  IND                 AN  CLP
                                             /  \
                                            CL  REF
                  d                          ër
```
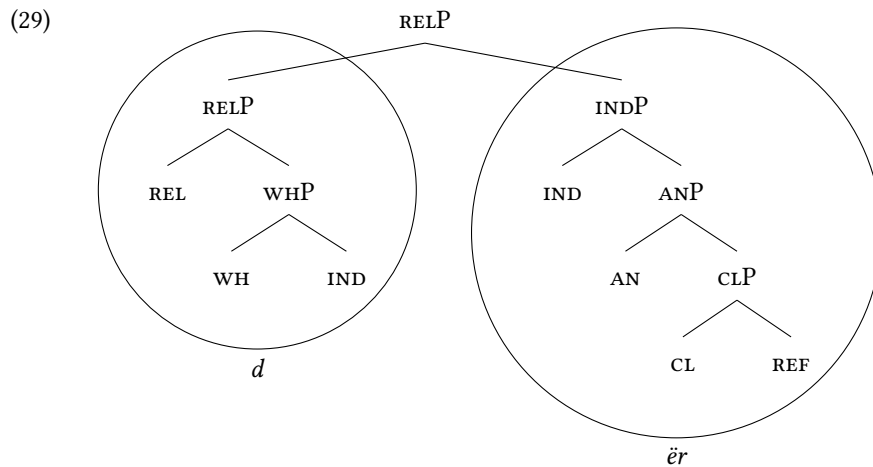
The next feature that is merged is the feture DEM. The derivation for this feature resembles the derivation of REL. The feature is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a DEMP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements

leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the RELP from the INDP. The feature DEM is merged in both workspaces, so with RELP and and with INDP. The spellout of REL is successful when it is combined with the RELP. It namely forms a constituent in the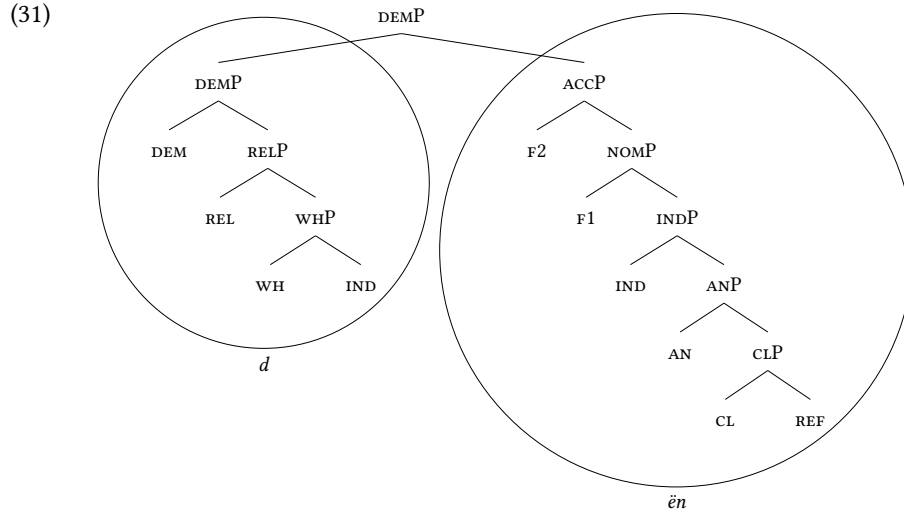 lexical tree in (28c), which corresponds to the *d*. The DEMP is spelled out as *d*, and it is merged back to the existing syntactic structure.

For the nominative relative pronoun, the last feature is merged: the F1. This feature should somehow end up merging with INDP, because it forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (28a), which corresponds to the *ër*. This is achieved via Backtracking in which phrases are split up and going through the Spellout Algorithm. I go through the derivation step by step. The feature F1 is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a NOMP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the DEMP from the INDP. The feature F1 is merged in both workspaces, so with the DEMP and and with the INDP. The spellout of F1 is successful when it is combined with the INDP. It namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (28a), which corresponds to the *ër*. The NOMP is spelled out as *ër*, and all constituents are merged back into the existing syntactic structure, as shown in (30).

(30)

For the accusative relative pronoun, the last feature is merged: the F2. The derivation for F2 resembles the derivation of F1. The feature is merged with the existing syntactic structure, creating a ACCP. This structure does not form a constituent in any of the lexical trees in the language's lexicon, and neither of the spellout driven movements leads to a successful spellout. Backtracking leads to splitting up the DEMP from the NOMP. The feature F2 is merged in both workspaces, so with the DEMP and and with the NOMP. The spellout of F2 is successful when it is combined with the NOMP. It namely forms a constituent in the lexical tree in (28b), which corresponds to the *ën*. The ACCP is spelled out as *ën*, and all constituents are merged back into the existing

syntactic structure, as shown in (31).

(31)

```
                              DEMP
        DEMP                              ACCP
   DEM       RELP                    F2        NOMP
          REL    WHP                        F1      INDP
              WH    IND                         IND     ANP
                                                     AN    CLP
                                                         CL    REF
          d                                      ën
```

In sum, Old High German headless relatives can be derived from a light-headed relative headed by a demonstrative. This demonstrative is spelled out by a morpheme that spells out the features of the relative pronoun plus the feature DEM. The lexical entries used to spell out the demonstrative are also used to spell out the relative pronoun, as the demonstrative and the relative pronoun are syncretic.

8.3 Comparing light heads and relative pronouns

In this section, I compare the internal syntax of extra light heads and demonstratives to the internal syntax of relative pronouns in Old High German. This is the worked out version of the comparisons in Section 5.2.3. What is different here is that I show the comparison for Old High German specifically, and that the content of the internal syntax that is being compared is motivated earlier in this chapter.

I give three examples, in which the internal and external case vary. I start with an example with matching cases, in which the internal and the external case are both nominative. I show that the grammaticality of the example can be derived by either taking the light-headed relative headed by the extra light head or the light-headed relative headed by the demonstrative as the source of the headless relative. Then I give an example in which the external accusative case is more complex than the internal nominative case. I show that the grammaticality of this example can only be derived by taking the light-headed relative headed by the demonstrative as the source of the headless relative and not the light-headed relative headed by the extra light head. Before I can properly do that, I take a necessary but brief detour into the larger syntactic structure of headless relatives. I end with an example in which the internal accusative case is more complex than the external nominative

case. I show that the grammaticality of this example can only be derived by taking the light-headed relative headed by the extra light head as the source of the headless relative and not the light-headed relative headed by the demonstrative.[11]

I start with the situation in which the cases match. Consider the example in (32), in which the internal nominative case competes against the external nominative case. The relative clause is marked in bold. (32a) shows the example with the extra light head, and (32b) shows the example with the light head. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *senten* 'to send' takes nominative subjects. In both examples, the relative pronoun *dher* 'RP.SG.M.NOM' appears in the nominative case. The external case is nominative as well, as the predicate *queman* 'to come' also takes nominative subjects. In (32a), the extra light head *er* 'ELH.SG.M.NOM' appears in the nominative case. It is placed between square brackets because it does not surface. In (32b), the light head *dher* 'DEM.SG.M.NOM' appears in the nominative case. Here the relative pronoun is placed between square brackets because it does not surface.

(32)   a.   quham   [er]   **dher**   **chisendit**
            come.PST.3SG[NOM] ELH.SG.M.NOM RP.SG.M.NOM send.PST.PTCP[NOM]

            scolda   **uuerdhan**
            should.PST.3SG become.INF

            'the one, who should have been sent, came'

                                                                    (Old High German, Isid. 35:5)

       b.   quham   dher   [**dher**]   **chisendit**
            come.PST.3SG[NOM] DEM.SG.M.NOM RP.SG.M.NOM send.PST.PTCP[NOM]

            scolda   **uuerdhan**
            should.PST.3SG become.INF

            'the one, who should have been sent, came'

                                                                    (Old High German, Isid. 35:5)

Both examples in (32) can be the source of the headless relative. First I show the comparison of the internal syntax of the extra light head and relative pronoun in (32a). Then I show the comparison of the internal syntax of the light head and the relative pronoun in (32b).

---

[11]In this section I discuss two different light heads (the extra light head and the demonstrative) and two different types of containment (structural containment and formal containment). That means that I could make four comparisons per headless relative: (1) one with the extra light head and structural containment, (2) one with the extra light head and formal containment, (3) one with the demonstrative and structural containment, and (4) one with the demonstrative and formal containment. I do not do this. Instead, I only discuss the first and the last option, namely whether there is structural containment with the extra light head and whether there is formal containment with the demonstrative. The other two comparisons (extra light head with formal containment and demonstrative with structural containment) namely never lead to a deletion, because the containment never holds.

In Figure 8.5, I give the syntactic structure of the extra light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

Figure 8.5: Old High German EXT~NOM~ vs. INT~NOM~ → *dher* (ELH)

The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: *er*. The relative pronoun consists of two morphemes: *dh* and *er*. As usual, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is structurally contained in both the extra light head and the relative pronoun.

The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: the NOMP. This NOMP is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the extra light head can be deleted. I signal the deletion of the extra light head by marking the content of its circle gray. The surface pronoun is the relative pronoun that bears the internal case: *dher*.

In Figure 8.6, I give the syntactic structure of the light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

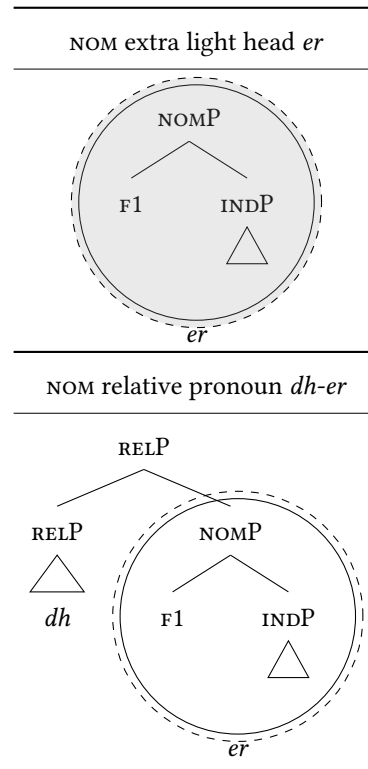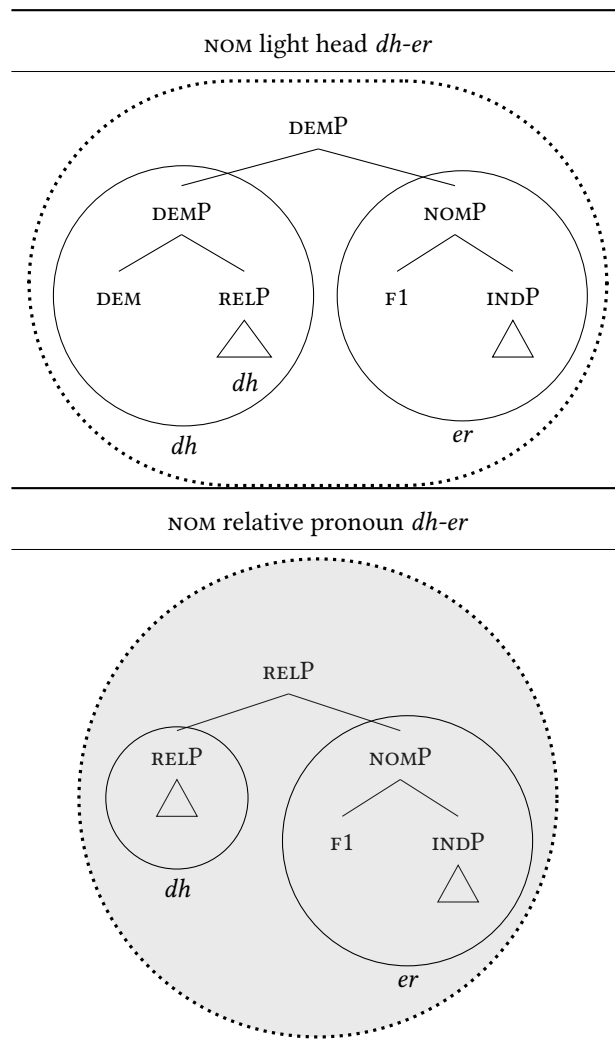The light head consists of two morphemes: *dh* and *er*. The relative pronoun also consists of two morphemes: *dh* and *er*. Again, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and

Figure 8.6: Old High German EXT_NOM vs. INT_NOM → *dher* (DEM)

I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dotted circle around the
biggest possible element that formally contained in both the light head and the rel-
ative pronoun.

The relative pronoun (the RELP realized by *dher*) is formally contained in the light
head (the DEMP realized by *dher*). Therefore, the relative pronoun can be deleted. I
signal the deletion of the relative pronoun by marking the content of its circle gray.
The surface pronoun is the light head that bears the external case: *dher*.[12]

---

[12]The same holds the other way around: the light head (the DEMP realized by *dher*) is formally con-
tained in the relative pronoun (the RELP realized by *dher*). Therefore, with the information I have given so
far, it could also be that the light head is deleted. In Section 8.4 I discuss the larger syntactic structure of
headless relatives and I show in this case only the relative pronoun can be deleted because of c-command

For reasons of space I do not show the comparisons of the other matching situations. These are situations in which both the internal and external case are accusative or both the internal and external case are dative. The same logic as I showed in Figure 8.5 and Figure 8.6 works for these situations too.

I continue with the situation in which the external case is the more complex one. Consider the examples in (33), in which the internal nominative case competes against the external accusative case. The relative clause is marked in bold. (33a) shows the example with the extra light head, and (33b) shows the example with the light head. The internal case is nominative, as the predicate *gisizzen* 'to possess' takes nominative subjects. In both examples, the relative pronoun *dher* 'RP.SG.M.NOM' appears in the nominative case. The external case is accusative, as the predicate *bibringan* 'to create' takes accusative objects. In (33a), the extra light head *ën* 'ELH.SG.M.ACC' appears in the accusative case. It is placed between square brackets because it does not surface. In (33b), the light head *dhen* 'DEM.SG.M.ACC' appears in the accusative case. Here the relative pronoun is placed between square brackets because it does not surface.

(33) a. *ih   bibringu   fona iacobes   samin   endi fona
           1SG.NOM create.PRES.1SG[ACC] of   Jakob.GEN seed.SG.DAT and of

           iuda   [en]   **dher**   **mina**   **berga**
           Judah.DAT ELH.SG.M.ACC RP.SG.M.NOM my.ACC.M.PL mountain.ACC.PL

           chisitzit
           possess.PRES.3SG[NOM]
           'I create of the seed of Jacob and of Judah the one, who possess my
           mountains'   (Old High German, Isid. 34:3)

      b. ih   bibringu   fona iacobes   samin   endi fona
           1SG.NOM create.PRES.1SG[ACC] of   Jakob.GEN seed.SG.DAT and of

           iuda   dhen   **[dher]**   **mina**   **berga**
           Judah.DAT DEM.SG.M.ACC RP.SG.M.NOM my.ACC.M.PL mountain.ACC.PL

           chisitzit
           possess.PRES.3SG[NOM]
           'I create of the seed of Jacob and of Judah the one, who possess my
           mountains'   (Old High German, Isid. 34:3)

Only (33b) can be the source of the headless relative. First I show the comparison of the internal syntax of the extra light head and relative pronoun in (33a), which does not lead to a grammatical headless relative. Then I show the comparison of the internal syntax of the light head and the relative pronoun in (33b), which does derive

relations.

a grammatical headless relative.

In Figure 8.7, I give the syntactic structure of the extra light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

Figure 8.7: Old High German EXT_{ACC} vs. $INT_{NOM} \nrightarrow en/dher$ (ELH)

The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: *er*. The relative pronoun consists of two morphemes: *dh* and *en*. Again, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is structurally contained in both the extra light head and the relative pronoun.

In this case, the light head is not structurally contained in the relative pronoun. The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: the ACCP. The relative pronoun only contains the NOMP, and it lacks the F2 that makes a ACCP. Since the weaker feature containment requirement is not met, the stronger constituent containment requirement cannot be met either. The relative pronoun is not structurally contained in the light head. It namely lacks the complete constituent RELP. The extra light

cannot be deleted, and the relative pronoun cannot be deleted either. As a result, the light-headed relative headed by the extra light head cannot be the source of the headless relative.

In Figure 8.8, I give the syntactic structure of the light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

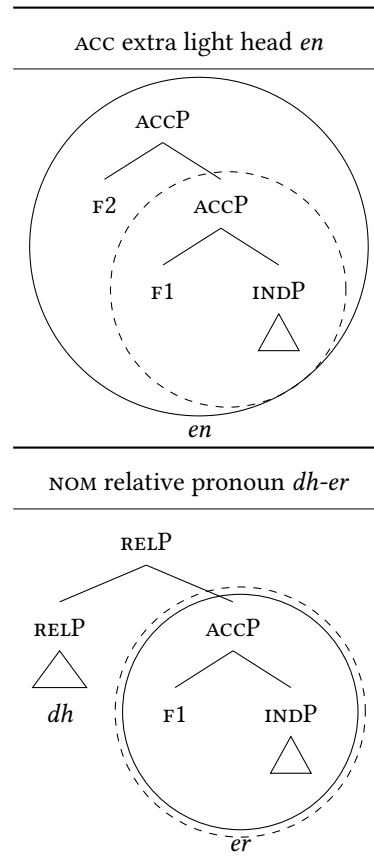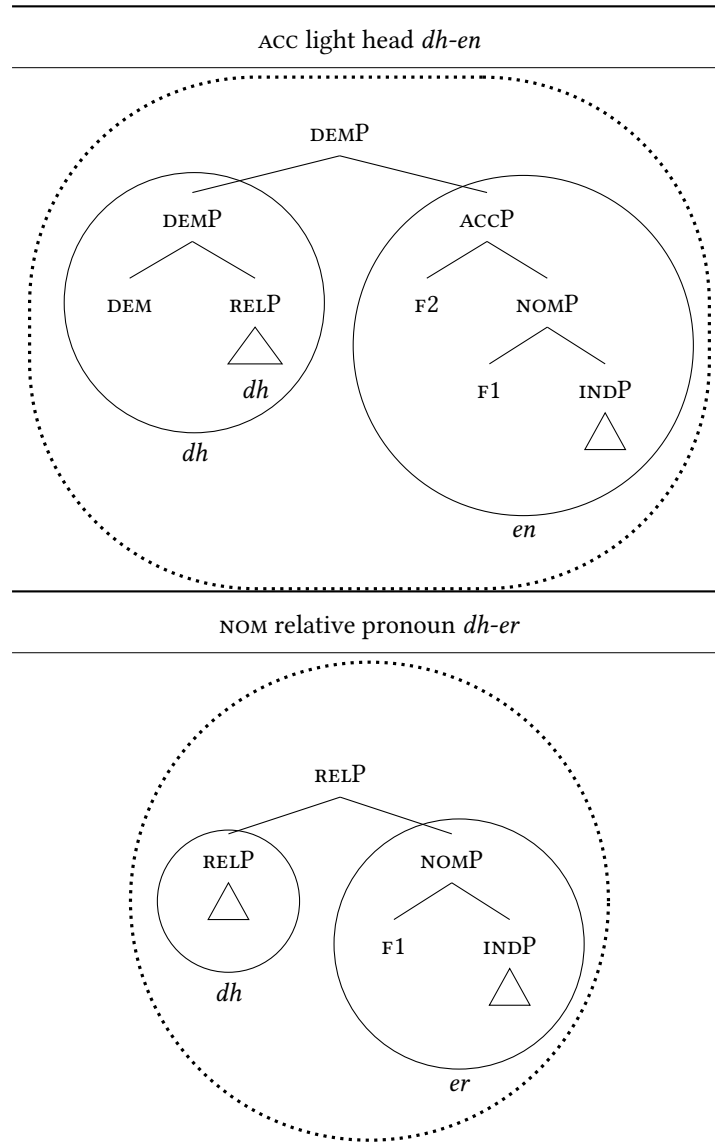Figure 8.8: Old High German EXT_{ACC} vs. INT_{NOM} ↛ *dhën*/*dhër* (DEM)

The light head consists of two morphemes: *dh* and *en*. The relative pronoun also consists of two morphemes: *dh* and *er*. Again, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and

I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dotted circle around the biggest possible element that is formally contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun.

The light head is realized as *dhen*, and the relative pronoun is realized as *dher*. The light head is not formally contained in the relative pronoun, and the relative pronoun is not formally contained in the light head. Therefore, the extra light cannot be deleted, and the relative pronoun cannot be deleted either. The inevitable result seems to be that the light-headed relative headed by the demonstrative cannot be the source of the headless relative. This is not what the data suggests, however, as a more complex external case is allowed to surface in Old High German.

To understand how a grammatical headless relative with a more complex external case gets to surface, the larger syntactic structure needs to be considered. I repeat light-headed relative that is the source of the example from (33b) in (34).

(34) | ih | bibringu | fona iacobes | samin | endi fona |
      | 1SG.NOM | create.PRES.1SG[ACC] | of Jakob.GEN | seed.SG.DAT | and of |

       | iuda | dhen | **[dher]** | **mina** | **berga** |
       | Judah.DAT | DEM.SG.M.ACC | RP.SG.M.NOM | my.ACC.M.PL | mountain.ACC.PL |

       chisitzit
       possess.PRES.3SG[NOM]

       'I create of the seed of Jacob and of Judah the one, who possess my mountains'

                                                  (Old High German, Isid. 34:3)

Consider the syntactic structure in (35) that represents part of the sentence in (34).

(35)
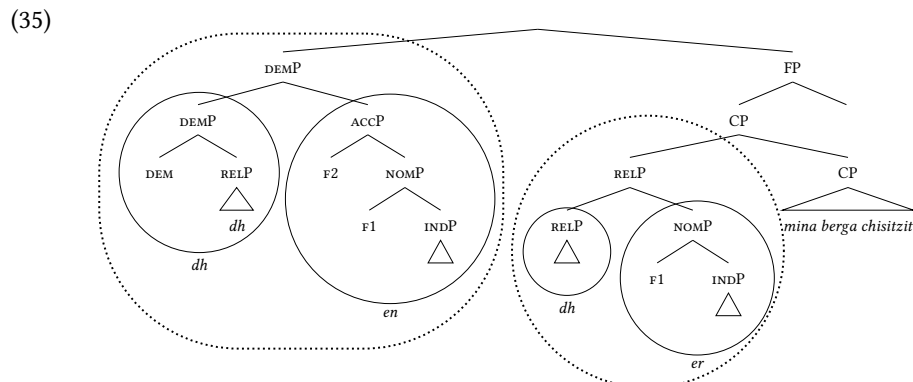
The DEMP on the left (that spells out as *dhen*) is the light head from Figure 8.8. The RELP in the middle (that spells out as *dher*) is the relative pronoun from Figure 8.8. The CP on the right represents the relative clause without the relative pronoun. I do not show its internal structure, as it is not relevant for the discussion. The remainder

of the main clause is also not part of the syntactic structure. This is because at this point in the derivation the features that spell out *ih bibringu fona iacobes samin endi fona iuda* 'I bring of the seed of Jacob and of Judah' have not been merged yet.

The structure in (35) has come into being by merging features one by one. The last feature that has been merged is F2, which created the ACCP within the DEMP. Remember from the functional sequence in (27) that case features are the highest features, so they are the last ones to be merged. Before the feature F2 was merged, the syntactic structure looked as in (36).[13]

(36)

The DEMP on the left (that spells out as *dher*) is the light head from Figure 8.6. The RELP in the middle (that spells out as *dher*) is the relative pronoun from Figure 8.6. At this point in the derivation, the relative pronoun is formally contained in the light head. Therefore, the relative pronoun can be deleted. I signal the deletion of the relative pronoun by marking the content of its circle gray in (36). The surface pronoun is the light head that bears the external case: *dher*.

Then the feature F2 is merged, and the light head is spelled out as *dhen*, as shown in (37).

---

[13] The feature F2 ends up in it position via several steps of Backtracking in which different workspaces are split up and features are merged in both workspaces, as explained in Chapter 6. First, the DEMP and the FP are split up and F2 is merged in both workspaces. None of them leads to a successful spellout, so both workspaces are split up further, giving three workspaces: the DEMP, the NOMP and the lowest CP. Now F2 can be spelled out with the NOMP. All worskpaces are merged back together and the result is the structure in 8.8.

(37)
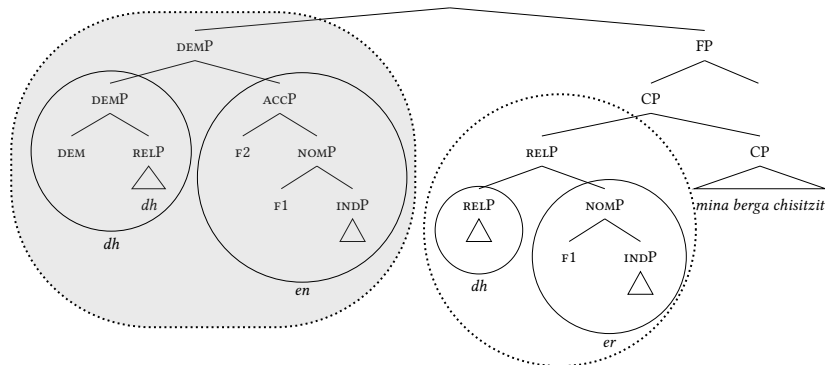
The relative pronoun has been deleted in the previous stage of the derivation, so it is still absent. However, it is no longer the case that the light head formally contains the relative pronoun. This example shows that it is crucial to not only consider the endpoint of a derivation, but also the steps in between.

For Modern German and Polish these steps in between do not make a difference. The reason for that is that it is only relevant when the external case is more complex than the internal one. Only then a previous step in the derivation is one in which the cases match. When the cases match, the endpoint of the derivation is already the relevant step in the derivation. At the end of this section, I explain why the cases never match when the internal case is more complex. In the situation in which the external case is more complex Modern German and Polish are not helped, as there is no syncretism between light heads and relative pronouns. Therefore, there is never any formal containment that can lead to a deletion.

For reasons of space I do not show the comparisons of the other situations in which the external case is more complex. These are situations in which the internal case is nominative and the external case is dative and in which the internal case is accusative and the external case is dative. The same logic as I showed in Figure 8.7 and (37) works for these situations too.

I end with the situation in which the internal case is the more complex one. Consider the examples in (38), in which the internal accusative case competes against the external nominative case. The relative clause is marked in bold. (38a) shows the example with the extra light head, and (38b) shows the example with the light head. The internal case is accusative, as the predicate *zellen* 'to tell' takes accusative objects. In both examples, the relative pronoun *then* 'RP.SG.M.ACC' appears in the accusative case. In (38a), the extra light head *ër* 'ELH.SG.M.NOM' appears in the nominative case. It is placed between square brackets because it does not surface. In (38b), the light head *dher* 'DEM.SG.M.NOM' appears in the nominative case. Here the relative pronoun is placed between square brackets because it does not surface.

(38) a. Thíz   ist   [er]   **then**   **sie**

DEM.SG.N.NOM be.PRES.3SG_[NOM] ELH.SG.M.NOM RP.SG.M.ACC 3PL.M.NOM

zéllent

tell.PRES.3PL_[ACC]

'this is the one whom they talk about'

(Old High German, Otfrid III 16:50)

b. *Thíz   ist   ther   **[then]**   **sie**

DEM.SG.N.NOM be.PRES.3SG_[NOM] DEM.SG.M.NOM RP.SG.M.ACC 3PL.M.NOM

zéllent

tell.PRES.3PL_[ACC]

'this is the one whom they talk about'

(Old High German, Otfrid III 16:50)

Only (38b) can be the source of the headless relative. First I show the comparison of the internal syntax of the extra light head and relative pronoun in (38a), which leads to a grammatical headless relative. Then I show the comparison of the internal syntax of the light head and the relative pronoun in (38b), which does not derive a grammatical headless relative.

In Figure 8.9, I give the syntactic structure of the extra light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.
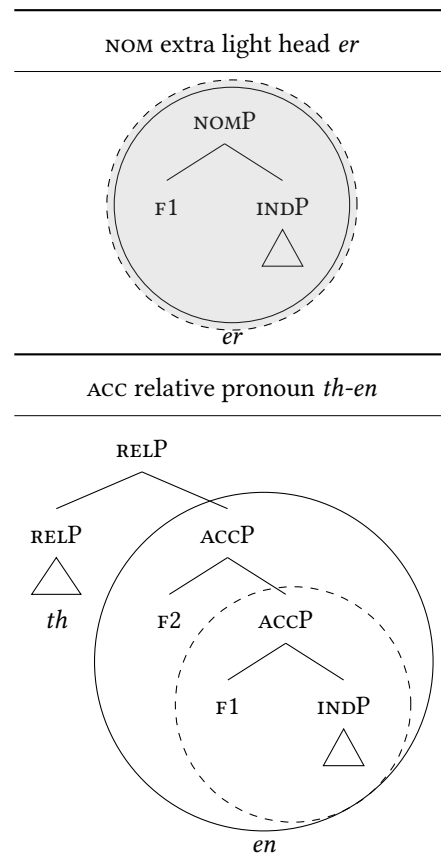
The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: *er*. The relative pronoun consists of two morphemes: *th* and *en*. Again, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dashed circle around the biggest possible element that is structurally a constituent in both the extra light head and the relative pronoun.

The extra light head consists of a single morpheme: the NOMP. This NOMP is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the extra light can be deleted. I signal the deletion of the extra light head by marking the content of its circle gray. The surface pronoun is the relative pronoun that bears the internal case: *then*.

In Figure 8.10, I give the syntactic structure of the light head at the top and the syntactic structure of the relative pronoun at the bottom.

The light head consists of two morphemes: *th* and *er*. The relative pronoun also consists of two morphemes: *th* and *en*. Again, I circle the part of the structure that corresponds to a particular lexical entry, or I reduce the structure to a triangle, and I place the corresponding phonology below it. I draw a dotted circle around the biggest possible element that formally contained in both the light head and the relative pronoun.
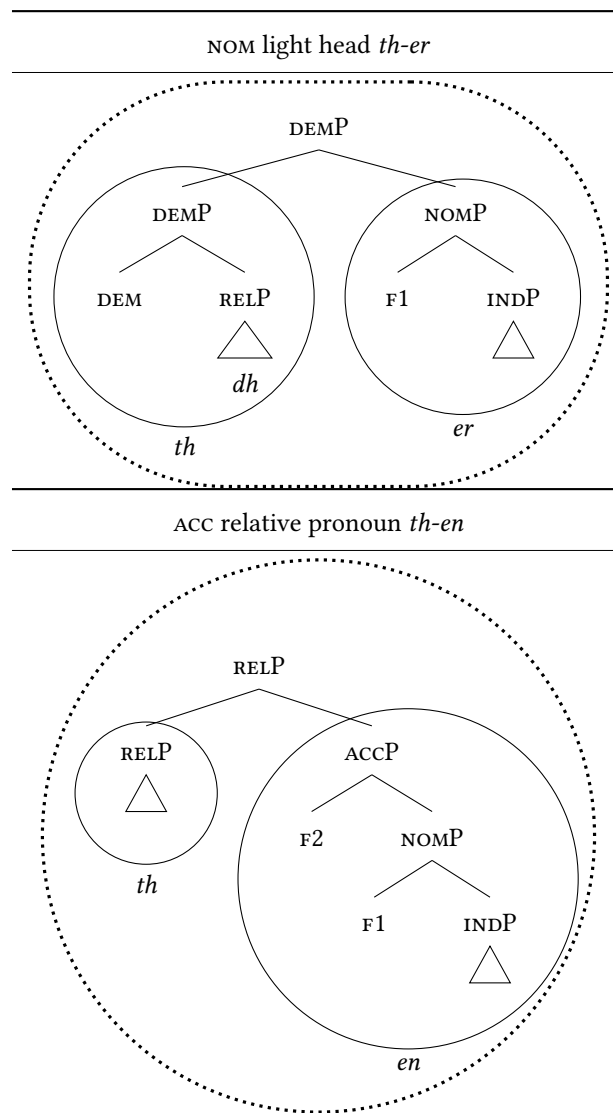
The light head is realized as *ther*, and the relative pronoun is realized as *then*.

NOM extra light head *er*

NOMP
F1   INDP

er

ACC relative pronoun *th-en*

RELP
RELP   ACCP
th   F2   ACCP
F1   INDP

en

Figure 8.9: Old High German EXT$_{\text{NOM}}$ VS. INT$_{\text{ACC}}$ $\rightarrow$ *then* (ELH)

The light head is not formally contained in the relative pronoun, and the relative pronoun is not formally contained in the light head. Therefore, the extra light cannot be deleted, and the relative pronoun cannot be deleted either. As a result, the light-headed relative headed by the extra light head cannot be the source of the headless relative.

In this situation, when the internal case is more complex than the external one, it does not make a difference to look at previous steps in the derivation. The last case feature was merged on the relative pronoun before the first case feature was merged on the light head. Going back in the derivation removes case features from the light head (so external case features) and not those from the relative pronoun. As long as the internal case is more complex, there is no step in the derivation in which the cases match.

For reasons of space I do not show the comparisons of the other situations in which the internal case is more complex. These are situations in which the internal case is dative and the external case is nominative and in which the internal case

Figure 8.10: Old High German EXT_{NOM} vs. INT_{ACC} $\nrightarrow$ *ther/then* (DEM)

is dative and the external case is accusative. The same logic as I showed in Figure 8.9 and Figure 8.10 works for these situations too. Remember that I have not found an example in which the internal case is dative and the external case is accusative. The system I set up does not provide an explanation for why this example would be absent.

8.4 Coming back to the light heads

In this chapter I have suggested that headless relatives in Old High German can be derived from two different light-headed relatives: one headed by an extra light head and one headed by a demonstrative. In Section 8.2 I did not provide any motivation for why there should be two different sources for headless relative in the language. In this section I consider whether there is any support that suggests so. In Section 8.4.1, I consider headless relatives in which an extra light head is deleted have a different interpretation from headless relatives in which the relative pronoun is deleted. I do not find such support. In Section 8.4.2, I place the light heads and the relative pronoun into a larger syntactic structure. I put the different light heads in the syntactic structure in such a way that deletion always takes place under c-comman. In that way, there seems to be a resemblance with what other researchers have suggested.

8.4.1 The interpretation of Old High German headless relatives

Before I start the discussion on the interpretation of headless relatives in Old High German, I make a more general note on studying meaning in extinct languages. First of all, the intended meaning can only be derived from the context. This means that there is always room for interpretation. Second, although a particular interpretation of a construction is not attested, it does not necessarily mean it would be ungrammatical. This may mean that a particular interpretation is possible, but it is not attested.

Keeping that in mind, headless relatives in which the relative pronoun starts with a *d*, such as in Old High German, seem to be linked to individuating or definite readings and not to generalizing or indefinite readings (cf. Fuß, n.d.). This is confirmed by my data. In (39) I give an example, repeated from Chapter 3.

(39) gihortut ir **thiu ih íu quad**
listen.PST.2PL$_{[ACC]}$ 2PL.NOM RP.PL.N.ACC 1SG.NOM 2PL.DAT speak.PST.1SG$_{[ACC]}$
'you listened to those things, that I said to you'
not: 'you listened to whatever I said to you'

(Old High German, Tatian 165:6)

In this example, the author refers to the specific things that the I-person said, and not to whatever the I-person said.

Now consider Table 8.6, that gives the grammaticality pattern for headless relatives derived from light-headed relatives headed by an extra light head.

Table 8.6: Grammaticality in Old High German with ELH

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	ELH	RP			
$K_{INT} = K_{EXT}$	$[\kappa_1[\phi]]$	$[REL], [\kappa_1[\phi]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$K_{INT} > K_{EXT}$	$[\kappa_1[\phi]]$	$[REL], [\kappa_2[\kappa_1[\phi]]]$	structure	LH	RP_{INT}
$K_{INT} < K_{EXT}$	$[REL], [\kappa_1[\phi]]$	$[\kappa_2[\kappa_1[\phi]]]$	no	none	*

Consider also Table 8.7, that gives the grammaticality pattern for headless relatives derived from light-headed relatives headed by a demonstrative.

Table 8.7: Grammaticality in Old High German with LH

situation	lexical entries		containment	deleted	surfacing
	LH	RP			
$K_{INT} = K_{EXT}$	/X/, /Y/	/X/, /Y/	form	RP	LH_{EXT}
$K_{INT} > K_{EXT}$	/X/, /Y/	/X/, /Z/	no	none	*
$K_{INT} < K_{EXT}$	/X/, /Y/	/X/, /Y/	form	RP	LH_{EXT}

As can be seen in the tables, examples in which the internal and external case match can be derived from both types of light-headed relatives. The example in (39) is one in which the internal and the external case match. Therefore, this example can be derived from the two different light-headed relatives: one headed by an extra light head, as shown in (40a), and one headed by a demonstrative, as shown in (40b).

(40) a. gihortut   ir   [iu]   **thiu**   ih   íu
          listen.PST.2PL[ACC] 2PL.NOM ELH.PL.N.NOM RP.PL.N.ACC 1SG.NOM 2PL.DAT

          quad
          speak.PST.1SG[ACC]
          'you listened to those things, that I said to you'

                                                    (Old High German, Tatian 165:6)

      b. gihortut   ir   thiu   [**thiu**]   **ih**
          listen.PST.2PL[ACC] 2PL.ACC DEM.PL.N.NOM RP.PL.N.NOM 1SG.NOM

íu   quad
2PL.DAT speak.PST.1SG[ACC]
'you listened to those things, that I said to you'

(Old High German, Tatian 165:6)

When the internal and external case do not match, only one of the light-headed rela-
tives can be the source of the headless relative. Table 8.6 and 8.7 show that headless
relative with a more complex internal case needs to be derived from a light-headed
relative headed by an extra light head. The light-headed relative headed by a demon-
strative does not generate a grammatical example. On the other hand, the tables
show that headless relative with a more complex external case needs to be derived
from a light-headed relative headed by a demonstrative. The light-headed relative
headed by an extra light head does not generate a grammatical example.

This situation allows me to investigate whether headless relatives in which an
extra light head is deleted have a different interpretation from headless relatives in
which the relative pronoun is deleted. As I already mentioned in the introduction, I
do not find such support. All headless relatives have a definite interpretation.

In (41) I give an example, in which the external case is more complex than the
internal case, repeated from Chapter 3.

(41)   enti aer   ant uurta   demo   **zaimo**
        and 3SG.M.NOM reply.PST.3SG[DAT] RP.SG.M.DAT to 3SG.M.DAT

        sprah
        speak.PST.3SG[NOM]
        'and he replied to the one who spoke to him'
        not: 'and he replied to whoever spoke to him'
                    (Old High German, Mons. 7:24, adapted from Pittner 1995: 199)

In this example, the author refers to the specific person who spoke to someone, and
not to any or every person who spoke to someone. This example can only be derived
from a light-headed relative headed by a demonstrative, as shown in (42).

(42)   enti aer   ant uurta   demo   [**der**]   **zaimo**
        and 3SG.M.NOM reply.PST.3SG[DAT] RP.SG.M.DAT DEM.SG.M.NOM to 3SG.M.DAT

        sprah
        speak.PST.3SG[NOM]
        'and he replied to the one who spoke to him'
                    (Old High German, Mons. 7:24, adapted from Pittner 1995: 199)

The interpretation is a definite one.

In (43) I give an example, in which the internal case is more complex than the

external case, repeated from Chapter 3.

(43) Thíz   ist   **then**   sie   **zéllent**
      DEM.SG.N.NOM be.PRES.3SG[NOM]   RP.SG.M.ACC   3PL.M.NOM   tell.PRES.3PL[ACC]
      'this is the one whom they talk about'
      not: 'this is whoever they talk about'   (Old High German, Otfrid III 16:50)

In this example, the author refers to the specific person which was talked about, and not to any or every person that was talked about. This example can only be derived from a light-headed relative headed by an extra light head, as shown in (44).

(44) Thíz   ist   [er]   **then**   sie
      DEM.SG.N.NOM be.PRES.3SG[NOM]   ELH.SG.M.NOM   RP.SG.M.ACC   3PL.M.NOM

      zéllent
      tell.PRES.3PL[ACC]
      'this is the one whom they talk about'   (Old High German, Otfrid III 16:50)

The interpretation is still a definite one. This seems to be the surprising example. In Chapter 6 and 7, I suggested that Modern German and Polish have this extra light head in their light-headed relatives because this allows for a universal interpretation. A possible reason for why Old High German does not show this interpretation is the form of its relative pronoun: different from Modern German and Polish, relative pronouns in Old High German start with the definite *d* and not with a *wh*.

In conclusion, all headless relatives in Old High German have a definite interpretation. This means that there is no independent support coming from the interpretation that motivates the claim that Old High German has two different light-headed relative structures that are the source of the different headless relatives.

8.4.2 The larger syntactic structure and deletion operation

In this section, I place the different light heads and the relative pronoun in Old High German in larger syntactic structure. I show that deletion always takes place under c-command.

Consider the syntactic structure with the light head and the relative pronoun both appearing in nominative case in (45), repeated from (36).

(45)
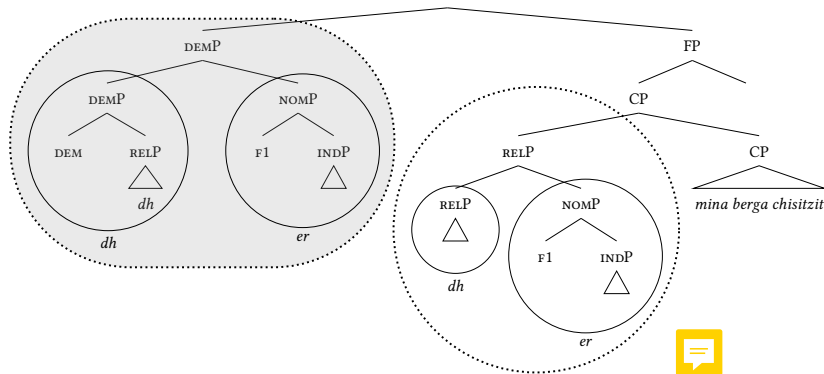
As I pointed out in Section 8.3, the relative pronoun is deleted in this situation. Notice here that the light head c-commands the relative pronoun. The DEMP on the left c-commands the RELP, as the DEMP is in the specifier of the FP, which dominates the RELP. From there the reasoning goes as follows. The relative pronoun (the RELP realized by *dher*) is formally contained in the light head (the DEMP realized by *dher*). Therefore, the relative pronoun can be deleted, which is signaled by the gray marking of the circle. The surface pronoun is the light head that bears the external case: *dher*.

Now imagine a situation in which the light-headed relative is headed by an extra light head. Here it is not the relative pronoun that is deleted, but the extra light head. Consider such an example in (46).

(46) quham   [er]   **dher**   **chisendit**
      come.PST.3SG[NOM] ELH.SG.M.NOM RP.SG.M.NOM send.PST.PTCP[NOM]

      scolda   **uuerdhan**
      should.PST.3SG become.INF

      'the one, who should have been sent, came'   (Old High German, Isid. 35:5)

When c-command is a requirement for deletion, then the relative pronoun should c-command the extra light head. I suggest that the syntactic structure of the sentence in (46) looks as shown in (47).

(47)

FP
CP
RELP
CP
NOMP
RELP
NOMP
chisendit scolda uuerdhan
F1
INDP
eŕ
RELP
dh
F1
INDP
eñ
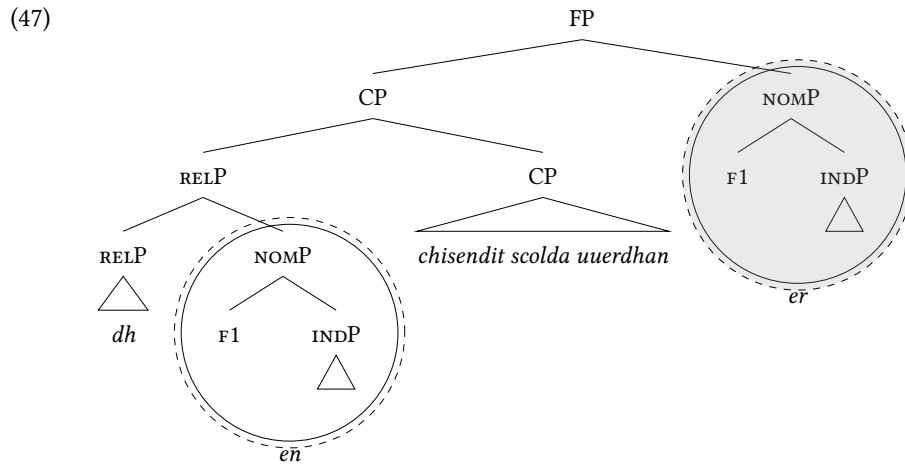
Here the RELP on the left c-commands the NOMP on the right, according to Kayne's (1994) definition of c-command. The RELP is namely in the specifier of CP, which is in the specifier of FP, which dominates NOMP. The RELP is not contained in the CP or in the FP. From there the reasoning goes as follows. This NOMP is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. Therefore, the extra light head can be deleted, which is signaled by the gray marking of the circle. The surface pronoun is the relative pronoun that bears the internal case: *dher*.

The two syntactic structures in (45) and in (47) are all that is needed for all instances in which I compared the internal syntax of the light heads and the relative pronouns. The structure in (45) represents the situation in which the source structure contains a demonstrative. In these cases, the relative pronoun can be deleted via formal containment. This applies when the internal and external case match, as in (45), but also when the external case is more complex. In that case, the derivation namely also goes through the stage shown in (45) (see Section 8.3). There is no successful deletion possible when the internal case is more complex, because in that situation the light head does not formally contain the relative pronoun at any point in the derivation.

The structure in (47) represent the situation in which the source structure contains an extra light head. In these cases, the extra light head can be deleted via structural containment. This applies when the internal and external case match, as in (47), but also when the internal case is more complex. In that case, the relative pronoun that bears the more complex case still structurally contains the extra light head that bears the less complex case. There is no successful deletion possible when the external case is more complex, because in that is situation the relative pronoun does not structurally contain the extra light head at any point in the derivation.

I am not the only one to place a demonstrative and an extra light head in such a way in a structure that they either c-command or are c-commanded by the rela-

tive pronoun. Cinque (2020) suggests the same, but then more generally for relative clauses. He suggests every type of relative clause in every language is underlyingly double-headed. Support for this claim comes from languages that show this morphologically. An example from Kombai is given in (48). The head of the relative clause is *doü* 'sago', and it appears inside the relative clause and outside of it, which make them respectively the internal and the external head.

(48) [**doü** adiyan-o-no]   **doü** deyalukhe
     sago give.3PL.NONFUT-tr-CONN sago finished.ADJ
     'The sago that they gave is finished.'   (Kombai, Vries 1993: 78)

(49) shows the syntactic structure of the sentence in (48).

(49)
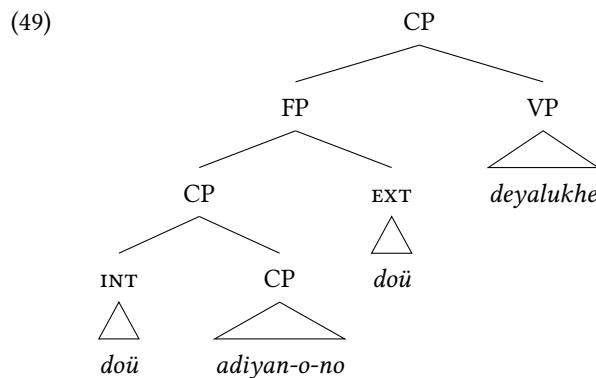
In most languages one of the two heads is deleted throughout the derivation. According to Cinque (2020), the internal element can delete the external element, because the internal element c-commands the external element, as shown in (50).

(50)
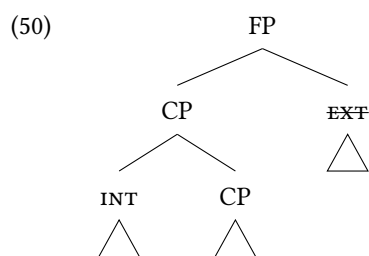
In order for the internal element to be able to delete the external element, a movement needs to take place. The external element moves over the relative clause, as shown in (51).

(51)

```
          ╱╲
      EXT      FP
       △      ╱╲
          CP      t_EXT
          ╱╲
      INT      CP
       △       △
```
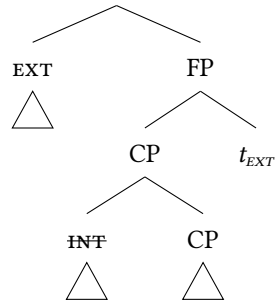
Crucially, Cinque (2020) notes that the internal and external heads are indefinite. Only after the external head has been moved over the relative clause, it has access to a definite feature. Notice that this is exactly what I described for the extra light head and the light head. The extra light head is indefinite and is situated in a structurally low position, as in (50). The light head is definite and is situated in a structurally high position, as in (51).[14]

Finally, notice that the larger syntactic structures I proposed for Old High German in this section also hold for Modern German and Polish. In these languages, grammatical headless relatives are only derived from light-headed relatives headed by extra light heads. These extra light heads are indefinite and low in the structure (see (47) and (50)). From this position, the relative pronoun always c-commands these extra light heads, and the extra light heads can be deleted when they are structurally contained in the relative pronouns.

8.5 Summary and discussion

Old High German is an example of an unrestricted type of language. This means that headless relatives are grammatical in the language when the internal and external

---

[14] At this point, two questions remain. The first one is how case features end up on the extra light head, if it is low in the structure, since they are only merged after the relative clause attaches. On the surface, it looks like the case features percolate down to the extra light head. The mechanism behind this the same as what I described for how case features end up on the light head in footnote 13: Backtracking. First, the CP and the extra light head are split up and the case feature is merged in both workspaces. If it is a language such as Modern German that has a phi and case feature portmanteau, the case feature can be spelled out with the rest of the structure. Then, the two workspaces are merged back together.

The second question that remains is what triggers the movement of the external head over the relative clause. Generally speaking, there are two options: the movement can be driven by features or by spellout. I would not know by what feature the movement could be driven. It could be that the movement is driven by spellout. It seems that the movement of the extra light head coincides with the element becoming definite. In terms of spellout, becoming definite means that a complex spec is merged to existing syntactic structure. It seems that once the complex spec is merged, it attracts the existing syntactic structure that it copied a feature from to form its complex spec (IND in the case of Old High German).

case match, when the internal case is more complex and when the external case is more complex.

I derive this from the internal syntax of two light heads and the internal synax of the relative pronoun in Old High German. The features of the extra light head (which is the first possible light head) are spelled out by a single lexical entry, which spells out phi and case features. The features of the relative pronoun are spelled out by the same lexical entry plus one which amongst other spells out a relative feature. The internal syntax of the extra light head and the relative pronoun in Old High German are shown in Figure 8.11.
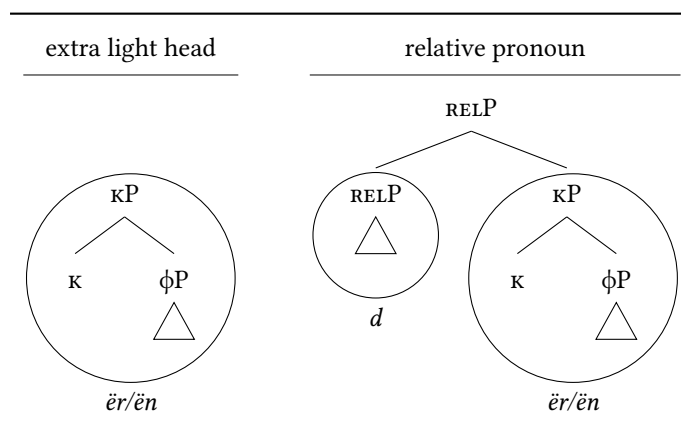

Figure 8.11: ELH and RP in Old High German (repeated)

The features of the demonstrative (which is the second possible light head) are spelled out by two lexical entries, one of which spells out phi and case features and one which spells out amongst other spells out a relative feature plus the feature DEM. The features of the relative pronoun are spelled out by the same two lexical entries as the demonstrative. The internal syntax of the demonstrative and the relative pronoun in Old High German are shown in Figure 8.12.

A crucial characteristic of unrestricted languages such as Old High German is that there is a syncretism between the demonstrative and the relative pronoun. Therefore, the relative pronoun is formally contained in the light head, and the relative pronoun can be deleted. This can lead to a more complex external case surfacing. The other light head is crucial for allowing for a more internal case to surface, since for that it is required that the extra light head is structurally contained in the relative pronoun.

In the end, the crucial difference between Old High German and Modern German that leads them to be of different language types is that Old High German has a syncretism between the relative pronoun and the demonstrative and Modern German has not. Actually, as I noted before (in Chapter 6 and in footnote 8 of this chapter), Modern German does have a syncretism between a relative pronoun and its demon-
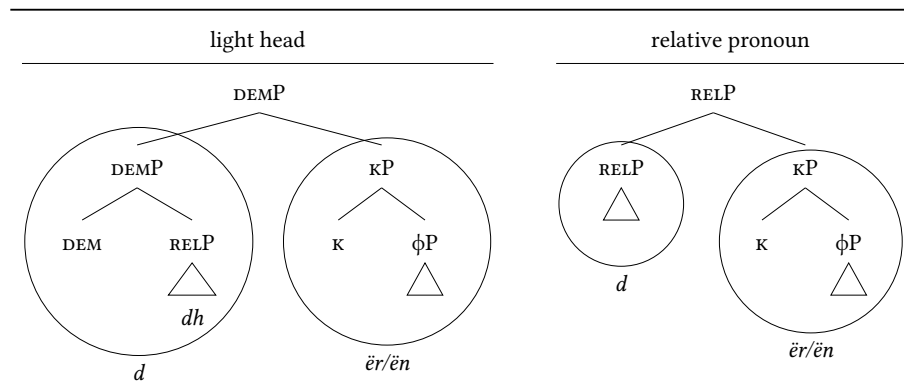
Figure 8.12: ʟʜ and ʀᴘ in Old High German (repeated)

strative. However, the syncretic relative pronoun is not the relative pronoun that is used in headless relatives. Old High German does not have these two separate relative pronouns, but only the one that is syncretic with the demonstrative. Still, based on the syncretism between one of its relative pronouns and the demonstrative, I would expect Modern German to allow for the formal deletion just as Old High German does. This is not what is observed in the language, however.

Instead, somewhere along the way when Old High German changed to Modern German, the language changed from being of the unrestricted type to being of the internal-only type. This change coincides with the introduction of the ᴡʜ-pronoun being used as a relative pronoun (see Weiß 20XX for how ᴡʜ-pronouns became relative pronouns). In Middle High German, there are no longer examples in which the external case wins and the relative pronouns in headless relatives start with a *w* (Behaghel, 1923-1932). The presence of the two different relative pronouns in Modern German seems to lead to *d*-pronouns not taking part in the forming headless relatives anymore. I do not have an explanation for how this follows.

The deletion that takes place to change a light-headed relative into a headless relative occurs under containment and under c-command. The extra light head is situated low in the structure, such that the relative pronoun c-commands it and it can be deleted when it is structurally contained in the relative pronoun. The light head is situated higher in the structure, such that it c-commands the relative pronoun and the relative pronoun can be deleted when it is structurally contained in the light head.

Primary texts

Col.	Colossians, New Testament
Hel.	Heliand
Isid.	Der althochdeutsche Isidor
John	John, New Testament
Luke	Luke, New Testament
Mark	Mark, New Testament
Men. DD.	Menander, The Double Deceiver
Mons.	The Monsee fragments
Otfrid	Otfrid's Evangelienbuch
Pl. Men.	Plato, Menexenus
Rom.	Romans, New Testament
Tatian	Tatian

Bibliography

Arregi, Karlos and Gainko Molina-Azaola (2004). "Restructuring in Basque and the theory of agreement". In: *Proceedings of the 23rd West Coast Conference on Formal Linguistics*. Ed. by Angelo J. Rodríguez Vineeta Chand Ann Kelleher and Benjamin Schmeiser. Somerville, MA: Cascadilla Press, pp. 43–56.

Baerman, Matthew, Dunstan Brown, and Greville G Corbett (2002). "Surrey syncretisms database". In: DOI: 10.15126/SMG.10/1.

Baerman, Matthew, Dunstan Brown, and Greville G Corbett (2005). *The syntax-morphology interface: A study of syncretism*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Baunaz, Lena and Eric Lander (2018). "Deconstructing categories syncretic with the nominal complementizer". In: *Glossa: a journal of general linguistics* 3.1, pp. 1–27.

Behaghel, Otto (1923-1932). *Deutsche Syntax: Eine geschichtliche Darstellung*. Heidelberg: Winter.

Bergsma, Fenna (2019). "Mismatches in free relatives — grafting nanosyntactic trees". In: *Glossa: a journal of general linguistics* 4.1. DOI: 10.5334/gjgl.821.

Bittner, Maria and Ken Hale (1996). "The structural determination of case and agreement". In: *Linguistic inquiry*, pp. 1–68.

Bobaljik, Jonathan (2006). "Where's Φ? Agreement as a Post-Syntactic Operation". In: *Phi-Theory: Phi Features Across Interfaces and Modules*. Ed. by Daniel Harbour, David Adger, and Susana Béjar. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 295–328.

Bobaljik, Jonathan (2012). *Universals In Comparative Morphology*. Cambridge: MIT Press. DOI: 10.7551/mitpress/9069.003.0001.

Boretzky, Norbert (1994). *Romani: Grammatik des Kalderaš-Dialektes mit Texten und Glossar*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz Verlag.

Braune, Wilhelm (2018). *Althochdeutsche Grammatik I*. Walter de Gruyter GmbH & Co KG. DOI: 10.1515/9783110515114.

Bresnan, Joan and Jane Grimshaw (1978). "The Syntax of Free Relatives in English". In: *Linguistic Inquiry* 9.2, pp. 331–391.

Caha, Pavel (2009). "The Nanosyntax of Case". PhD thesis. University of Tromsø.

Caha, Pavel (2010). "The parameters of case marking and spell out driven movement". In: ed. by Jeroen van Craenenbroeck. Vol. 10. 1. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company, pp. 32–77. DOI: 10.1075/livy.10.02cah.

Caha, Pavel (2013). "Explaining the structure of case paradigms by the mechanisms of Nanosyntax". In: *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 31, pp. 1015–1066. DOI: 10.1007/s11049-013-9206-8.

Caha, Pavel (2019). *Case competition in Nanosyntax. A study of numeral phrases in Ossetic and Russian.*

Caha, Pavel (2020a). "Modeling declensions without declension features". In.

Caha, Pavel (2020b). "Nanosyntax: some key features". In: *The Cambridge handbook of Distributed Morphology*. Ed. by Artemis Alexiadou et al. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Cardinaletti, Anna and Michal Starke (1994). "The Typology of Structural Deficiency. On the Three Grammatical Classes". In: *Working Papers in Linguistics*. Venice: University of Venice, pp. 41–109.

Cinque, Guglielmo (2005). "Deriving Greenberg's Universal 20 and its exceptions". In: *Linguistic inquiry* 36.3, pp. 315–332. DOI: 10.1162/0024389054396917.

Cinque, Guglielmo (2020). *The Syntax of Relative Clauses: A Unified Double-headed Analysis*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. DOI: 10 . 1017 % 2F9781108856195.

Citko, Barbara (2004). "On headed, headless, and light-headed relatives". In: *Natural Language & Linguistic Theory* 22.1, pp. 95–126.

Citko, Barbara (2013). "Size matters: Multidominance and DP structure in Polish". In: *Talk at the th Poznan Linguistic Meeting.*

Colasanti, Valentina and Martina Wiltschko (2019). "Spatial and discourse deixis and the speech act structure of nominals". In.

Daskalaki, Evangelia (2011). "Case Mis-Matching as Kase Stranding". In: *University of Pennsylvania Working Papers in Linguistics*. Ed. by Lauren A. Friedman. Vol. 17. Philadelphia: Penn Linguistics Club, pp. 77–86.

De Clercq, Karen and Guido Vanden Wyngaerd (2018). "Unmerging analytic comparatives". In: *Jezikoslovlje* 19.3, pp. 341–363.

Dixon, Robert Malcolm Ward (1972). *The Dyirbal language of north Queensland*. Vol. 9. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press. DOI: 10.1017/cbo9781139084987.

Durrell, Martin (2011). *Hammer's German grammar and usage*. Routledge.

Einarsson, Stefán (1949). *Icelandic: grammar, texts, glossary*. The Johns Hopkins Press.

Emonds, Joseph (1979). "Appositive relatives have no properties". In: *Linguistic Inquiry*, pp. 211–243.

Friedman, Victor A (1991). "Romani nominal inflection: Cases or postpositions". In: *Problemy opisu gramatycznego języków słowiańskych, (Studia gramatyczne, Vol. 11)*, pp. 57–63.

Fuß, Eric (n.d.). "Wh-relatives in German: historical and current developments". In: ().

Fuß, Eric and Günther Grewendorf (2014). "Freie Relativsätze mit d-Pronomen". In.

Gilligan, Gary Martin (1987). "A cross-linguistic approach to the pro-drop parameter". PhD thesis. Los Angeles, CA.

Gippert, Jost (1987). "Zu Den Sekundären Kasusaffixen Des Tocharischen". In: *Tocharian and Indo-European Studies* 1, pp. 22–39.

Groos, Anneke and Henk van Riemsdijk (1981). "Matching Effects in Free Relatives: A Parameter of Core Grammar". In: *Theory of Markedness in Generative Grammar*. Ed. by Luciana Brandi Adriana Belletti and Luigi Rizzi. Pisa: Scuola Normale Superiore.

Grosu, Alexander (1987). "Pied piping and the matching parameter". In: *The linguistic review* 6.1, pp. 41–58.

Grosu, Alexander (2003a). "A Unified Theory of 'standard' and 'transparent' Free Relatives". In: *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 21.2, pp. 247–331. DOI: 10.1075/la.55.07gro.

Grosu, Alexander (2003b). *Three studies in locality and case*. Routledge.

Hachem, Mirjam (2015). "Multifunctionality. The Internal and External Syntax of d- and w-Items in German and Dutch". PhD thesis. Utrecht: Utrecht University.

Hanink, Emily A (2018). "Super light-headed relatives, missing prepositions, and span-conditioned allomorphy in German". In: *The Journal of Comparative Germanic Linguistics* 21.2, pp. 247–290.

Harbert, Wayne Eugene (1978). "Gothic syntax: a relational grammar". PhD thesis. Urbana-Champaign.

Harbert, Wayne Eugene (1983). "A note on Old English free relatives". In: *Linguistic inquiry* 14.3, pp. 549–553.

Harley, Heidi (1995). "Abstracting away from abstract case". In: *Proceedings-NELS*. Vol. 25. University of Massachusetts. GLSA, pp. 207–222.

Harley, Heidi and Elizabeth Ritter (2002). "Person and number in pronouns: A feature-geometric analysis". In: *Language*, pp. 482–526.

Hartmann, Dietrich (1978). "Verschmelzungen als Varianten des bestimmten Artikels". In: *Sprache in Gegenwart und Geschichte. Festschrift Für Heinrich Matthias Heinrichs., Böhlau, Köln*, pp. 68–81.

Himmelreich, Anke (2017). "Case Matching Effects in Free Relatives and Parasitic Gaps: A Study on the Properties of Agree". PhD thesis. Universität Leipzig.

Kakarikos, Konstantinos (2014). "Case Attraction in Free Relative Clauses of Ancient Greek: A Study of the Syntax–Morphology Interface". In: *Major Trends in Theoretical and Applied Linguistics*. Vol. 1. Berlin, Boston: De Gruyter, pp. 289–304. DOI: 10.2478/9788376560762.p35.

Kayne, Richard S (1994). *The antisymmetry of syntax*. Vol. 25. MIT press.

Keenan, Edward L and Bernard Comrie (1977). "Noun phrase accessibility and universal grammar". In: *Linguistic inquiry* 8.1, pp. 63–99.

Kiparsky, Paul (1973). ""Elsewhere" in Phonology". In: *A Festschrift for Morris Halle*. Ed. by Stephen Anderson and Paul Kiparsky. New York: Holt, Rinehart, & Winston, pp. 93–106.

Kramer, Ruth (2016). "The location of gender features in the syntax". In: *Language and linguistics Compass* 10.11, pp. 661–677.

Krause, Thomas and Amir Zeldes (2016). "ANNIS3: A new architecture for generic corpus query and visualization". In: *Digital Scholarship in the Humanities* 31.1, pp. 118–139. DOI: 10.1093/llc/fqu057.

Lander, Eric and Liliane Haegeman (2018). "The nanosyntax of spatial deixis". In: *Studia linguistica* 72.2, pp. 362–427. DOI: 10.1111/stul.12061.

Lockwood, William Burley (1977). *An introduction to modern Faroese*. Torshavn: Føroya Skúlabókagrunnur.

Marantz, Alec (2000). "Case and licensing". In: ed. by Eric J. Reuland. Vol. 34. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company, pp. 11–30. DOI: 10.1075/la.34.04mar.

McFadden, Thomas (2018). "*ABA in stem-allomorphy and the emptiness of the nominative". In: *Glossa: a journal of general linguistics* 3.1. DOI: 10.5334/gjgl.373.

Miyagawa, Shigeru and Takae Tsujioka (2004). "Argument structure and ditransitive verbs in Japanese". In: *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 13.1, pp. 1–38. DOI: 10.1023/b:jeal.0000007345.64336.84.

Moravcsik, Edith A. (1978). *Agreement*. Ed. by Charles A. Ferguson Joseph H. Greenberg and Edith A. Moravcsik. Stanford. DOI: 10.2307/413494.

Nikolaeva, Irina (1999). *Ostyak*. München: Lincom Europa.

Noussia-Fantuzzi, Maria (2015). "The Politics of Food in the Early Cynics". In: *Food and History* 13.1-3, pp. 197–211.

Picallo, M Carme (2008). "Gender and number in Romance". In: *Lingue e linguaggio* 7.1, pp. 47–66.

Pittner, Karin (1995). "The Case of German Relatives". In: *The linguistic review* 12.3, pp. 197–231. DOI: 10.1515/tlir.1995.12.3.197.

Rooth, Mats (1985). "Association with Focus". PhD Thesis. Amherst: University of Massachusets.

Rooth, Mats (1992). "A Theory of Focus Interpretation". In: *Natural Language Semantics* 1.1, pp. 76–116. DOI: 10.1007/bf02342617.

Schwarz, Florian (2009). "Two types of definites in natural language". In.

Šimík, Radek (2020). "Free Relatives". In: *The Wiley Blackwell Companion to Semantics*, pp. 1–38.

Šimík, Radek (2016). "On the semantics of Czech free relatives". In.

Smith, Peter W et al. (2019). "Case and number suppletion in pronouns". In: *Natural Language & Linguistic Theory* 37.3, pp. 1029–1101. DOI: 10.1007/s11049-018-9425-0.

Spyropoulos, Vassilios (2011). "Case conflict in Greek free relatives". In: *Morphology and Its Interfaces* 178, p. 21.

Starke, Michal (2009). "Nanosyntax: A Short Primer to a New Approach to Language". In: *Nordlyd* 36, pp. 1–6.

Starke, Michal (2014). "Cleaning up the lexicon". In: *Linguistic Analysis* 39, pp. 245–256.

Starke, Michal (2018). "Complex Left Branches, Spellout, and Prefixes". In: *Exploring Nanosyntax*. Ed. by Lena Baunaz et al. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 239–249. DOI: 10.1093/oso/9780190876746.003.0009.

Steel, Susan (1978). "Word order variation: A typological study". In: *Universals of Human Language: IV: Syntax*. Ed. by Charles A. Ferguson Joseph H. Greenberg and Edith A. Moravcsik. Stanford: Stanford University Press, pp. 585–623. DOI: 10.2307/413494.

Swan, Oscar E (2002). *A grammar of contemporary Polish*. Slavica, Bloomington, Indiana.

Van Baal, Yvonne and Jan Don (2018). "Universals in possessive morphology". In: *Glossa: a journal of general linguistics* 3.1. DOI: 10.5334/gjgl.395.

Vogel, Ralf (2001). "Case Conflict in German Free Relative Constructions: An Optimality Theoretic Treatment". In: *Competition in Syntax*. Ed. by Gereon Müller and Wolfgang Sternefeld. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter, pp. 341–375. DOI: 10.1515/9783110829068.341.

Vries, Lourens de (1993). *Forms and functions in Kombai, an Awyu language of Irian Jaya*. Dept. of Linguistics, Research School of Pacific Studies, The Australian National University.

Wiland, Bartosz (2019). *The spell-out algorithm and lexicalization patterns: Slavic verbs and complementizers*. Berlin: Language Science Press.

Zaenen, Annie, Joan Maling, and Höskuldur Thráinsson (1985). "Case and grammatical functions: The Icelandic passive". In: *Natural Language & Linguistic Theory* 3.4, pp. 441–483. DOI: 10.1163/9789004373235_005.

Zompì, Stanislao (2017). "Case decomposition meets dependent-case theories". MA thesis. Pisa.